

System Administration Reference

Novell® ZENworks® 10 Configuration Management SP2

10.2

March 30, 2010

www.novell.com



Legal Notices

Novell, Inc., makes no representations or warranties with respect to the contents or use of this documentation, and specifically disclaims any express or implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for any particular purpose. Further, Novell, Inc., reserves the right to revise this publication and to make changes to its content, at any time, without obligation to notify any person or entity of such revisions or changes.

Further, Novell, Inc., makes no representations or warranties with respect to any software, and specifically disclaims any express or implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for any particular purpose. Further, Novell, Inc., reserves the right to make changes to any and all parts of Novell software, at any time, without any obligation to notify any person or entity of such changes.

Any products or technical information provided under this Agreement may be subject to U.S. export controls and the trade laws of other countries. You agree to comply with all export control regulations and to obtain any required licenses or classification to export, re-export or import deliverables. You agree not to export or re-export to entities on the current U.S. export exclusion lists or to any embargoed or terrorist countries as specified in the U.S. export laws. You agree to not use deliverables for prohibited nuclear, missile, or chemical biological weaponry end uses. See the [Novell International Trade Services Web page \(http://www.novell.com/info/exports/\)](http://www.novell.com/info/exports/) for more information on exporting Novell software. Novell assumes no responsibility for your failure to obtain any necessary export approvals.

Copyright © 2007-2010 Novell, Inc. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, photocopied, stored on a retrieval system, or transmitted without the express written consent of the publisher.

Novell, Inc.
404 Wyman Street, Suite 500
Waltham, MA 02451
U.S.A.
www.novell.com

Online Documentation: To access the latest online documentation for this and other Novell products, see the [Novell Documentation Web page \(http://www.novell.com/documentation\)](http://www.novell.com/documentation).

Novell Trademarks

For Novell trademarks, see [the Novell Trademark and Service Mark list \(http://www.novell.com/company/legal/trademarks/tmlist.html\)](http://www.novell.com/company/legal/trademarks/tmlist.html).

Third-Party Materials

All third-party trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Contents

About This Guide	15
Part I ZENworks Control Center	17
1 ZENworks Control Center	19
1.1 Accessing ZENworks Control Center	19
1.2 Accessing ZENworks Control Center through Novell iManager	20
1.3 Navigating ZENworks Control Center	21
1.4 Changing the Default Login Disable Values	22
1.5 Changing the Timeout Value for ZENworks Control Center	22
1.6 Using the Config.xml File to Modify ZENworks Control Center Settings	23
1.7 Bookmarking ZENworks Control Center Locations	24
2 Administrators	27
2.1 Managing Administrator Accounts	27
2.1.1 Creating Administrators	28
2.1.2 Deleting Administrators	29
2.1.3 Renaming Administrators	29
2.1.4 Changing Administrator Passwords	29
2.2 Managing Administrator Rights	30
2.2.1 Assigning Super Administrator Rights	30
2.2.2 Assigning Additional Rights	30
2.2.3 Modifying Assigned Rights	31
2.2.4 Removing Assigned Rights	31
2.3 Rights Descriptions	31
2.3.1 Administrator Rights	32
2.3.2 Bundle Rights	32
2.3.3 Contract Management Rights	33
2.3.4 Credential Rights	34
2.3.5 Deployment Rights	34
2.3.6 Device Rights	34
2.3.7 Discovery Rights	35
2.3.8 Document Rights	35
2.3.9 Inventoried Device Rights	36
2.3.10 LDAP Import Rights	37
2.3.11 License Management Rights	37
2.3.12 Patch Management Rights	37
2.3.13 Policy Rights	38
2.3.14 Quick Task Rights	39
2.3.15 Remote Management Rights	39
2.3.16 Reporting Rights	40
2.3.17 User Rights	40
2.3.18 ZENworks User Group Rights	41
2.3.19 Zone Rights	41
2.4 Managing Administrator Roles	42
2.4.1 Understanding Administrator Roles	43
2.4.2 Creating a Role	45
2.4.3 Assigning Roles	47

2.4.4	Editing a Role	51
2.4.5	Renaming a Role	54
2.4.6	Deleting a Role	54
3	ZENworks News	55
3.1	Managing ZENworks News Alerts	55
3.1.1	Deleting the News Alerts	55
3.1.2	Updating the News Alerts	56
3.1.3	Displaying the News Alerts Based on the Selected Category	56
3.1.4	Viewing the News	56
3.1.5	Sorting the News Alerts	56
3.2	Configuring ZENworks News Settings	56
3.2.1	Dedicated News Server	57
3.2.2	Schedule Type	58
4	System Variables	61
4.1	Understanding System Variables	61
4.2	Adding System Variables	62
4.3	Removing System Variables	63
4.4	Editing System Variables	63
4.5	Using System Variables	63
5	Credential Vault	65
5.1	Adding a Credential	65
5.2	Creating a Folder for Credentials	66
5.3	Assigning Credential Rights	67
5.4	Editing a Credential	68
5.5	Renaming a Credential	68
5.6	Moving a Credential to Another Folder	68
5.7	Removing a Credential	68
	Part II ZENworks Servers and Satellite Devices	69
6	ZENworks Server	71
6.1	ZENworks Services on a Windows Server	71
6.1.1	Checking the Status of a ZENworks Service	72
6.1.2	Starting a ZENworks Service	72
6.1.3	Stopping a ZENworks Service	72
6.2	ZENworks Services on a Linux Server	73
6.2.1	Checking the Status of a ZENworks Service	74
6.2.2	Starting a ZENworks Service	74
6.2.3	Stopping a ZENworks Service	74
6.2.4	Restarting a ZENworks Service	74
6.3	Configuring Additional Access to a ZENworks Server	75
6.3.1	Addressing Non-Detectable IP Address Conditions	75
6.3.2	Addressing Non-Detectable DNS Name Conditions	75
6.4	Determining the ZENworks Software Version Installed on Servers	76
6.5	Uninstalling a ZENworks Server	76
6.6	Deleting a ZENworks Primary Server	76
6.7	ZENworks Server Reports	77

7	Satellites	79
7.1	Understanding the Satellite Roles	79
7.1.1	Understanding the Collection Role	80
7.1.2	Understanding the Content Role	80
7.1.3	Understanding the Imaging Role	81
7.2	Adding and Configuring Satellite Devices	81
7.2.1	Collection Role	83
7.2.2	Content Role	83
7.2.3	Imaging Role	84
7.3	Removing the Roles from a Satellite	85
7.4	Removing Satellites from the Server Hierarchy	85
7.5	Specifying Content to Be Hosted	86
7.6	Moving a Satellite from One Primary Server to Another Primary Server	87
7.7	Specifying a Different Repository for the Content Role Satellite (Windows Only)	87
7.8	Removing a Satellite Device	88
7.9	Refreshing a Satellite	89
7.10	Troubleshooting Satellites	89
8	Server Hierarchy	93
8.1	Primary Servers: Peer Versus Parent/Child Relationships	93
8.2	Satellite Role Relationships	93
8.2.1	Content Role Server Relationships	94
8.2.2	Collection Role Server Relationships	94
8.2.3	Imaging Role Server Relationships	94
8.3	Changing the Parent-Child Relationships of Primary Servers	94
8.3.1	Making a Primary Server a Child	94
8.3.2	Making a Primary Server a Peer	95
9	Closest Server Rules	97
9.1	Understanding Closest Server Rules	97
9.1.1	ZENworks Server Functions	97
9.1.2	Mapping Devices to Servers	98
9.1.3	Effective Rules	98
9.2	Configuring the Closest Server Default Rule	99
9.3	Creating Closest Server Rules	103
9.4	Backing Up Closest Server Rules	109
10	Backing Up and Restoring the ZENworks Server and Certificate Authority	111
10.1	Backing Up a ZENworks Server	111
10.2	Restoring a ZENworks Server	112
10.3	Backing Up the Certificate Authority	113
10.4	Restoring the Certificate Authority	113
11	Disaster Recovery	115
11.1	Replacing the First Primary Server with the Second Primary Server	115
11.2	Replacing an Existing Primary Server with a New Primary Server	118
11.3	Re-Creating Certificates	120
11.3.1	Changing the Internal Certificate to an External Certificate on a Primary Server	120
11.3.2	Changing the IP Address of the Primary Server after Installing ZENworks 10 Configuration Management	123

11.3.3	Changing the DNS Name or the IP Address and DNS Name of the Primary Server after Installing ZENworks 10 Configuration Management	124
Part III	ZENworks Adaptive Agent	129
12	Viewing the Version of the Adaptive Agent Software and Modules on a Device	131
13	Searching for Devices that Have a Specified Version of the Adaptive Agent	133
14	Configuring Adaptive Agent Settings after Deployment	135
14.1	Configuring Agent Settings on the Management Zone Level.	135
14.2	Configuring Agent Settings on the Device Folder Level.	136
14.3	Configuring Agent Settings on the Device Level	137
14.4	ZENworks Agent Settings	138
14.4.1	General	138
14.4.2	Agent Features	140
15	Configuring ZENworks Explorer	149
15.1	Configuring ZENworks Explorer Settings on the Management Zone Level.	149
15.2	Configuring ZENworks Explorer Settings on the Device Folder Level.	150
15.3	Configuring ZENworks Explorer Settings on the Device Level	151
15.4	ZENworks Explorer General Settings	152
16	Removing the ZENworks Pre-Agent from a Device	153
17	Troubleshooting the Adaptive Agent	155
Part IV	ZENworks System Updates	159
18	Introduction to ZENworks System Updates	161
19	Configuring Updates	163
19.1	Configuring System Update Settings	163
19.1.1	Check for Updates Schedule	163
19.1.2	Download Schedule	165
19.1.3	E-Mail Notification	167
19.1.4	Proxy Server Settings	168
19.1.5	Dedicated Server Settings	169
19.1.6	Stage Timeout Settings	170
19.1.7	Reboot Behavior	171
19.2	Creating Deployment Stages	172
19.2.1	Understanding Stages	172
19.2.2	Creating and Populating a Deployment Stage.	174
19.2.3	Modifying the Stage Timeout.	175
19.2.4	Modifying Staging Behavior.	176
19.2.5	Modifying Reboot Behavior	177
19.2.6	Modifying the Membership of a Deployment Stage.	177
19.2.7	Renaming a Deployment Stage.	178
19.2.8	Deleting a Deployment Stage	179

19.2.9	Rearranging the Order in Which Stages Start	179
20	Managing Update Downloads	181
20.1	Understanding Available Updates	181
20.2	Downloading Updates	182
20.2.1	Scheduling Update Downloads	183
20.2.2	Manually Checking for Updates	183
20.2.3	Manually Downloading Updates	183
20.2.4	Manually Importing Updates to Servers without Internet Connectivity	184
20.3	Downloading and Installing the PRU	185
20.4	Canceling or Deleting a System Update	185
21	Deploying Updates	187
21.1	Understanding Deploying Updates	187
21.2	Deploying Updates	189
21.3	Starting a Pending Stage	196
21.4	Rescheduling a Deployment	196
21.4.1	Rescheduling a Deployment for the All Stages Status	196
21.4.2	Rescheduling a Deployment for the Other Statuses	196
21.5	Bypassing Staging	197
21.6	Canceling a Deployment	197
21.7	Clearing an Error to Retry a Deployment	197
21.8	Viewing Status by Device	197
21.8.1	Understanding Device Statuses	198
21.8.2	Viewing a Device's Properties	199
21.8.3	Viewing Information on a Device's Status	199
21.8.4	Toggling Ignored Devices	199
21.8.5	Redeploying Updates to Devices	200
21.8.6	Rescheduling Updates to Devices	200
21.8.7	Refreshing Devices	201
22	Deleting Updates	203
23	Reviewing the Content of an Update	205
23.1	Viewing the Release Details Page	205
23.2	Update Release Details	205
23.3	Deployment History	206
23.3.1	Understanding Deployment History Details	207
23.3.2	Performing Deployment History Tasks	208
24	Update Statuses	209
Part V	Zone Administration	211
25	Management Zone Configuration Settings	213
25.1	Accessing Configuration Settings	213
25.1.1	Modifying Configuration Settings at the Zone	213
25.1.2	Modifying Configuration Settings on a Folder	214
25.1.3	Modifying Configuration Settings on a Device	215

25.2	Content Settings	217
25.3	Device Management Settings	217
25.4	Discovery and Deployment Settings	218
25.5	Event and Messaging Settings	218
25.6	Infrastructure Management Settings	219
25.7	Inventory Settings	219
25.8	Reporting Services Settings	220
25.9	Asset Management Settings	220
25.10	Patch Management Services Settings	221
Part VI Content		223
26 Content Repository		225
26.1	Changing the Location of the Content Repository on a Windows Server	225
26.2	Changing the Location of the Content Repository on a Linux Server	227
26.2.1	Mounting a Share	227
26.2.2	Unmounting a Share	228
26.2.3	Creating a Permanent Mount	228
26.2.4	Moving Existing Content to the New Repository	228
27 Content Replication		229
27.1	Configuring Content Replication at the Management Zone Level	229
27.1.1	Manually Configuring Advanced Content Replication Settings	230
27.2	Replicating Content to New Content Servers	231
27.3	Including or Excluding Content	232
27.3.1	Managing a Single Piece of Content on Multiple Content Servers	232
27.3.2	Managing Multiple Pieces of Content on a Single Content Server	233
27.3.3	Managing Multiple Pieces of Content on Multiple Content Servers	233
28 Content Delivery		235
28.1	Setting Up Closest Server Rules	235
28.2	Scheduling Delivery Blackout Dates	235
28.3	Setting the Device Refresh Schedule	236
Part VII Users		239
29 User Sources		241
29.1	Prerequisites	241
29.2	Managing User Sources	242
29.2.1	Adding User Sources	242
29.2.2	Deleting User Sources	245
29.2.3	Editing User Sources	245
29.2.4	Adding a Container from a User Source	245
29.3	Providing LDAP Load Balancing and Fault Tolerance	246
30 User Authentication		249
30.1	User Source Authentication	249
30.2	Credential Storage	250

30.3	Disabling ZENworks User Authentication.	250
30.4	Troubleshooting User Authentication.	251
Part VIII ZENworks 10 Product Licensing		255
31 ZENworks 10 Product Licensing		257
31.1	Evaluating a Product	257
31.2	Extending the Evaluation Period of a Product	258
31.3	Activating a Product	258
31.4	Deactivating a Product.	258
31.5	Possible License State Changes	259
31.6	Using ZENworks 10 Asset Management with ZENworks 7 Desktop Management	260
31.7	Viewing the Predefined Reports.	260
Part IX Database Management		263
32 Embedded Database Maintenance		265
32.1	Retrieving and Storing the Credentials of the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database	265
32.2	Changing the Ports Used by the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database	265
32.3	Backing Up the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database	267
32.3.1	Backing Up the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database on a Windows or Linux Server	267
32.3.2	Backing up the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database Running on a Windows Server to a Network Location on a Remote Windows Machine.	269
32.3.3	Backing up the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database Running on a Linux Server to a Network Location on a Remote Linux Machine.	271
32.4	Restoring the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database.	273
32.4.1	Restoring the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database on a Windows Server	273
32.4.2	Restoring the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database on a Linux Server . . .	274
32.5	Moving the Data from an Embedded Sybase Database to an External Sybase Database . .	274
32.5.1	Preparing to Move the Data.	275
32.5.2	Moving the Data from the Internal Sybase to the External Sybase	275
32.6	Migrating the Data from an Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere to an External Oracle Database	276
32.6.1	Preparing to Move the Data.	277
32.6.2	Migrating the Data from the Sybase SQL Anywhere Database to an Oracle Database	278
32.6.3	Post-Migration Tasks	280
32.6.4	Troubleshooting Database Migration.	281
32.6.5	Reverting to the Sybase Database	283
33 External Database Maintenance		285
33.1	Backing Up the External Sybase Database	285
33.1.1	Backing Up the External Sybase Database on a Windows or Linux Server	285
33.1.2	Backing up the External Sybase Database Running on a Windows Server to a Network Location on a Remote Windows Machine	288
33.1.3	Backing up the External Sybase Database Running on a Linux Server to a Network Location on a Remote Linux Machine	291
33.2	Restoring the External Sybase Database	294
33.3	Moving the Data from One External Sybase Database to another External Sybase Database	295

33.3.1	Preparing to Move the Data	295
33.3.2	Moving the Data from One External Sybase to Another External Sybase	296
33.4	Moving the Data from an External OEM Sybase Database to an Embedded Sybase Database	297
33.4.1	Preparing to Move the Data	297
33.4.2	Moving the Data from the External Sybase to the Embedded Sybase	297
33.5	Configuring the ZENworks Server to Point to the New MS SQL Database Containing Data Moved from Another MS SQL Database	299
33.5.1	Preparing to Move the Data	299
33.5.2	Configuring the ZENworks Server to Point to the New MS SQL Database	300
33.6	Configuring the ZENworks Server to Point to the New Oracle Database Containing Data Moved from Another Oracle Database	300
33.6.1	Preparing to Move the Data	300
33.6.2	Configuring the ZENworks Server to Point to the New Oracle Database	301
34	Database Best Practices and Tips	303
34.1	Database Best Practices	303
34.1.1	Updating the Embedded or External Sybase Database Packages	303
34.2	Database Tips	307
34.2.1	Changing the Backup Location and Schedule of the Embedded Sybase Database Subsequent to the Initial Backup	308
34.2.2	Changing the Backup Schedule and Location of the External Sybase Database Subsequent to the Initial Backup	309
Part X	Message Logging	313
35	Overview	315
35.1	Functionalities of Message Logger	315
35.2	Message Severity	315
35.3	Message Format	316
36	Configuring Message Logger Settings	317
36.1	Configuring the Message Logger Settings at the Zone Level	317
36.1.1	Local Device Logging	317
36.1.2	Centralized Message Logging	318
36.2	Configuring the Message Logger Settings at the Folder Level	321
36.3	Configuring the Message Logger Settings at the Device Level	321
36.4	Turning on the Debug Messages	321
37	Managing Messages	323
37.1	Understanding Message Formats	323
37.1.1	Local Log File Format	323
37.1.2	E-Mail Format	324
37.1.3	SNMP Message Format	324
37.1.4	UDP Payload Format	325
37.2	Viewing the Message Status	326
37.2.1	Message Summary	326
37.2.2	Device Hot List	327
37.3	Viewing the Messages	327
37.3.1	Message Log	327
37.3.2	System Message Log	328

37.4	Acknowledging Messages	329
37.4.1	Acknowledging a Message	329
37.4.2	Acknowledging Multiple Messages	329
37.4.3	Acknowledging Messages Logged During a Specified Time	330
37.5	Deleting Messages	331
37.5.1	Deleting a Message	331
37.5.2	Deleting Multiple Messages	331
37.5.3	Deleting Messages Logged During a Specified Time	332
37.6	Viewing the Predefined Reports	332
A	Naming Conventions in ZENworks Control Center	335
B	Schedule Types	337
B.1	Date Specific	337
B.2	Event	338
B.3	Now	339
B.4	Recurring	339
C	Documentation Updates	343
C.1	March 30, 2010	343
C.2	January 25, 2010	344
C.3	December 15, 2009: Update for ZENworks 10 Configuration Management (10.2.2)	344
C.4	August 17, 2009: Update for ZENworks 10 Configuration Management (10.2.1)	344
C.5	May 27, 2009: SP2	345

About This Guide

This *System Administration Reference* provides information about general administrative tasks required to manage your Novell® ZENworks® 10 Configuration Management SP2 system. The information in this guide is organized as follows:

- ♦ Part I, “ZENworks Control Center,” on page 17
- ♦ Part II, “ZENworks Servers and Satellite Devices,” on page 69
- ♦ Part III, “ZENworks Adaptive Agent,” on page 129
- ♦ Part IV, “ZENworks System Updates,” on page 159
- ♦ Part V, “Zone Administration,” on page 211
- ♦ Part VI, “Content,” on page 223
- ♦ Part VII, “Users,” on page 239
- ♦ Part VIII, “ZENworks 10 Product Licensing,” on page 255
- ♦ Part IX, “Database Management,” on page 263
- ♦ Part X, “Message Logging,” on page 313
- ♦ Appendix A, “Naming Conventions in ZENworks Control Center,” on page 335
- ♦ Appendix B, “Schedule Types,” on page 337
- ♦ Appendix C, “Documentation Updates,” on page 343

Audience

This guide is intended for ZENworks administrators.

Feedback

We want to hear your comments and suggestions about this manual and the other documentation included with this product. Please use the User Comments feature at the bottom of each page of the online documentation, or go to the [Novell Documentation Feedback site \(http://www.novell.com/documentation/feedback.html\)](http://www.novell.com/documentation/feedback.html) and enter your comments there.

Additional Documentation

ZENworks 10 Configuration Management is supported by other documentation (in both PDF and HTML formats) that you can use to learn about and implement the product. For additional documentation, see the [ZENworks 10 Configuration Management documentation \(http://www.novell.com/documentation/zcm10/index.html\)](http://www.novell.com/documentation/zcm10/index.html).

Documentation Conventions

In Novell documentation, a greater-than symbol (>) is used to separate actions within a step and items in a cross-reference path.

A trademark symbol (®, ™, etc.) denotes a Novell trademark. An asterisk (*) denotes a third-party trademark.

When a single pathname can be written with a backslash for some platforms or a forward slash for other platforms, the pathname is presented with a backslash. Users of platforms that require a forward slash, such as Linux*, should use forward slashes as required by your software.

ZENworks Control Center

This section contains information about using ZENworks® Control Center (ZCC) to configure system settings and perform management tasks in your Management Zone.

- ♦ [Chapter 1, “ZENworks Control Center,” on page 19](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 2, “Administrators,” on page 27](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 3, “ZENworks News,” on page 55](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 4, “System Variables,” on page 61](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 5, “Credential Vault,” on page 65](#)

ZENworks Control Center

1

You use ZENworks® Control Center to configure system settings and perform management tasks in your Management Zone.

ZENworks Control Center is installed on all ZENworks Servers in the Management Zone. You can perform all management tasks on any ZENworks Server.

- ♦ [Section 1.1, “Accessing ZENworks Control Center,” on page 19](#)
- ♦ [Section 1.2, “Accessing ZENworks Control Center through Novell iManager,” on page 20](#)
- ♦ [Section 1.3, “Navigating ZENworks Control Center,” on page 21](#)
- ♦ [Section 1.4, “Changing the Default Login Disable Values,” on page 22](#)
- ♦ [Section 1.5, “Changing the Timeout Value for ZENworks Control Center,” on page 22](#)
- ♦ [Section 1.6, “Using the Config.xml File to Modify ZENworks Control Center Settings,” on page 23](#)
- ♦ [Section 1.7, “Bookmarking ZENworks Control Center Locations,” on page 24](#)

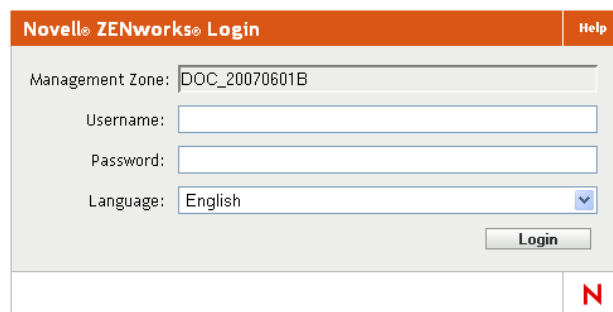
1.1 Accessing ZENworks Control Center

- 1 Using a Web browser that meets the requirements listed in “[Administration Browser Requirements](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Installation Guide*, enter the following URL:

`https://ZENworks_Server_Address:port`

Replace *ZENworks_Server_Address* with the IP address or DNS name of the ZENworks Server. You only need to specify the *port* if you are not using one of the default ports (80 or 443). ZENworks Control Center requires an HTTPS connection; HTTP requests are redirected to HTTPS.

The login dialog box is displayed.

The image shows a web-based login dialog box titled "Novell® ZENworks® Login". It has a "Help" link in the top right corner. The form contains four input fields: "Management Zone:" with the value "DOC_20070601B", "Username:" (empty), "Password:" (empty), and "Language:" with a dropdown menu set to "English". A "Login" button is located at the bottom right of the form. Below the form is a red "N" logo.

- 2 In the *Username* field, type Administrator (the default) or an administrator name that you [previously created](#) in ZENworks Control Center.

3 In the *Password* field, do one of the following:

- ♦ If you are logging in through the default Administrator account, specify the Administrator password that you created during installation.
- ♦ Specify the password for the administrator name that you created in ZENworks Control Center.

To prevent unauthorized users from gaining access to ZENworks Control Center, the administrator account is disabled after three unsuccessful login attempts, and a 60-second timeout is enforced before you can attempt another login. To change these default values, see [Section 1.4, “Changing the Default Login Disable Values,” on page 22](#).

4 Click *Login* to display ZENworks Control Center.

To log in again as a different administrator, click the *Logout* option in the upper right corner of the ZENworks Control Center window, then when the login dialog box is displayed, log in as a different administrator.

The *Logout* option includes the name of the administrator who is logged in as part of the option. For example, *Logout John*.

1.2 Accessing ZENworks Control Center through Novell iManager

ZENworks 10 Configuration Management includes a Novell® plug-in module (.npm) that you can use to access ZENworks Control Center from Novell iManager, which is a management console used by many Novell products.

The ZENworks Control Center plug-in supports iManager 2.7 only. It does not support iManager 2.6 or 2.5; it will install to these versions but does not work.

To install the ZENworks Control Center plug-in for iManager:

1 On the server where iManager is located (or on a device that has access to the iManager server), open a Web browser to the ZENworks download page:

`https://server/zenworks-setup`

where *server* is the DNS name or IP address of a ZENworks Server.

2 In the left navigation pane, click *Administrative Tools*.

3 Click *zcc.npm* and save the file to a location on the iManager server.

4 Follow the instructions in the [Novell iManager 2.7 Administration Guide \(http://www.novell.com/documentation/imanager27/imanager_admin_27/data/b8qrsg0.html\)](http://www.novell.com/documentation/imanager27/imanager_admin_27/data/b8qrsg0.html) to install and configure the plug-in module.

5 Log into iManager.

6 Click the ZENworks icon at the top of the page.

7 Enter the ZENworks Control Center URL:

`https://ZENworks_Server_Address:port`

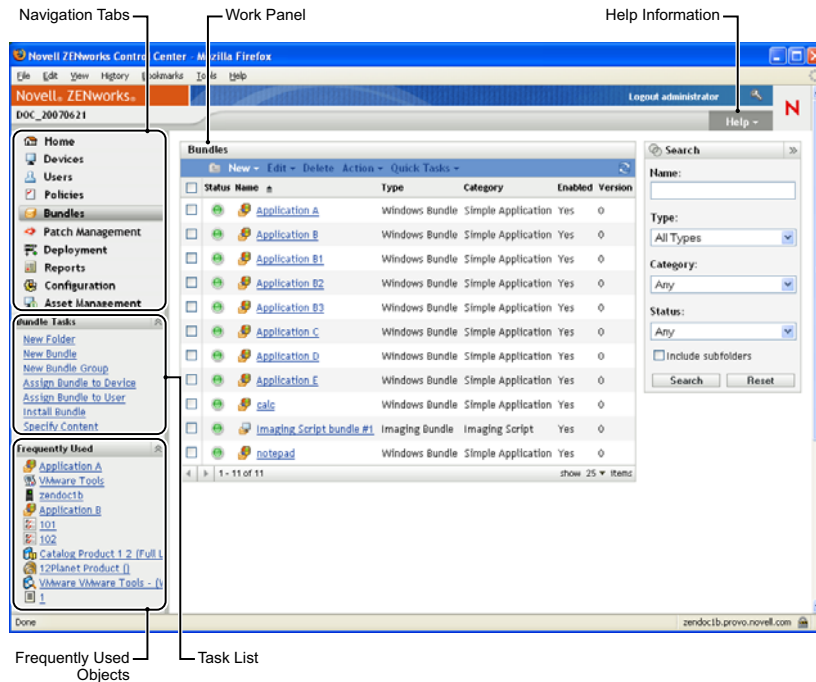
Replace *ZENworks_Server_Address* with the IP address or DNS name of the ZENworks Server. You only need to specify the *port* if the ZENworks server is not using the default port (80 or 443).

8 Click the ZENworks icon to launch ZENworks Control Center.

1.3 Navigating ZENworks Control Center

The following Servers page represents a standard view in ZENworks Control Center:

Figure 1-1 ZENworks Control Center



Navigation Tabs: The tabs in the left pane let you navigate among the functional areas of ZENworks. For example, the Servers page shown above lets you manage tasks associated with servers.

Task List: The task list in the left pane provides quick access to the most commonly performed tasks for the current page. The task list changes for each page. For example, the task list on the Bundles page displays bundle-related tasks and the task list on the Devices page displays device-related tasks.

Frequently Used Objects: The Frequently Used list in the left pane displays the 10 objects that you have accessed most often, from most used to least used. Clicking an object takes you directly to the details page for the object.

Work Panel: The work panels are where you monitor and manage your ZENworks system. The panels change depending on the current page. In the above example, there are two work panels: Devices and Search. The Devices panel lists the servers, folders, server groups, and dynamic server groups that have been created; you use this panel to manage the servers. The Search panel lets you filter the Devices panel based on criteria such as a device's name, operating system, or status.

Help Information: The *Help* button links to Help topics that provide information about the current page. The *Help* button links change depending on the current page.

1.4 Changing the Default Login Disable Values

By default, an administrator's account is disabled for 60 seconds after he or she unsuccessfully attempts to log in three times. You can change the number of login tries and the timeout length by editing a configuration file. The changes are only applied to the instance of ZENworks Control Center being run from the server where you open and modify the configuration file. To make the change applicable to all ZENworks Primary Servers, you must make the same change in each server's copy of this file.

IMPORTANT: Login attempts per administrator account are maintained in the ZENworks database, and there is only one ZENworks database per Management Zone. Therefore, if a particular administrator unsuccessfully attempts to log in to one Primary Server, that administrator is locked out of all Primary Servers in the zone. The lockout period is determined by the configuration on the server where the login attempts failed.

To modify the login tries and timeout values:

- 1 In a text editor, open the following file:

Windows: `installation_location\novell\zenworks\conf\datamodel\zdm.xml`

Linux: `/etc/opt/novell/zenworks/datamodel/zdm.xml`

- 2 Add the following lines to the file:

```
<entry key="allowedLoginAttempts">5</entry>
```

```
<entry key="lockedOutTime">300</entry>
```

The 5 in this example represents the number of retries before disabling login, and 300 represents the number of seconds (the default is 60 seconds, or 1 minute).

Keep in mind that the longer the delay before allowing a re-login after the configured number of failures (such as 5), the longer your authorized administrators must wait to access ZENworks Control Center.

IMPORTANT: If you enter 0 as the login attempts value, the lockout functionality is disabled, allowing unlimited attempts at logging in.

- 3 Save the file, then restart the zenloader and zenserver services on the Primary Server to make the changes effective.

For instructions on restarting the services, see [Section 6.2.4, “Restarting a ZENworks Service,” on page 74](#).

1.5 Changing the Timeout Value for ZENworks Control Center

By default, ZENworks Control Center has a 30-minute timeout value, so if you leave ZENworks Control Center idle on your computer for more than 30 minutes, you are prompted to log in again to continue.

The purpose of the timeout is to clear memory resources. The larger the timeout value, the longer ZENworks Control Center retains the memory resources, which might have a negative impact on the long-term performance of the device from which you have launched ZENworks Control Center, including the ZENworks Server if you have it running locally on it.

To increase or decrease the timeout value, you modify two XML files on the ZENworks Server. The change applies only to that server's ZENworks Control Center. Therefore, any devices that launch ZENworks Control Center from that server experience the same timeout value.

You can make the ZENworks Control Center timeout value different on each ZENworks Server in the Management Zone.

To change the ZENworks Control Center timeout value on a ZENworks Server:

- 1 On the ZENworks Server, open the `config.xml` file in a text editor.

- ♦ **Windows:** `\Novell\ZENworks\share\tomcat\webapps\zenworks\WEB-INF\config.xml`
- ♦ **Linux:** `/opt/novell/zenworks/share/tomcat/webapps/zenworks/WEB-INF/config.xml`

- 2 Locate the `<setting id="timeout">` entry.

- 3 Increase or decrease the timeout value, as needed.

Specify the timeout value in minutes.

- 4 Save the `config.xml` file.

- 5 Open the `custom-config.xml` file in a text editor.

This file allows you to maintain customizations of ZENworks Control Center because information contained in this file overrides any corresponding information in the `config.xml` file. Therefore, changes made in this file are not lost when the `config.xml` file is overwritten during software updates or upgrades.

The `custom-config.xml` file is located in the same directory as the `config.xml` file:

- ♦ **Windows:** `\Novell\ZENworks\share\tomcat\webapps\zenworks\WEB-INF\custom-config.xml`
- ♦ **Linux:** `/opt/novell/zenworks/share/tomcat/webapps/zenworks/WEB-INF/custom-config.xml`

- 6 Locate the `<setting id="timeout">` entry.

- 7 Set the timeout value to the same number as you entered in the `config.xml` file.

- 8 Remove the comments surrounding the `<setting id="timeout">` entry (`<!--` and `-->`).

- 9 Save the `custom-config.xml` file.

- 10 Restart the ZENworks Server by restarting the `zen-server` service.

For instructions, see [Chapter 6, “ZENworks Server,” on page 71](#).

1.6 Using the Config.xml File to Modify ZENworks Control Center Settings

In addition to enabling you to configure the timeout value for the ZENworks Control Center (see [Section 1.5, “Changing the Timeout Value for ZENworks Control Center,” on page 22](#)), the `config.xml` file lets you control several additional configuration settings. However, with the exception of the timeout value, you should not need to modify the `config.xml` settings.

- 1 On the ZENworks Server, open the `config.xml` file in a text editor.

- ♦ **Windows server path:** `\Novell\ZENworks\share\tomcat\webapps\zenworks\WEB-INF\config.xml`

- ♦ **Linux server path:** `opt/novell/zenworks/share/tomcat/webapps/zenworks/WEB-INF/config.xml`
- 2 Modify the desired setting. All settings begin with `<setting id=`.
 - timeout:** Specify the timeout value in minutes. The larger the timeout value, the longer ZENworks Control Center retains the memory resources, which might have a negative impact on the long-term performance of the device where you have launched ZENworks Control Center. If you change this value, you must also change the timeout entry in the `custom-config.xml` file. See [Section 1.5, “Changing the Timeout Value for ZENworks Control Center,” on page 22](#)).
 - debug.enabled:** Change the value to *false* if you do not want any messages written to the ZENworks Control Center log files. The default value, *true*, causes messages to be written to the log files.
 - debug.tags:** These settings control debug information. You should not change them unless instructed by Novell Support.
 - debug.log.viewstate:** This setting controls debug information. You should not change it unless instructed by Novell Support.
 - hideGettingStarted:** Suppresses the Getting Started page. This setting is not functional at this time. To manually suppress the page, open the ZENworks Control Center, display the Getting Started page, then select *Do not show me this again*.
 - noQuickTaskAutoRefresh:** This setting disables automatic refreshing of the QuickTask status dialog box. It is used to discover issues with QuickTask status updates. You should not change this setting unless instructed by Novell Support.
 - 3 Save the `config.xml` file.
 - 4 Restart the ZENworks Server by restarting the `zen-server` service. See [Chapter 6, “ZENworks Server,” on page 71](#) for instructions.


1.7 Bookmarking ZENworks Control Center Locations

The Bookmark feature allows you to use your Web browser to manage direct access to the various locations in ZENworks Control Center, instead of performing the usual navigation clicks. You can also use this feature to bookmark hard-to-find locations.

You can create bookmarks for your Web browser to locations within the following sections of ZENworks Control Center:

- ♦ *Managed* tab on the *Devices* tab
- ♦ *Policies* tab
- ♦ *Bundles* tab
- ♦ *Management Zone Settings* on the *Configuration* tab


The locations you can bookmark include such items as lists, details of objects, and configuration settings.

Wherever the Link icon () is displayed, you can create a bookmark. The icon is located in the upper right of the page. If it is not displayed, a bookmark cannot be created for that location.

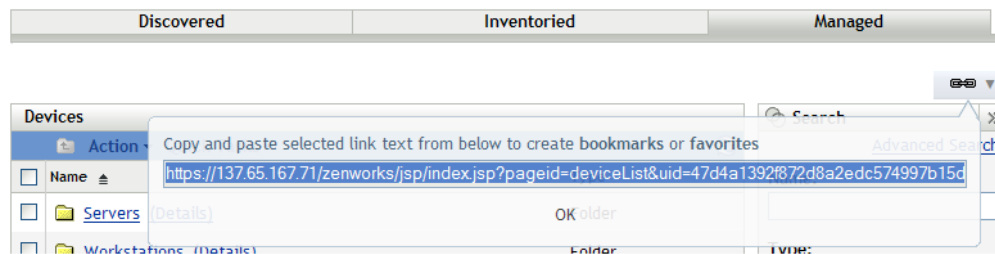
If you are logged in to ZENworks Control Center when you click a bookmark, the location is immediately displayed.

If you are not logged in to ZCC when you click a bookmark, the Login dialog box is displayed. After you enter valid credentials, the location is immediately displayed.

To create bookmarks:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, navigate to a location where you want to create a bookmark.
- 2 Click .

This opens the following dialog box, where the URL to the current location is already selected:



- 3 Press Ctrl+C to copy the URL, then click *OK* to close the dialog box.
- 4 Paste the URL as a new bookmark in your Web browser.

Administrators

2

During installation, a default ZENworks® administrator account (named Administrator) is created. This account, called a Super Administrator account, provides full administrative rights to the Management Zone.

Typically, you should create administrator accounts for each person who will perform administrative tasks. You can define these accounts as Super Administrator accounts, or you can define them as administrator accounts with restricted rights. For example, you could give a user an administrator account that only enables him or her to discover and register devices in the Management Zone. Or the account could only enable the user to assign bundles to devices, or could limit the user to performing asset management tasks such as contract, license, and document management.

IMPORTANT: In addition to the default Administrator account, you should make sure that you have at least one other Super Administrator account. This provides redundancy in case the password for the Administrator account is forgotten or lost. For information on how to create a Super Administrator account, see [Section 2.2.1, “Assigning Super Administrator Rights,” on page 30](#). If you need any further help, contact Novell® Support (<http://www.novell.com/support>).

In some cases, you might have multiple administrator accounts that require the same administrative rights. Rather than assign rights to each account individually, you can create an administrator role, assign the administrative rights to the role, and then add the accounts to the role. For example, you might have a Help Desk role that provides administrative rights required by several of your administrators.

You can use ZENworks Control Center (ZCC) or the zman command line utility to create and modify administrator accounts and assign roles. The following procedures explain how to perform these tasks by using ZCC. If you prefer the zman command line utility, see “[Administrator Commands](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.

- ♦ [Section 2.1, “Managing Administrator Accounts,” on page 27](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.2, “Managing Administrator Rights,” on page 30](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.3, “Rights Descriptions,” on page 31](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.4, “Managing Administrator Roles,” on page 42](#)

2.1 Managing Administrator Accounts

The following sections help you create and manage administrator accounts:

- ♦ [Section 2.1.1, “Creating Administrators,” on page 28](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.1.2, “Deleting Administrators,” on page 29](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.1.3, “Renaming Administrators,” on page 29](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.1.4, “Changing Administrator Passwords,” on page 29](#)

2.1.1 Creating Administrators

To create an administrator account:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.



- 2 In the Administrators panel, click *New* to display the Add New Administrator dialog box.

The 'Add new Administrator' dialog box is shown. It contains two radio buttons for creating an administrator: 'Create a new Administrator providing name and password.' (selected) and 'Based on user(s) in a user source'. The first option has input fields for 'Administrator Name:', 'Full Name:', 'Password:', and 'Retype Password:'. The second option has a table with columns 'Name' and 'In Folder', and a message 'No items selected, click add to select items'. There are 'Add' and 'Remove' buttons above the table. At the bottom, there is a checkbox 'Give this Administrator the same rights as I have.' and a note 'Fields marked with an asterisk are required.' The 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons are at the bottom.

The Add New Administrator dialog box lets you create a new administrator account by providing a name and password, or you can create a new administrator based on an existing user in the user source. Optionally, you can give the new administrator the same rights that the logged-in administrator has.

- 3 Fill in the fields:

Create a New Administrator by Providing Name, Password: Select this option if you want to create a new administrator account by manually specifying the name and password.

Administrator login names with Unicode* characters are case-sensitive. Make sure that you use the correct case for each character in the login name when it contains Unicode characters.

The new administrator can change the password the first time he or she logs in by clicking the key icon located next to the *Logout* link in the upper right corner of ZENworks Control Center.

Based on User(s) in a User Source: Select this option if you want to create a new administrator account based on information from your user source. To do so, click *Add*, then browse for and select the user you want.

The newly created administrator account is granted View rights to all objects in the Management Zone. To grant additional rights, or to limit the administrator's rights to specific folders only, you need to [modify the rights](#).

Give this Administrator the Same Rights as I Have: Select this option if you want to assign the new administrator the same rights that you have as the currently-logged in administrator.

- 4 When you have finished filling in the fields, click *OK* to add the new administrator.

You can also use the `admin-create` command in `zman` to create an administrator account. For more information, see “[Administrator Commands](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.

2.1.2 Deleting Administrators

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 In the Administrators panel, select the check box next to the administrator's name, then click *Delete*.

You can also use the `admin-delete` command in `zman` to delete an administrator account. For more information, see “[Administrator Commands](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.

2.1.3 Renaming Administrators

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 In the Administrators panel, select the check box next to the administrator's name, click *Edit*, then click *Rename*.
- 3 Specify the new name, then click *OK*.


You can also use the `admin-rename` command in `zman` to rename an administrator account. For more information, see “[Administrator Commands](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.

2.1.4 Changing Administrator Passwords

To change the password for any administrator account other than the default Administrator account:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 In the Administrators panel, select the check box next to the administrator, click *Edit*, then click *Set Password* to display the Change Administrator Password Dialog box.
- 3 Fill in the fields, then click *OK*.

To change the password for the currently logged-in administrator:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the  icon located next to the *Logout Administrator* option in the top right corner.

The Change Administrator Password dialog box is displayed.

- 2 Fill in the fields, then click *OK*.

To change the password for the default Administrator account:

- 1 Log in using the Administrator account.

- 2 Click the  icon located next to the *Logout Administrator* option in the top right corner.

The Change Administrator Password dialog box is displayed.

- 3 Fill in the fields, then click *OK*.

2.2 Managing Administrator Rights

The following sections help you manage existing administrator accounts and their assigned rights:

- ♦ [Section 2.2.1, “Assigning Super Administrator Rights,” on page 30](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.2.2, “Assigning Additional Rights,” on page 30](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.2.3, “Modifying Assigned Rights,” on page 31](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.2.4, “Removing Assigned Rights,” on page 31](#)

2.2.1 Assigning Super Administrator Rights

A Super Administrator has all rights to perform all actions in ZENworks Control Center. For more information about all of the rights that a Super Administrator has, see [Section 2.3, “Rights Descriptions,” on page 31](#). If you grant an administrator Super Administrator rights, any assigned rights that have been allowed, denied, or not set are overridden.

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 In the Administrators panel, click the administrator’s name.
- 3 Select the *Super Administrator* check box.
- 4 Click *Apply*.

2.2.2 Assigning Additional Rights

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 Click the administrator in the *Name* column of the Administrators panel.
- 3 In the Assigned Roles panel, click *Add*, then select the rights you want to assign.
- 4 Fill in the fields.

For more information, see [Section 2.3, “Rights Descriptions,” on page 31](#).

- 5 Click *OK*.

You can also use the `admin-rights-set` command in `zman` to assign additional rights for an administrator account. For more information, see [“Administrator Commands” in the ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference](#).

2.2.3 Modifying Assigned Rights

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 Click the administrator in the *Name* column of the Administrators panel.
- 3 In the Assigned Rights panel, select the check box next to the assigned right.
- 4 Click *Edit*, then modify the settings.
For more information, see [Section 2.3, “Rights Descriptions,” on page 31](#).
- 5 Click *OK*.

2.2.4 Removing Assigned Rights

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 Click the administrator in the *Name* column of the Administrators pane.
- 3 Select the check box next to the assigned right.
- 4 Click *Delete*.

You can also use the `admin-rights-delete` command in `zman` to delete assigned rights for an administrator account. For more information, see [“Administrator Commands” in the ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference](#).

2.3 Rights Descriptions

When you create additional administrator accounts you can provide full access to your zone or you can create accounts with limited rights. For example, you could create an administrator account that enables the administrator to assign bundles to devices but doesn't allow the administrator to create bundles. Or you could create an administrator account that allows access to all management tasks except those pertaining to Management Zone configuration (user sources, registration, configuration settings, and so forth). For information about creating additional administrators, see [“Creating Administrators” on page 28](#).

For [Administrator roles](#) only, a third column of rights options is added to each rights assignment dialog box: *Unset*, which allows rights set elsewhere in ZENworks to be used for the role.

The most restrictive right set in ZENworks prevails. Therefore, if you select the *Deny* option, the right is denied for any administrator assigned to that role, even if the administrator is granted that right elsewhere in ZENworks.

If you select the *Allow* option and the right has not been denied elsewhere in ZENworks, the administrator has that right for the role.

If you select the *Unset* option, the administrator is not granted the right for the role unless it is granted elsewhere in ZENworks.

You can also add, modify, or remove the assigned rights for an existing administrator. For more information, see [Section 2.2.2, “Assigning Additional Rights,” on page 30](#), [Section 2.2.3, “Modifying Assigned Rights,” on page 31](#), or [Section 2.2.4, “Removing Assigned Rights,” on page 31](#).

The following sections contain additional information about the various rights that you can assign:

- ♦ [Section 2.3.1, “Administrator Rights,” on page 32](#)

- ♦ [Section 2.3.2, “Bundle Rights,” on page 32](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.3.3, “Contract Management Rights,” on page 33](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.3.4, “Credential Rights,” on page 34](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.3.5, “Deployment Rights,” on page 34](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.3.6, “Device Rights,” on page 34](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.3.7, “Discovery Rights,” on page 35](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.3.8, “Document Rights,” on page 35](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.3.9, “Inventoried Device Rights,” on page 36](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.3.10, “LDAP Import Rights,” on page 37](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.3.11, “License Management Rights,” on page 37](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.3.12, “Patch Management Rights,” on page 37](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.3.13, “Policy Rights,” on page 38](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.3.14, “Quick Task Rights,” on page 39](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.3.15, “Remote Management Rights,” on page 39](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.3.16, “Reporting Rights,” on page 40](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.3.17, “User Rights,” on page 40](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.3.18, “ZENworks User Group Rights,” on page 41](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.3.19, “Zone Rights,” on page 41](#)

2.3.1 Administrator Rights

The Administrator Rights dialog box lets you allow the selected administrator to grant rights to other administrators and to create or delete administrator accounts for your Management Zone.

The following rights are available:

- ♦ **Grant Rights:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to grant rights to other administrators.
- ♦ **Create/Delete:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete administrator accounts.

2.3.2 Bundle Rights

The Bundle Rights dialog box lets you select folders containing bundles, then modify the rights associated with those folders.

- ♦ [“Contexts” on page 32](#)
- ♦ [“Privileges” on page 33](#)

Contexts

To select the folder that contains the bundles for which you want to assign rights, click *Add* to display the Contexts dialog box, then browse for and select the folders for which you want to assign rights.

Privileges

The *Privileges* section lets you grant the selected administrator rights to create or modify bundles, groups, and folders listed in the [Contexts](#) section.

The following rights are available:

- ♦ **Modify:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify bundles.
- ♦ **Create/Delete:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete bundles.
- ♦ **Modify Groups:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify the name or the description of the bundle groups.
- ♦ **Create/Delete Groups:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete groups.
- ♦ **Modify Group Membership:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify the list of bundles contained in bundle groups.
- ♦ **Modify Folder:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify folders.
- ♦ **Create/Delete Folders:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete folders.
- ♦ **Modify Settings:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify settings.
- ♦ **Assign Bundles:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to assign bundles to the devices or users.

2.3.3 Contract Management Rights

The Contract Management Rights dialog box lets you select folders containing contracts, then modify the rights associated with contracts and folders.

- ♦ [“Contexts” on page 33](#)
- ♦ [“Privileges” on page 33](#)

Contexts

To select the folder that contains the contracts for which you want to assign rights, click *Add* to display the Contexts dialog box, then browse for and select the folders for which you want to assign rights.

Privileges

The *Privileges* section lets you grant the selected administrator rights to contracts and folders listed in the [Contexts](#) section.

- ♦ **Modify:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify the contracts.
- ♦ **Create/Delete:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete contracts.
- ♦ **Modify Folder:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify folders.
- ♦ **Create/Delete Folders:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete folders.

2.3.4 Credential Rights

The Credential Rights dialog box lets you select folders containing credentials, then modify the rights associated with those folders.

- ♦ [“Contexts” on page 34](#)
- ♦ [“Privileges” on page 34](#)

Contexts

Click *Add* to select the folder that contains the credentials for which you want to assign rights.

Privileges

The Privileges section lets you grant the selected administrator rights to create or modify credentials, groups, and folders listed in the [Contexts](#) section.

The following rights are available:

- ♦ **Modify:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify credentials.
- ♦ **Create/Delete:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete credentials.
- ♦ **Modify Folders:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify folders.
- ♦ **Create/Delete Folders:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete folders.

For more information about the tasks you can perform on credentials, see [Chapter 5, “Credential Vault,” on page 65](#).

2.3.5 Deployment Rights

The Deployment Rights dialog box lets you allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to perform deployment operations.

Deployment lets you discover network devices and deploy the ZENworks Adaptive Agent to them so that they become managed devices in your Management Zone. For more information, see [“ZENworks Adaptive Agent Deployment”](#) in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Discovery, Deployment, and Retirement Reference*.

2.3.6 Device Rights

The Device Rights dialog box lets you select folders containing devices, then modify the rights associated with those folders.

- ♦ [“Contexts” on page 35](#)
- ♦ [“Privileges” on page 35](#)

Contexts

To select the folder that contains the devices for which you want to assign rights, click *Add* to display the Contexts dialog box, then browse for and select the folders for which you want to assign rights.

Privileges

The *Privileges* section lets you grant the selected administrator rights to work with devices, including device groups and folders listed in the [Contexts](#) section.

The following rights are available:

- ♦ **Modify:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify the device objects.
- ♦ **Create/Delete:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete device objects.
- ♦ **Modify Groups:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify groups.
- ♦ **Create/Delete Groups:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete groups.
- ♦ **Modify Group Membership:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify the list of devices contained in device groups.
- ♦ **Modify Folder:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify folders.
- ♦ **Create/Delete Folders:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete folders.
- ♦ **Modify Settings:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify device settings.
- ♦ **Assign Policies:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to assign policies to devices.
- ♦ **Assign Bundles:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to assign bundles to devices.

2.3.7 Discovery Rights

The Discovery Rights dialog box lets you allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to perform discovery operations.

The following rights are available:

- ♦ **Discovery:** Allow or deny the administrator the right necessary to perform discovery.
- ♦ **Edit Discovered Device:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to edit a discovered device.

2.3.8 Document Rights

The Document Rights dialog box lets you select folders containing documents, then modify the rights associated with documents and folders.

- ♦ [“Contexts” on page 36](#)
- ♦ [“Privileges” on page 36](#)

Contexts

To select the folder that contains the documents for which you want to assign rights, click *Add* to display the Contexts dialog box, then browse for and select the folders for which you want to assign rights.

Privileges

The *Privileges* section lets you grant the selected administrator rights to create or modify documents and their folders listed in the [Contexts](#) section.

- ♦ **Modify:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to reassign documents.
- ♦ **Create/Delete:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to import or delete documents.
- ♦ **Modify Folder:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify folders.
- ♦ **Create/Delete Folders:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete folders.

2.3.9 Inventoried Device Rights

The Inventoried Device Rights dialog box lets you select folders containing devices, then modify the rights associated with those folders.

- ♦ [“Contexts” on page 36](#)
- ♦ [“Privileges” on page 36](#)

Contexts

To select the folder that contains the inventoried devices for which you want to assign rights, click *Add* to display the Contexts dialog box, then browse for and select the folders for which you want to assign rights.

Privileges

The *Privileges* section lets you grant the selected administrator rights to work with inventoried devices, including device groups and folders listed in the [Contexts](#) section.

The following rights are available:

- ♦ **Modify:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify inventoried device objects.
- ♦ **Create/Delete:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete inventoried device objects.
- ♦ **Modify Groups:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify device groups.
- ♦ **Create/Delete Groups:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete device groups.
- ♦ **Modify Group Membership:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify the list of devices contained in device groups.
- ♦ **Modify Folder:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify folders.

- ♦ **Create/Delete Folders:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete folders.
- ♦ **Modify Settings:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify inventoried device settings.

2.3.10 LDAP Import Rights

The LDAP Import Rights dialog box lets you allow or deny importing of LDAP information.

2.3.11 License Management Rights

The License Management Rights dialog box lets you select folders containing licenses, then modify the rights associated with licenses and folders.

- ♦ [“Contexts” on page 37](#)
- ♦ [“Privileges” on page 37](#)

Contexts

To select the folder that contains the licenses for which you want to assign rights, click *Add* to display the Contexts dialog box, then browse for and select the folders for which you want to assign rights.

Privileges

The Privileges section lets you grant the administrator rights to work with the software license components associated with the contexts (folders) you selected in the [Contexts](#) section

- ♦ **Modify:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify the licenses.
- ♦ **Create/Delete:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete licenses.
- ♦ **Modify Folder:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify folders.
- ♦ **Create/Delete Folders:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete folders.

2.3.12 Patch Management Rights

The Patch Management Rights dialog box lets you determine which patch management functions an administrator can have.

The following rights are available:

- ♦ **Patch Deploy:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to deploy patches.
- ♦ **Patch Enable:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to enable a disabled patch.
- ♦ **Patch Disable:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to disable a patch.
- ♦ **Patch Update Cache:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to cache patches.
- ♦ **Assign to Baseline:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to assign a patch to the baseline.

- ♦ **Remove from Baseline:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to remove a patch that was assigned to the baseline.
- ♦ **View Patch Details:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to view patch details.
- ♦ **Export Patch:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to export patches.
- ♦ **Scan Now:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to start a scan.
- ♦ **Remove Patch:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to remove a patch.
- ♦ **Recalculate Baseline:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to recalculate the baseline.
- ♦ **Configure:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to configure the patch.

2.3.13 Policy Rights

The Policy Rights dialog box lets you select folders containing policies, then modify the rights associated with those folders.

- ♦ [“Contexts” on page 38](#)
- ♦ [“Privileges” on page 38](#)

Contexts

To select the folder that contains the policies for which you want to assign rights, click *Add* to display the Contexts dialog box, then browse for and select the folders for which you want to assign rights.

Privileges

The Privileges section lets you grant the selected administrator rights to work with policies, including policy groups and folders listed in the [Contexts](#) section

The following rights are available:

- ♦ **Modify:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify the policies.
- ♦ **Create/Delete:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete policies.
- ♦ **Modify Groups:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify groups.
- ♦ **Create/Delete Groups:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete policy groups.
- ♦ **Modify Group Membership:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify the list of policies contained in policy groups.
- ♦ **Modify Folders:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify folders.
- ♦ **Create/Delete Folders:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete folders.
- ♦ **Assign Policies:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to assign policies to the devices or users.

2.3.14 Quick Task Rights

The Quick Tasks Rights dialog box lets you select folders containing devices, then modify the Quick Task rights associated with those folders.

Quick Tasks are tasks that appear in ZENworks Control Center task lists (for example, Server Tasks, Workstation Tasks, Bundles Tasks, and so forth). When you click a task, either a wizard launches to step you through the task or a dialog box appears in which you enter information to complete the task.

You can use the Quick Tasks Rights dialog box to allow or deny the selected administrator the rights to perform certain tasks by using Quick Tasks.

- ♦ [“Contexts” on page 39](#)
- ♦ [“Privileges” on page 39](#)

Contexts

To select the folder that contains the device for which you want to assign rights, click *Add* to display the Contexts dialog box, then browse for and select the folders for which you want to assign rights.

Privileges

The *Privileges* section lets you grant the administrator rights to modify the Quick Task rights associated with the contexts (folders) you selected in the [Contexts](#) section.

The following rights are available:

- ♦ **Shutdown/Reboot/Wake Up Devices:** Specify whether the administrator can shut down, reboot, or wake up the devices in the folders you selected in the list.
- ♦ **Execute Processes:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to execute processes on the devices.
- ♦ **Refresh ZENworks Adaptive Agent:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to refresh the ZENworks Adaptive Agent on devices.
- ♦ **Install/Launch Bundles:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to install or launch bundles. The administrator must also have Assign Bundles rights for devices to install or launch bundles using Quick Task options.
- ♦ **Inventory:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to inventory devices.
- ♦ **Apply Image:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to apply an image to devices.
- ♦ **Take Image:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to take an image of a device.

2.3.15 Remote Management Rights

The Remote Management Rights dialog box lets you select folders containing devices and users, then modify the Remote Management rights associated with those folders. Granting Remote Execute rights allows the administrator to execute processes in the system space.

- ♦ [“Contexts” on page 40](#)
- ♦ [“Privileges” on page 40](#)

Contexts

To select the folder that contains the devices and users for which you want to assign rights, click *Add* to display the Contexts dialog box, then browse for and select the folders for which you want to assign rights.

Privileges

The Privileges section lets you grant the administrator rights to modify the Remote Management rights associated with the contexts (folders) you selected in the [Contexts](#) section.

The following rights are available:

- ♦ **Remote Control:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to remotely control devices.
- ♦ **Remote View:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to remotely view devices.
- ♦ **Transfer files:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to transfer files to or from devices.
- ♦ **Remote Execute:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to remotely execute processes on devices.
- ♦ **Remote Diagnostics:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to perform remote diagnostic procedures on devices.
- ♦ **Unblock Remote Management Service:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to unblock the Remote Management Service.

2.3.16 Reporting Rights

The Reporting Rights dialog box lets you allow or deny the administrator the rights to create, delete, execute, or publish reports.

2.3.17 User Rights

The User Rights dialog box lets you select folders containing users, then modify the rights associated with those folders.

- ♦ [“Contexts” on page 40](#)
- ♦ [“Privileges” on page 40](#)

Contexts

To select the folder that contains the users for which you want to assign rights, click *Add* to display the Contexts dialog box, then browse for and select the folders for which you want to assign rights.

Privileges

The Privileges section lets you grant the selected administrator rights to work with users and folders listed in the [Contexts](#) section.

The following rights are available:

- ♦ **Modify ZENworks Group Membership:** Allow or deny the rights necessary to modify ZENworks group membership. If you select this option, you must also grant rights to *Modify ZENworks Group Membership* under *ZENworks User Group Rights*.
- ♦ **Assign Policies:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to assign policies to users.
- ♦ **Assign Bundles:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to assign bundles to users.

2.3.18 ZENworks User Group Rights

The ZENworks User Group Rights dialog box lets you allow or deny the administrator the rights to create, delete, or modify groups and to modify group membership.

The following rights are available:

- ♦ **Modify Groups:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify existing user groups.
- ♦ **Create/Delete Groups:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete user groups.
- ♦ **Modify ZENworks Group Membership:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify the ZENworks group membership. If you select this option, you must also grant rights to *Modify ZENworks Group Membership* under *User Rights*.
- ♦ **Assign Policies:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify the list of policies contained in policy groups.
- ♦ **Assign Bundles:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify the list of bundles contained in policy groups.

2.3.19 Zone Rights

The Zone Rights dialog box lets you modify the administrator's rights to administer settings in your ZENworks Management Zone.

The following rights are available:

- ♦ **Modify User Sources:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify user sources.

A user source is an LDAP directory that contains users that you want to reference in your ZENworks Management Zone. When you define a user source, you also define the source containers from which you want to read users and user groups.

Modifying user sources includes adding, removing, or renaming user sources and assigning policies or bundles to user sources.

- ♦ **Create/Delete User Sources:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete user sources.
- ♦ **Modify Settings:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify your Management Zone settings.

The Management Zone settings let you manage the global configuration settings for your Management Zone. These global configuration settings are inherited by other objects (devices, users, and folders) within your Management Zone and remain in effect unless they are overridden on those objects.

- ♦ **Modify Zone Infrastructure:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify Zone infrastructure. This right includes the rights to perform the following actions in the Server Hierarchy section of the *Configuration* tab:
 - ♦ Specify content for a device
 - ♦ Move the device in the hierarchy
 - ♦ Configure a Satellite
 - ♦ Add a Satellite
 - ♦ Remove a Satellite

Other actions can be taken in the Server Hierarchy section. However, rights for those actions must be specified individually. They are not automatically included in the Modify Zone Infrastructure right. These are:

- ♦ [Delete ZENworks Server](#)
- ♦ [Refresh Device](#)
- ♦ **Configure Registration:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to configure device registration.

Registration lets you manage the various configuration settings for registering devices as managed devices in the Management Zone. It also lets you create registration keys or registration rules to help you register devices. A registration key lets you apply group and folder assignments to devices as they register. A registration rule lets you apply group and folder assignments to folders if the device meets the rule criteria.
- ♦ **Delete News Alerts:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to delete the news alerts.
- ♦ **Update News Alerts:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to update the news alerts.

2.4 Managing Administrator Roles

Perform the following tasks to manage administrator roles in the Management Zone:

- ♦ [Section 2.4.1, “Understanding Administrator Roles,” on page 43](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.4.2, “Creating a Role,” on page 45](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.4.3, “Assigning Roles,” on page 47](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.4.4, “Editing a Role,” on page 51](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.4.5, “Renaming a Role,” on page 54](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.4.6, “Deleting a Role,” on page 54](#)

2.4.1 Understanding Administrator Roles

The roles feature allows you to specify rights that can be assigned as roles for ZENworks administrators. You can create a specialized role, then assign administrators to that role to allow or deny them the ZENworks Control Center rights that you specify for that role. For example, you could create a Help Desk role with the ZENworks Control Center rights that you want help desk operators to have.

The following sections explain the different locations in ZENworks Control Center where you can manage roles:

- ♦ “Roles Panel” on page 43
- ♦ “Role Settings Page” on page 44
- ♦ “Administrator Settings Page” on page 45

Roles Panel

The Roles panel displays the following information:

Figure 2-1 Roles Panel

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Types	Allow	Deny
<input type="checkbox"/>	Bundles Role	Administrator Rights Bundle Rights	GR CD M CD MG CDG MF CDF	MGM
<input type="checkbox"/>	Devices Role	Device Rights	M MG MGM MF MS AP AB	CD CDG CDF

- ♦ **Name:** You specified this when you created the role. You can rename the role here. You can also click a role name to edit its rights configuration.
- ♦ **Types:** Lists each ZENworks Control Center rights type that is configured for the role.
- ♦ **Allow:** For each type listed, abbreviations are displayed to indicate the rights that are allowed for that role.
- ♦ **Deny:** For each type listed, abbreviations are displayed to indicate the rights that are denied for that role.

If a right is configured as *Unset*, its abbreviation is not listed in either the *Allow* or *Deny* column.

In the Roles panel, you can [add](#), [assign](#), [edit](#), [rename](#), and [delete](#) a role.

Role Settings Page

If you click a role in the *Name* column on the Roles panel, the Role Settings page is displayed with the following information:

Figure 2-2 Role Settings Page

[Configuration](#) > Bundles Role

General

Object type:

Role

GUID:

f4ccf0bcf5b8ab9007540f078572101e

Description:

Role to restrict rights to Bundles.

Rights

Add Edit Delete

<input type="checkbox"/>	Type	Allow	Deny
<input type="checkbox"/>	Administrator Rights	GR CD	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Bundle Rights	M CD MG CDG MF CDF	MGM

1 - 2 of 2

show 5 items

Assigned Administrators

Add Edit Delete

<input type="checkbox"/>	Administrator	Type	Context
<input type="checkbox"/>	Admin1	Administrator Rights Bundle Rights	Zone /Bundles

1 - 1 of 1

show 5 items

Apply

Reset

- ♦ **General panel:** Displays the ZENworks Control Center object type (Role), its GUID, and a description that you can edit here.
- ♦ **Rights panel:** Displays the ZENworks Control Center rights configured for the role. You can add, edit, and delete the rights in this panel.
- ♦ **Assigned Administrators panel:** Lists the administrators assigned to this role. You can add, edit, or delete the administrators in this panel.

Administrator Settings Page

If you click an administrator in the *Administrator* column on the Roles Settings page, the Administrator Settings page is displayed with the following information:

Figure 2-3 Administrator Settings Page

[Configuration](#) > Admin1

General

Administrator Full Name:

☐ Super Administrator

Note: If the Super Administrator check box is checked, then this Administrator is a Super Administrator with all rights. This will override any assigned rights that may be allowed, denied, or not set.

Assigned Rights

Add Edit Delete

<input type="checkbox"/> Type	Context	Rights
No items available.		

Note: Every admin receives view rights and they are not removable.

Assigned Roles

Add Edit Delete

<input type="checkbox"/> Role	Type	Context
<input type="checkbox"/> Bundles Role	Administrator Rights Bundle Rights	Zone /Bundles

1 - 1 of 1

show 5 items

Apply

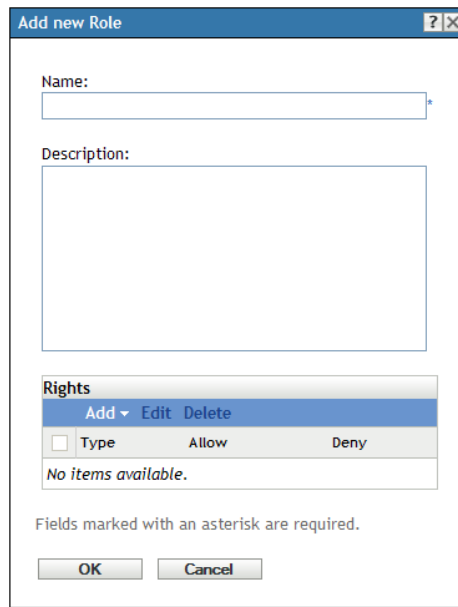
Reset

- ♦ **General panel:** Displays the administrator's full name and provides the option to specify the administrator as a Super Administrator, which grants all ZENworks Control Center rights to that administrator, regardless of what is configured for the role.
- ♦ **Rights panel:** Lists the rights that are assigned to the administrator, independent of rights granted or denied by any roles assigned to the administrator. The rights listed in this panel override any rights assigned by a role. You can add, edit, and delete rights in this panel.
- ♦ **Assigned Roles panel:** Lists the roles assigned to this administrator. You can add, edit, and delete roles in this panel.

2.4.2 Creating a Role

A role can include one or more rights types. You can configure as many roles as you need. To configure the role's function:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, click the *Configuration* tab, then in the Roles panel, click *New* to open the Add New Role dialog box:



Add new Role

Name:

Description:

Rights

Add Edit Delete

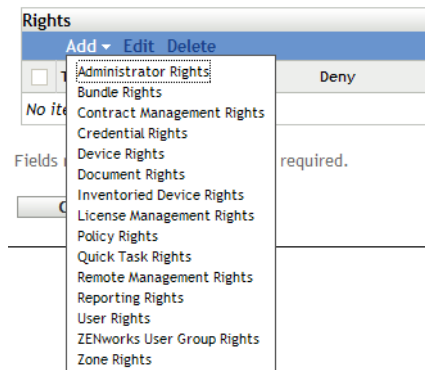
☐ Type Allow Deny

No items available.

Fields marked with an asterisk are required.

OK Cancel

- 2 Specify a name and description for the role.
- 3 To configure the rights for the role, click *Add* and select a rights type from the drop-down list:



Rights

Add Edit Delete

☐ Administrator Rights Deny

No items available.

Fields marked with an asterisk are required.

Bundle Rights

Contract Management Rights

Credential Rights

Device Rights

Document Rights

Inventoried Device Rights

License Management Rights

Policy Rights

Quick Task Rights

Remote Management Rights

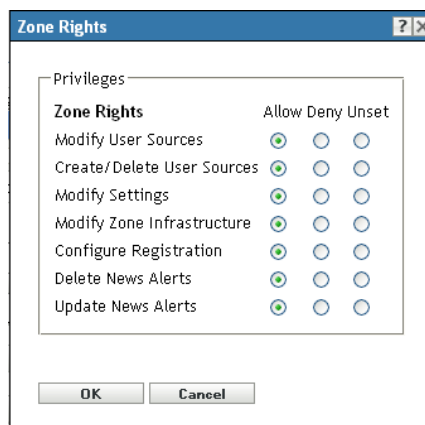
Reporting Rights

User Rights

ZENworks User Group Rights

Zone Rights

- 4 In the following dialog box, select whether each privilege should be allowed, denied, or left unset.



Zone Rights

Privileges

Zone Rights	Allow	Deny	Unset
Modify User Sources	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Create/Delete User Sources	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Modify Settings	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Modify Zone Infrastructure	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Configure Registration	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Delete News Alerts	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Update News Alerts	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

OK Cancel

The most restrictive right set in ZENworks prevails. If you select the *Deny* option, the right is denied for any administrator assigned to that role, even if the administrator is granted that right elsewhere in ZENworks.

If you select the *Allow* option and the right has not been denied elsewhere in ZENworks, the administrator has that right for the role.

If you select the *Unset* option, the administrator is not granted the right for the role unless it is granted elsewhere in ZENworks.

- 5 Click *OK* to continue.
- 6 To add another rights type to the role, repeat [Step 3](#) through [Step 5](#).
- 7 Click *OK* to exit the Add New Role dialog box.

The role is now displayed in the Roles panel. To assign it to administrators, see [Section 2.4.3, “Assigning Roles,” on page 47](#).

2.4.3 Assigning Roles

You can assign roles to administrators, or administrators to roles:

- ♦ [“Assigning Roles to Administrators” on page 47](#)
- ♦ [“Assigning Administrators to Roles” on page 49](#)

Assigning Roles to Administrators

Rights can be set in multiple locations in ZENworks Control Center, including for administrators. Administrators can be assigned to multiple roles.

If an administrator has rights conflicts because different conditions are set for a particular right in ZENworks Control Center, the *Deny* option is used if it is set anywhere for the administrator. In other words, *Deny* always supersedes *Allow* when there are rights conflicts.

To assign roles to an administrator:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, click the *Configuration* tab, then in the Administrators panel, click an administrator name in the *Name* column to open the administrator’s settings page:

[Configuration](#) > Admin1

General

Administrator Full Name:

☐ Super Administrator

Note: If the Super Administrator check box is checked, then this Administrator is a Super Administrator with all rights. This will override any assigned rights that may be allowed, denied, or not set.

Assigned Rights

[Add](#) [Edit](#) [Delete](#)

<input type="checkbox"/> Type	Context	Rights
No items available.		

Note: Every admin receives view rights and they are not removable.

Assigned Roles

[Add](#) [Edit](#) [Delete](#)

<input type="checkbox"/> Role	Type	Context
<input type="checkbox"/> Bundles Role	Administrator Rights Bundle Rights	Zone /Bundles

1 - 1 of 1

show 5 items

2 In the Assigned Roles panel, click *Add* to display the Select Role dialog box.

Select Role

Select a role

Look in:

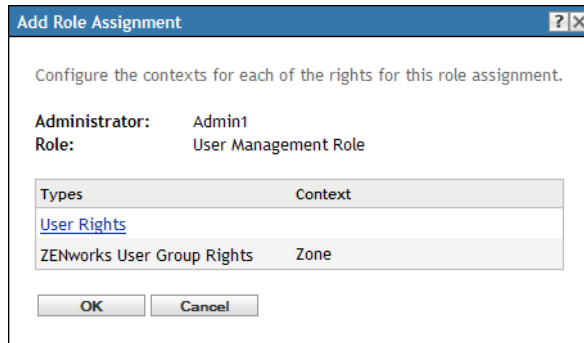
Name filter: Items of type:

Name	Type
Asset Management Role	Role
User Management Role	Role

1 - 2 of 2

show 25 items

- 3 Browse for and select the roles for the administrator, then click *OK* to display the Add Role Assignment dialog box:



The Add Role Assignment dialog box is displayed so that you can define the contexts for the role types included in the role. A context allows you to limit where granted rights can be used. For example, you can specify that the administrator's Quick Task Rights role is limited to the Devices folder in ZENworks Control Center.

Contexts are not required. However, if you do not specify a context, the right is not granted because it has no information about where it can be applied.

Rights that are global automatically display *Zone* as the context.

- 4 If necessary, assign contexts to role types where they are missing:
 - 4a In the *Types* column, click a role type.

Role types that are designated with the *Zone* context are not clickable because they are generally available.
 - 4b In the subsequent Select Context dialog box, click *Add* and browse for a ZENworks Control Center context.

While browsing, you can select multiple contexts in the Browse dialog box.
 - 4c When you are finished selecting the contexts for a particular role, click *OK* to close the Select Contexts dialog box.
 - 4d Repeat [Step 4a](#) through [Step 4c](#) as necessary to assign contexts to the roles.
 - 4e When you are finished, click *OK* to close the Add Role Assignment dialog box.
- 5 To add another administrator, repeat [Step 2](#) and [Step 4](#).
- 6 Click *Apply* to save the changes.

Assigning Administrators to Roles

Rights can be set in multiple locations in ZENworks Control Center. Administrators can be assigned to multiple roles.

If an administrator has rights conflicts because different conditions are set for a particular right in ZENworks Control Center, the *Deny* option is used if it is set anywhere for the administrator. In other words, *Deny* always supersedes *Allow* when there are rights conflicts.

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, click the *Configuration* tab, then in the Roles panel, click a role name in the *Name* column to open the role's settings page:

[Configuration](#) > Bundles Role

General

Object type:

Role

GUID:

f4ccf0bcf5b8ab9007540f078572101e

Description:

Role to restrict rights to Bundles.

Rights

Add ▾ Edit Delete

<input type="checkbox"/>	Type	Allow	Deny
<input type="checkbox"/>	Administrator Rights	GR CD	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Bundle Rights	M CD MG CDG MF CDF	MGM

1 - 2 of 2

show 5 ▾ items

Assigned Administrators

Add Edit Delete

<input type="checkbox"/>	Administrator	Type	Context
<input type="checkbox"/>	Admin1	Administrator Rights Bundle Rights	Zone /Bundles

1 - 1 of 1

show 5 ▾ items

Apply

Reset

2 In the Assigned Administrators panel, click *Add* to display the Select Administrator dialog box:

Select Administrator

Select an administrator

Look in:

/Administrators

Name filter:

Items of type:

All Types

Name	Type
Admin1	Administrator
Admin2	Administrator

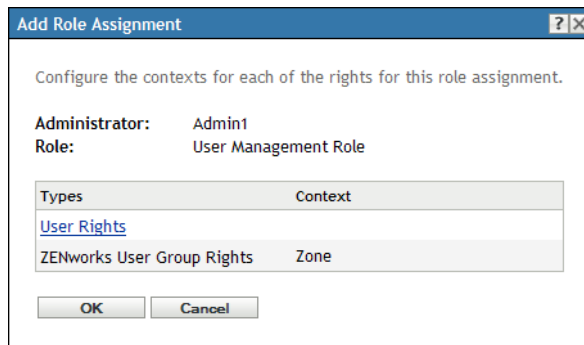
1 - 2 of 2

show 25 ▾ items

OK

Cancel

- 3 Browse for and select the administrators for the role, then click *OK* to display the Add Role Assignment dialog box:



The Add Role Assignment dialog box is displayed so that you can define the contexts for the role types included in the role. A context allows you to limit where granted rights can be used. For example, you can specify that the administrator's Quick Task Rights role is limited to the Devices folder in ZENworks Control Center.

Contexts are not required. However, if you do not specify a context, the right is not granted because it has no information about where it can be applied.

Rights that are global automatically display *Zone* as the context.

- 4 If necessary, assign contexts to role types where they are missing:
 - 4a In the *Types* column, click a role type.

Role types that are designated with the *Zone* context are not clickable because they are generally available.
 - 4b In the subsequent Select Context dialog box, click *Add* and browse for a ZENworks Control Center context.

While browsing, you can select multiple contexts in the Browse dialog box.
 - 4c When you are finished selecting the contexts for a particular role, click *OK* to close the Select Contexts dialog box.
 - 4d Repeat [Step 4a](#) through [Step 4c](#) as necessary to assign contexts to the roles.
 - 4e When you are finished, click *OK* to close the Add Role Assignment dialog box.
- 5 To add another role, repeat [Step 2](#) and [Step 4](#).
- 6 Click *Apply* to save the changes.

2.4.4 Editing a Role

You can edit a role's configuration at any time. After you apply the edited role, its changes are then effective for any assigned administrator.

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, click the *Configuration* tab, then in the Roles panel, click *Edit* to open the Edit Role dialog box:

Edit Role

Name: Bundles Role

Description:
Role to restrict rights to Bundles.

Rights

Type	Allow	Deny
<input type="checkbox"/> Administrator Rights	GR CD	
<input type="checkbox"/> Bundle Rights	M CD MG CDG MF CDF MGM	

Fields marked with an asterisk are required.

OK Cancel

- 2 To edit the description, make the changes directly in the *Description* field.
- 3 To edit existing rights, do the following:
 - 3a In the Rights panel, select the check box for a rights type, then click *Edit* to open the following dialog box:

Zone Rights

Privileges

Zone Rights	Allow	Deny	Unset
Modify User Sources	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Create/Delete User Sources	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Modify Settings	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Modify Zone Infrastructure	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Configure Registration	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Delete News Alerts	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Update News Alerts	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

OK Cancel

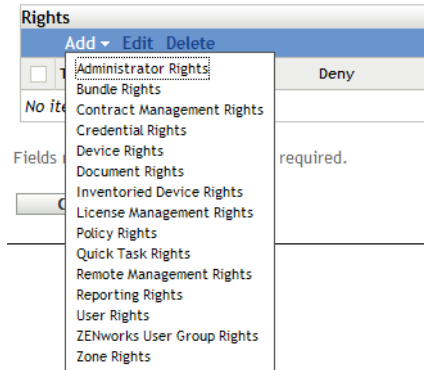
- 3b For each privilege, select whether it should be allowed, denied, or left unset.
- The most restrictive right set in ZENworks prevails. If you select the *Deny* option, the right is denied for any administrator assigned to that role, even if the administrator is granted that right elsewhere in ZENworks.
- If you select the *Allow* option and the right has not been denied elsewhere in ZENworks, the administrator has that right for the role.
- If you select the *Unset* option, the administrator is not granted the right for the role unless it is granted elsewhere in ZENworks.

3c Click *OK* to continue.

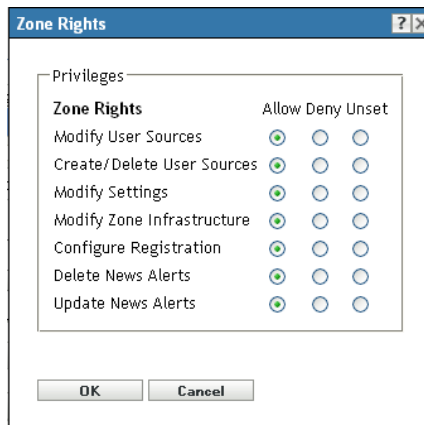
3d To edit another existing role, repeat [Step 3a](#) through [Step 3c](#).

4 (Optional) To add new rights:

4a In the Rights panel, click *Add*, then select one of the rights types from the drop-down list:



4b In the Rights dialog box, select whether each privilege should be allowed, denied, or left unset.



The most restrictive right set in ZENworks prevails. If you select the *Deny* option, the right is denied for any administrator assigned to that role, even if the administrator is granted that right elsewhere in ZENworks.

If you select the *Allow* option and the right has not been denied elsewhere in ZENworks, the administrator has that right for the role.

If you select the *Unset* option, the administrator is not granted the right for the role unless it is granted elsewhere in ZENworks.

4c Click *OK* to continue.

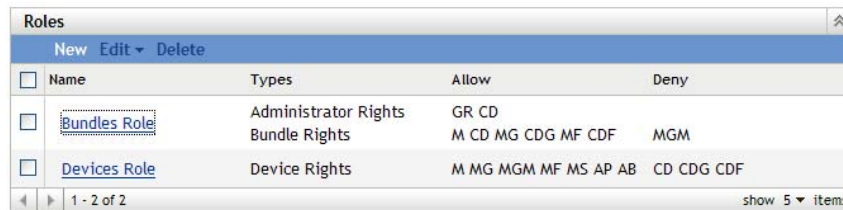
4d To add another rights type to the role, repeat [Step 4a](#) through [Step 4c](#).

5 To exit the dialog box and save your changes to the role, click *OK*.

2.4.5 Renaming a Role

Role names can be changed at any time. The changed role name is automatically replicated wherever it is displayed in ZENworks Control Center.

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, click the *Configuration* tab, then in the Roles panel, select the check box for the role to be renamed.



<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Types	Allow	Deny
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Bundles Role	Administrator Rights Bundle Rights	GR CD M CD MG CDG MF CDF	MGM
<input type="checkbox"/>	Devices Role	Device Rights	M MG MGM MF MS AP AB	CD CDG CDF

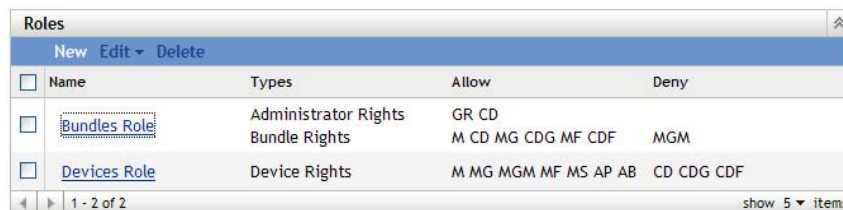
- 2 Click *Edit > Rename* to open the Rename Role dialog box:
- 3 Specify the new role name, then click *OK*.

2.4.6 Deleting a Role

When you delete a role, its rights configurations are no longer applicable to any administrator that was assigned to the role.

Deleted roles cannot be recovered. You must re-create them.

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, click the *Configuration* tab, then in the Roles panel, select the check box for the role to be deleted.



<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Types	Allow	Deny
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Bundles Role	Administrator Rights Bundle Rights	GR CD M CD MG CDG MF CDF	MGM
<input type="checkbox"/>	Devices Role	Device Rights	M MG MGM MF MS AP AB	CD CDG CDF

- 2 Click *Delete*, then confirm that you want to delete the role.

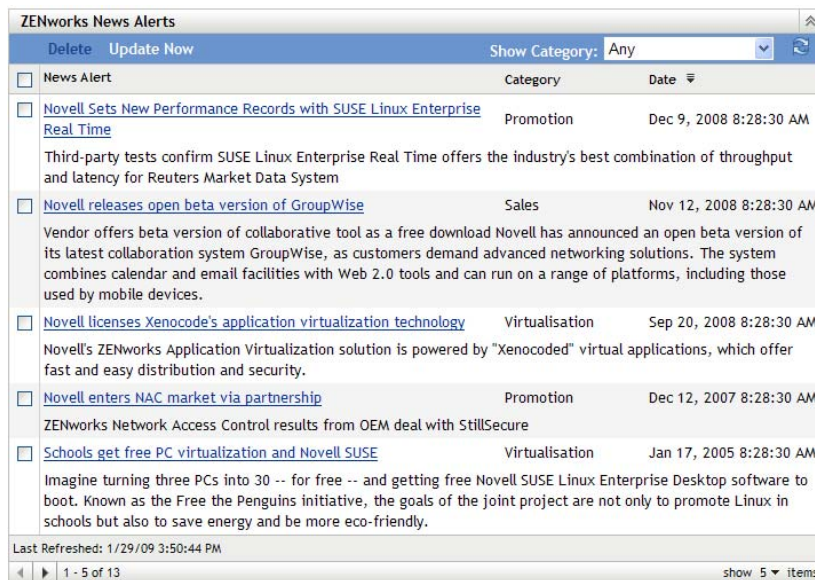
Novell® ZENworks® 10 Configuration Management displays information from Novell about current top issues, news updates, promotions, and so forth on the home page of ZENworks Control Center.

The following sections provide information on deleting, updating, and sorting the news alerts, and on viewing the news. You can also configure the server and the schedule for downloading the news.

- ♦ [Section 3.1, “Managing ZENworks News Alerts,” on page 55](#)
- ♦ [Section 3.2, “Configuring ZENworks News Settings,” on page 56](#)

3.1 Managing ZENworks News Alerts

Figure 3-1 ZENworks News Alerts



ZENworks News Alerts		
<input type="checkbox"/> News Alert	Category	Date
<input type="checkbox"/> Novell Sets New Performance Records with SUSE Linux Enterprise Real Time Third-party tests confirm SUSE Linux Enterprise Real Time offers the industry's best combination of throughput and latency for Reuters Market Data System	Promotion	Dec 9, 2008 8:28:30 AM
<input type="checkbox"/> Novell releases open beta version of GroupWise Vendor offers beta version of collaborative tool as a free download Novell has announced an open beta version of its latest collaboration system GroupWise, as customers demand advanced networking solutions. The system combines calendar and email facilities with Web 2.0 tools and can run on a range of platforms, including those used by mobile devices.	Sales	Nov 12, 2008 8:28:30 AM
<input type="checkbox"/> Novell licenses Xenocode's application virtualization technology Novell's ZENworks Application Virtualization solution is powered by "Xenocoded" virtual applications, which offer fast and easy distribution and security.	Virtualisation	Sep 20, 2008 8:28:30 AM
<input type="checkbox"/> Novell enters NAC market via partnership ZENworks Network Access Control results from OEM deal with StillSecure	Promotion	Dec 12, 2007 8:28:30 AM
<input type="checkbox"/> Schools get free PC virtualization and Novell SUSE Imagine turning three PCs into 30 -- for free -- and getting free Novell SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop software to boot. Known as the Free the Penguins initiative, the goals of the joint project are not only to promote Linux in schools but also to save energy and be more eco-friendly.	Virtualisation	Jan 17, 2005 8:28:30 AM

Last Refreshed: 1/29/09 3:50:44 PM

1 - 5 of 13 show 5 items

Review the following sections to manage the ZENworks News Alerts:

- ♦ [Section 3.1.1, “Deleting the News Alerts,” on page 55](#)
- ♦ [Section 3.1.2, “Updating the News Alerts,” on page 56](#)
- ♦ [Section 3.1.3, “Displaying the News Alerts Based on the Selected Category,” on page 56](#)
- ♦ [Section 3.1.4, “Viewing the News,” on page 56](#)
- ♦ [Section 3.1.5, “Sorting the News Alerts,” on page 56](#)

3.1.1 Deleting the News Alerts

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Home*.

- 2 In ZENworks News Alerts panel, select the check box next to the news alerts you want to delete.
- 3 Click *Delete*.

3.1.2 Updating the News Alerts

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Home*.
- 2 In ZENworks News Alerts panel, click *Update Now*.
The latest ZENworks news updates downloaded by the Primary Server are displayed in the ZENworks News Alerts panel. This might take some time.

3.1.3 Displaying the News Alerts Based on the Selected Category

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Home*.
- 2 In ZENworks News Alerts panel, select a category in the drop-down list next to *Show Category* to display all the news alerts based on the selected category.

3.1.4 Viewing the News

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Home*.
- 2 In ZENworks News Alerts panel, click the news alert to display the news in a new browser window.

3.1.5 Sorting the News Alerts

By default, the news alerts are sorted by the publication date. You can also sort the news alerts alphabetically by the title or category.

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Home*.
- 2 In ZENworks News Alerts panel, click *News Alert* to sort the news alerts alphabetically.
or
Click *Category* to sort the news alerts by category.
or
Click *Date* to sort the news alerts by date.

3.2 Configuring ZENworks News Settings

The ZENworks News Settings page lets you configure a dedicated news server and a schedule to download the ZENworks news. By default, the news is downloaded at midnight by the Primary Server of the Management Zone.

Figure 3-2 News Download Schedule

The screenshot shows a window titled "News Download Schedule". At the top, it states: "To download news in a restrictive environment, select a server that has access to the Internet through proxy. Otherwise, news is randomly downloaded by a primary server in the zone." Below this is a field for "Dedicated News Server:" with a browse button and a close button. A note says: "This setting allows the administrator to configure a download schedule for News." The "Schedule Type:" is set to "Recurring". Under "Days of the week", a table shows checkboxes for Sun, Mon, Tue, Wed, Thu, Fri, and Sat, with Sun, Mon, Tue, and Fri checked. The "Start Time:" is set to 12:00 am. There is a "Hide Options" link. Below it are several unchecked checkboxes: "Process immediately if device unable to execute on schedule", "Use Coordinated Universal Time (Current UTC 5:34 AM)", and "Start at a random time between Start and End Times". The "End Time:" is set to 1:00 am. At the bottom, there is an unchecked checkbox "Restrict schedule execution to the following date range:" with "Start Date:" set to 12/17/08 and "End Date:" set to 12/17/08.

Review the following sections to configure the settings to download the news:

- ♦ [Section 3.2.1, “Dedicated News Server,” on page 57](#)
- ♦ [Section 3.2.2, “Schedule Type,” on page 58](#)

3.2.1 Dedicated News Server

By default, any available server in the Management Zone can be used to download the news updates. However, you can specify one ZENworks Server to be dedicated to handle the news downloads. The server that you select should have access to the Internet, either directly or through a proxy server.

The following sections contain more information:


- ♦ [“Specifying a Dedicated News Server” on page 57](#)
- ♦ [“Clearing a Dedicated News Server” on page 58](#)

Specifying a Dedicated News Server

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane.
- 2 On the *Configuration* tab, expand the *Management Zone Settings* section (if necessary), click *Infrastructure Management*, then click *ZENworks News Settings* to display the News Download Schedule panel.
- 3 In the *Dedicated News Server* field, browse for and select a server, then click *OK*.
The server’s identification is displayed in the *Dedicated News Server* field.
- 4 (Conditional) If you need to revert to the last saved dedicated server setting, click *Reset*.
This resets the dedicated server to the last saved setting, such as when you last clicked *Apply* or *OK*.
- 5 Click *Apply* to make the changes effective.
- 6 Either click *OK* to close the page, or continue with configuring the [schedule type](#).
If you did not click *Apply* to make your changes effective, clicking *OK* does so. Clicking *Cancel* also closes the page, but loses your unapplied changes.

Clearing a Dedicated News Server

Clearing a dedicated update server causes the news updates to be retrieved randomly from any server in the Management Zone.

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane.
- 2 On the *Configuration* tab, expand the *Management Zone Settings* section (if necessary), click *Infrastructure Management*, then click *ZENworks News Settings* to display the News Download Schedule panel.
- 3 Click  to remove the dedicated server from the *Dedicated News Server* field.
- 4 (Conditional) If you need to revert to the last saved dedicated server setting, click *Reset*.
This resets the dedicated server to the last saved setting, such as when you last clicked *Apply* or *OK*.
- 5 Click *Apply* to make the change effective.

3.2.2 Schedule Type

You can configure the schedule for downloading the news:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 Click *Management Zone Settings* to expand its options, click *Infrastructure Management* to expand its options, then select *ZENworks News Settings*.
- 3 (Conditional) To exclude scheduled checking for news updates, click the down-arrow in the *Schedule Type* field, select *No Schedule*, click *Apply* to save the schedule change, then skip to [Step 6](#).

With this option selected, you must download the news updates manually. For more information, see [“Updating the News Alerts” on page 56](#).

- 4 (Conditional) To set a recurring schedule for checking for the news updates, click the down-arrow in the *Schedule Type* field, then select *Recurring*.
- 5 Fill in the fields:
 - 5a Select one or more check boxes for the days of the week when you want to check for news updates.
 - 5b Use the *Start Time* box to specify the time of day for checking to occur.
 - 5c (Optional) Click *More Options*, then select the following options as necessary:
 - ♦ **Process Immediately if Device Unable to Execute on Schedule:** Causes checking for news updates to occur as soon as possible if the checking cannot be done according to schedule. For example, if a server is down at the scheduled time, checking for news updates occurs immediately after the server comes back online.
 - ♦ **Use Coordinated Universal Time:** Causes the schedule to interpret the times you specify as UTC instead of local time.
 - ♦ **Start at a Random Time Between Start and End Times:** Allows checking for news updates to occur at a random time between the time you specify here and the time you specified in [Step 5b](#). Fill in the *End Time* fields.
 - ♦ **Restrict Schedule Execution to the Following Date Range:** In addition to the other options, you can specify a date range to check for the news updates.

5d (Conditional) If you need to revert to the last saved schedule, click *Reset* at the bottom of the page.

This resets all data to the last saved state, such as when you last clicked *Apply* or *OK*.

5e When you have finished configuring the recurring schedule, click *Apply* to save the schedule change.

6 To exit this page, click *OK* when you are finished configuring the schedule.

If you did not click *Apply* to make your changes effective, clicking *OK* does so. Clicking *Cancel* also closes the page, but loses your unapplied changes.

System Variables

4

System variables let you define variables that can be used to replace paths, names, and so forth as you enter information in ZENworks® Control Center.

You can define system variables at three levels:

- ♦ **Management Zone:** The system variables are inherited by all device folders, devices, and bundles.
- ♦ **Device Folder:** The system variables are inherited by all devices contained within the folder or its subfolders.
- ♦ **Device or Bundle:** The system variables apply only to the device or bundle for which they are configured.

The following sections contain more information:

- ♦ [Section 4.1, “Understanding System Variables,” on page 61](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.2, “Adding System Variables,” on page 62](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.3, “Removing System Variables,” on page 63](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.4, “Editing System Variables,” on page 63](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.5, “Using System Variables,” on page 63](#)

4.1 Understanding System Variables

The following examples illustrate some uses of system variables:

- ♦ **Specifying Paths and Filenames in Actions:** When you create an Edit INI File action, for example, you specify a .ini file and configure the changes to be performed on that file. During the creation process, you can specify the full path to the file (for example, C:\Program Files\OpenOffice.org 2.0\program\setup.ini).

Instead of specifying the entire path and filename, you can create a system variable. For example, the name of the variable can be OpenOffice INI and the value can be the full path to the file. Now, instead of specifying the full path and filename when you create the action, you can type `${OpenOffice INI}` in the *Filename* field.

An advantage of using a system variable rather than typing the full path and filename is that you can specify this particular .ini file in many different types of actions. Suppose that the location of the .ini file changes. Instead of editing the path in each action, you can edit the path in the system variable and all the actions still point to the correct path.

You can generalize the path even more by creating a system variable named ProgramFiles with the value of C:\program files. In the future, when you specify a path, you can type `${ProgramFiles}` and then specify the remaining path to the specific file. For example, `${ProgramFiles}\OpenOffice 2.0\program\setup.ini`. Again, if the path to the C:\program files directory changes in the future, you only need to change the path in the system variable, rather than in each bundle that uses that location in a path.

- ♦ **Overriding Inherited Settings:** When configuring system variables for a folder, device, or bundle, you can override an inherited variable by defining a new variable with the same name but a different value. For example, if `ProgramFiles=C:\` is defined at the Management Zone, you can override it by defining `ProgramFiles=D:\` at the device folder level or at the device or bundle.

You can use a system variable when creating a bundle. Depending on the location of the targeted device object in the folder hierarchy, the value can be different.

For example, suppose that all of your applications are installed in `C:\program` files except for specific applications used by the accounting department, which are installed in `D:\program` files. You define the `ProgramFiles` variable at the Management Zone level to point to `C:\program` files. For the accounting applications, you create a device folder called Accounting Department to contain the devices in the accounting department. You can set the value for the `ProgramFiles` variable to `D:\program` files on the Accounting Department device folder level. When the same bundle is applied to devices, the path to the program files directory is on the `C:\` drive for all targeted devices except for those contained in the Accounting Department device folder. For those devices, the program files directory points to the `D:\` drive.

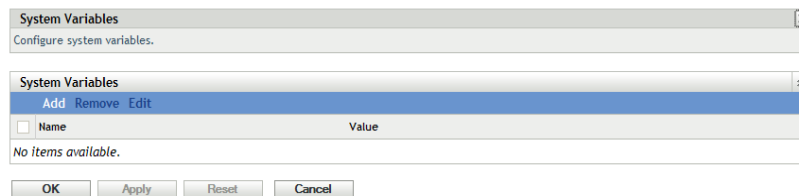
4.2 Adding System Variables

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.



- 2 In the Management Zone Settings list, click *Device Management*.
- 3 Click *System Variables*.

[Configuration](#) > [System Variables](#)



- 4 Click *Add*, provide the name and value for the variable, then click *OK*.

When configuring system variables for a folder, device, or bundle, you can override an inherited variable by defining a new variable with the same name but a different value. For example, if `Var1=c:\` is inherited, you can override it by defining `Var1=d:\`.

Variable names cannot include spaces and must be unique at the level where they are defined. For example, you cannot have two variables named `Var1` defined at the device level (unless one is inherited, in which case the device-level variable overrides the inherited variable).

Variable values cannot include the characters & and <.

- 5 Click *Apply*.

4.3 Removing System Variables

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 In the *Management Zone Settings* list, click *Device Management*.
- 3 Click *System Variables*.
- 4 Select the check box next to the variable (or variables).
- 5 Click *Remove*.
- 6 Click *Apply*.

4.4 Editing System Variables

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 In the *Management Zone Settings* list, click *Device Management*.
- 3 Click *System Variables*.
- 4 Select the check box next to the variable, then click *Edit*.
- 5 Modify the *Name* and *Value* fields as desired, then click *OK*.
- 6 Click *Apply*.

4.5 Using System Variables

- 1 Use the following syntax:

`${ VAR_NAME }`

Replace `VAR_NAME` with the name of the variable.

Credential Vault

5

The Credential Vault stores the credentials used by Novell® ZENworks® 10 Configuration Management actions and tasks that require authentication to access a particular resource.

For example, if you want to create a third-party Imaging bundle by using the image files stored in a shared-network image repository that requires authentication, you can add a credential that includes the login name and password for the repository in the credential vault. During the creation of the third-party Imaging bundle, you can specify the credential name to access the repository.

Currently, third-party imaging uses credentials stored in the credential vault.

You can use ZENworks Control Center or the zman command line utility to manage credentials. The procedures in this section explain how to manage credentials by using ZENworks Control Center. If you prefer the zman command line utility, see “[Credential Commands](#)” in the [ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference](#).

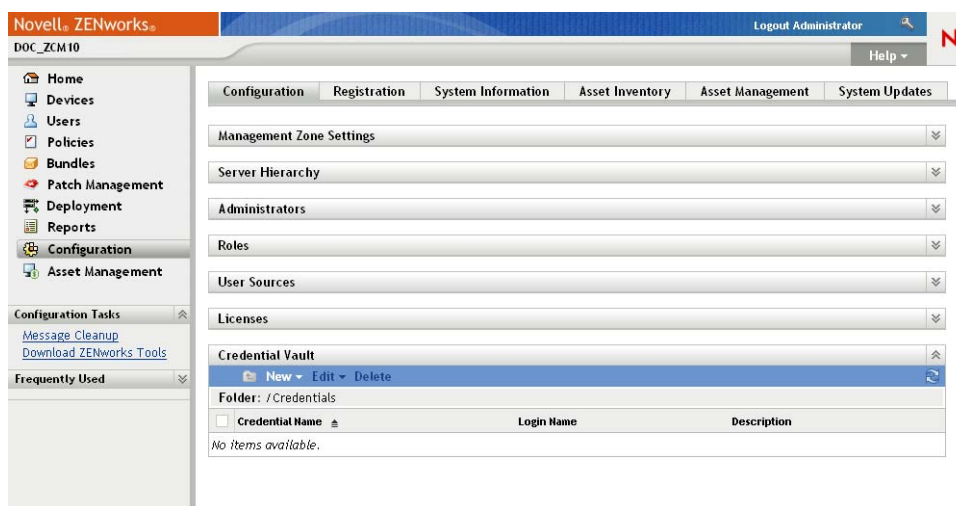
Currently, third-party imaging uses credentials stored in the credential vault.

The following sections contain information to help you manage credentials:

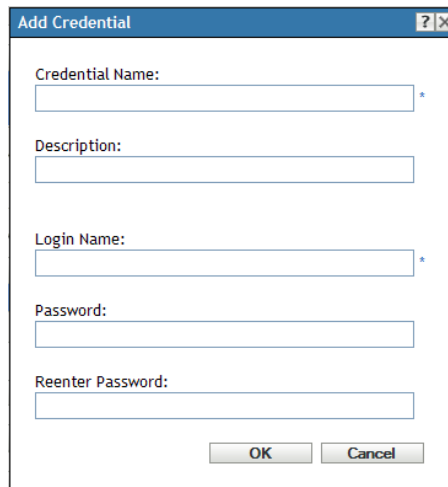
- ♦ [Section 5.1, “Adding a Credential,” on page 65](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.2, “Creating a Folder for Credentials,” on page 66](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.3, “Assigning Credential Rights,” on page 67](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.4, “Editing a Credential,” on page 68](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.5, “Renaming a Credential,” on page 68](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.6, “Moving a Credential to Another Folder,” on page 68](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.7, “Removing a Credential,” on page 68](#)

5.1 Adding a Credential

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.



- 2 In the *Credential Vault* panel, click *New > Credential* to display the Add Credential dialog box.



The 'Add Credential' dialog box is a standard Windows-style window with a title bar containing a question mark and a close button. It contains five text input fields: 'Credential Name' (with an asterisk), 'Description', 'Login Name' (with an asterisk), 'Password', and 'Reenter Password'. At the bottom are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

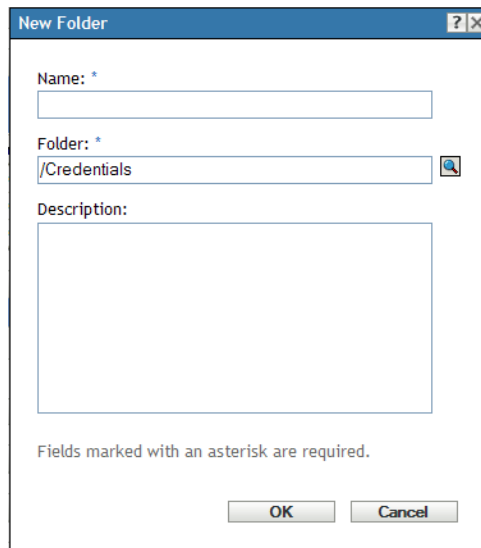
- 3 Fill in the fields.
If you need help, click the *Help* button.

5.2 Creating a Folder for Credentials

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.




- 2 In the Credential Vault panel, click *New > Folder* to display the New Folder dialog box.




New Folder

Name: *

Folder: *
 

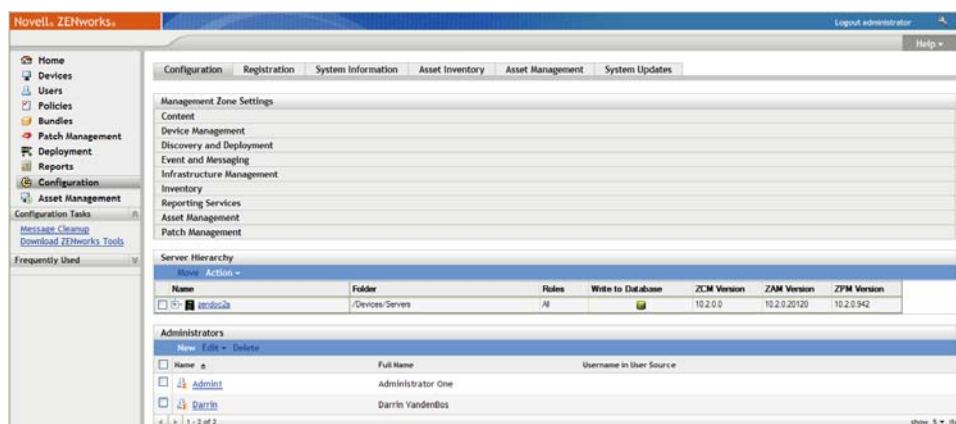
Description:

Fields marked with an asterisk are required.

- 3 In the *Name* field, specify a unique name for the folder.
The folder cannot have the same name as any folders or credentials that already exist in the folder where you are creating it.
- 4 In the *Folder* field, click  to browse for and select the folder where you want the new folder created.
- 5 Type a description for the new folder, if desired.
- 6 Click *OK* to create the folder.

5.3 Assigning Credential Rights

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.



- 2 In the *Administrators* section, click the underlined link for the administrator for which you want to change rights.
- 3 In the *Assigned Rights* section, click *Add > Credential Rights*.

- 4 Click *Add* to select folders containing credentials, then modify the rights associated with those folders.

If you need help, click the *Help* button.

5.4 Editing a Credential

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 In the Credential Vault panel, select the check box next to the credential.
- 3 Click *Edit*.
- 4 Edit the fields.


If you need help, click the *Help* button.

- 5 Click *OK*.

5.5 Renaming a Credential

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 In the Credential Vault panel, select the check box next to the credential.
- 3 Click *Edit > Rename*.
- 4 Type the new name for the credential.
- 5 Click *OK*.

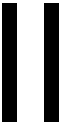
5.6 Moving a Credential to Another Folder

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 In the Credential Vault panel, select the check box next to the credential.
- 3 Click *Edit > Move*.
- 4 In the *Folder* field, click  to browse for and select the folder where you want the credential moved.
- 5 Click *OK*.

5.7 Removing a Credential

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 In the Credential Vault panel, select the check box next to the credential.
- 3 Click *Delete*.

ZENworks Servers and Satellite Devices



This section contains information about configuring the ZENworks[®] Servers and Satellite devices.

- ♦ [Chapter 6, “ZENworks Server,” on page 71](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 7, “Satellites,” on page 79](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 8, “Server Hierarchy,” on page 93](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 9, “Closest Server Rules,” on page 97](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 10, “Backing Up and Restoring the ZENworks Server and Certificate Authority,” on page 111](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 11, “Disaster Recovery,” on page 115](#)

The ZENworks® Server is the backbone of the ZENworks system. It communicates with the ZENworks Adaptive Agent on managed devices to perform management tasks. It stores content to be delivered to devices and images to be used for imaging devices. It communicates with other ZENworks Servers and ZENworks Satellites to replicate or receive content, software and hardware inventory, and messages throughout the Management Zone.

The following sections provide additional information about the ZENworks Server:

- ♦ [Section 6.1, “ZENworks Services on a Windows Server,” on page 71](#)
- ♦ [Section 6.2, “ZENworks Services on a Linux Server,” on page 73](#)
- ♦ [Section 6.3, “Configuring Additional Access to a ZENworks Server,” on page 75](#)
- ♦ [Section 6.4, “Determining the ZENworks Software Version Installed on Servers,” on page 76](#)
- ♦ [Section 6.5, “Uninstalling a ZENworks Server,” on page 76](#)
- ♦ [Section 6.6, “Deleting a ZENworks Primary Server,” on page 76](#)
- ♦ [Section 6.7, “ZENworks Server Reports,” on page 77](#)

6.1 ZENworks Services on a Windows Server

When it is running on a Windows* server, a ZENworks Server includes the services listed in the following table. All services are always installed regardless of the ZENworks 10 products (Configuration Management, Asset Management, and Patch Management) you have licensed and activated. If a service is not required for your product, it is disabled.

Table 6-1 ZENworks Services on Windows

Service	Service Name	Description
Proxy DHCP Service	novell-proxydhcp	Used with a standard DHCP server to inform PXE-enabled devices of the IP address of the Novell® TFTP server.
TFTP Service	novell-tftp	Used by PXE-enabled devices to request files that are needed to perform imaging tasks.
ZENworks Agent Service	zenworkswindowsservice novell-zmd	Used to enable the server as a managed device.
ZENworks Datastore	dbsrv10	Embedded database used for storing ZENworks objects and resources.
ZENworks Loader	zenloader	Used for loading and controlling the Java* services that perform ZENworks Server tasks.
ZENworks Preboot Policy Service	novell-zmgprebootpolicy	Used by PXE-enabled devices to check for assigned preboot policies and work.

Service	Service Name	Description
ZENworks Preboot Service	novell-pbserv	Used to provide imaging services to a device. This includes sending and receiving image files, discovering assigned Preboot bundles, acting as session master for multicast imaging, and so forth.
ZENworks Remote Management	nzrwinvnc	Used to enable remote management of the server.
ZENworks Server	zenserver	Used for communicating with the ZENworks Agent.
ZENworks Services Monitor	zenwatch	Used to monitor the status of the ZENworks services.
ZENworks Imaging Agent	ziswin	Used to save and restore image-safe data on the server (as a managed device). Only runs when launched by the ZENworks Agent.

The services reside in the `\novell\zenworks\bin` directory on a ZENworks Server. Refer to the following sections for instructions to help you control the ZENworks services:

- ♦ [Section 6.1.1, “Checking the Status of a ZENworks Service,” on page 72](#)
- ♦ [Section 6.1.2, “Starting a ZENworks Service,” on page 72](#)
- ♦ [Section 6.1.3, “Stopping a ZENworks Service,” on page 72](#)

6.1.1 Checking the Status of a ZENworks Service

- 1 On the server, click *Start*, select *Administrative Tools > Services*, then review the status of the services listed in [Table 6-1 on page 71](#).

6.1.2 Starting a ZENworks Service

- 1 On the server, click *Start*, select *Administrative Tools > Services*.
- 2 Select the service you want to start (see [Table 6-1 on page 71](#)), then click *Start the service*.

The ZENworks services start when the ZENworks Server is booted and should not normally need to be restarted. If you need to frequently restart the services, ensure that your server hardware meets the ZENworks minimum requirements. If the server does not have adequate RAM, ZENworks services might not continue running. For more information, see “[Primary Server Requirements](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Installation Guide*.

6.1.3 Stopping a ZENworks Service

- 1 On the server, click *Start*, then select *Administrative Tools > Services*.
- 2 Select the service you want to stop (see [Table 6-1 on page 71](#)), then click *Stop the service*.

6.2 ZENworks Services on a Linux Server

When it is running on a Linux server, the ZENworks Server includes the services listed in the following table. All services are always installed regardless of the ZENworks 10 products (Configuration Management, Asset Management, and Patch Management) you have licensed and activated. If a service is not required for your product, it is disabled

Table 6-2 *ZENworks Services on Linux*

Service	Service Name	Description
Proxy DHCP Service	novell-proxydhcp	Used with a standard DHCP server to inform PXE-enabled devices of the IP address of the Novell TFTP server.
TFTP Service	novell-tftp	Used by PXE-enabled devices to request files that are needed to perform imaging tasks.
ZENworks Agent Service	novell-zmd	Used to enable the server as a managed device.
ZENworks Datastore	sybase-asa	Used to run the embedded SQL Anywhere* database.
ZENworks Loader	novell-zenloader	Used for loading and controlling the Java services that perform ZENworks Server tasks.
ZENworks Preboot Policy Service	novell-zmgprebootpolicy	Used by PXE-enabled devices to check for assigned preboot policies and work.
ZENworks Preboot Service	novell-pbserv	Used to provide imaging services to a device. This includes sending and receiving image files, discovering assigned Preboot bundles, acting as session master for multicast imaging, and so forth.
ZENworks Server	novell-zenserver	Used for communicating with the ZENworks Adaptive Agent.
ZENworks Services Monitor	novell-zenmnt	Used to monitor the status of the ZENworks services.
ZENworks Imaging Agent	novell-zenagent	Used to save and restore image-safe data on the server (as a managed device). Only runs when launched by the ZENworks Adaptive Agent.

The services reside in the `/etc/init.d` directory. Refer to the following sections for instructions to help you control the ZENworks services:

- ♦ [Section 6.2.1, “Checking the Status of a ZENworks Service,” on page 74](#)
- ♦ [Section 6.2.2, “Starting a ZENworks Service,” on page 74](#)

- ♦ [Section 6.2.3, “Stopping a ZENworks Service,” on page 74](#)
- ♦ [Section 6.2.4, “Restarting a ZENworks Service,” on page 74](#)

6.2.1 Checking the Status of a ZENworks Service

- 1 At the server command prompt, enter the following command:

```
/etc/init.d/servicename status
```

Replace *servicename* with the name of the service as listed in [Table 6-2 on page 73](#).

6.2.2 Starting a ZENworks Service

- ♦ At the server command prompt, enter the following command:

```
/etc/init.d/servicename start
```

Replace *servicename* with the name of the service as listed in [Table 6-2 on page 73](#).

- ♦ To start all services, use the following command:

```
/opt/novell/zenworks/bin/novell-zenworks-configure -c Start
```

The ZENworks services start when the ZENworks Server is booted and should not normally need to be restarted. If you need to frequently restart the services, ensure that your server hardware meets the minimum ZENworks requirements. If the server does not have adequate RAM, ZENworks services might not continue running. For more information, see “[Primary Server Requirements](#)” in the [ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Installation Guide](#).

6.2.3 Stopping a ZENworks Service

To stop a service, use the following command:

```
/etc/init.d/servicename stop
```

Replace *servicename* with the name of the service as listed in [Table 6-2 on page 73](#).

6.2.4 Restarting a ZENworks Service

To restart a service that is already running, use the following command:

```
/etc/init.d/servicename restart
```

Replace *servicename* with the name of the service as listed in [Table 6-2 on page 73](#).

6.3 Configuring Additional Access to a ZENworks Server

If you have managed devices that are unable to authenticate to the IP address or DNS name of a ZENworks Server, such as devices outside the firewall or devices using a proxy server, you can specify additional IP addresses or DNS names for the ZENworks Server that can be used by the devices for access to the server.

- ♦ [Section 6.3.1, “Addressing Non-Detectable IP Address Conditions,” on page 75](#)
- ♦ [Section 6.3.2, “Addressing Non-Detectable DNS Name Conditions,” on page 75](#)

6.3.1 Addressing Non-Detectable IP Address Conditions

The Non-Detectable IP Addresses panel lets you specify the addresses that can be used to access the ZENworks Server when the server’s IP address cannot be found by a device.

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Devices* in the left pane, select *Servers* in the Devices panel, select a server object, click the *Settings* tab, click *Infrastructure Management*, then select *Non-detectable IP Addresses*.
- 2 Fill in the field:
IP Address: Standard dotted-decimal notation. For example, 123.45.167.100.
- 3 Click *Add* to add the address to the list.
- 4 Repeat [Step 1](#) to [Step 3](#) to add additional IP addresses.
- 5 If necessary, use the *Move Up* and *Move Down* buttons to reorder the list.
The IP addresses are used in the order listed, from top to bottom.
- 6 When you are finished adding addresses, click *Apply* or *OK* to save the addresses.

6.3.2 Addressing Non-Detectable DNS Name Conditions

The Additional DNS Names panel lets you specify additional names that can be used to access the ZENworks Server when the server’s DNS name cannot be found by a device.

The DNS names added in this panel are distributed to all managed devices for them to use in connecting to the server.

To add a DNS name:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Devices* in the left pane, select *Servers* in the Devices panel, select a server object, click the *Settings* tab, click *Infrastructure Management*, then select *Additional DNS Names*.
- 2 In the *List of Server DNS Names* field, specify the DNS name for the IP address of the server (such as a proxy server) that the devices can access.
- 3 Click *Add* to add the DNS name to the list.
- 4 If necessary, use the *Move Up* and *Move Down* buttons to reorder the list.
The DNS names are used in the order listed, from top to bottom.
- 5 When you are finished adding addresses, click *Apply* or *OK* to save the addresses.

6.4 Determining the ZENworks Software Version Installed on Servers

For upgrading and troubleshooting purposes, you use ZENworks Control Center to determine which versions of ZENworks Configuration Management (ZCM), ZENworks Asset Management (ZAM), and ZENworks Patch Management (ZPM) are running on ZENworks Primary Servers in your Management Zone.

To see ZENworks version information for a specific Primary Server in your Management Zone:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Devices* tab.
- 2 Click *Servers*, then click the desired Primary Server.
- 3 View the version number in the *ZENworks Configuration Management Version*, *ZENworks Asset Management Version*, and *ZENworks Patch Management Version* rows.
- 4 (Optional) Click the underlined version number next to *ZENworks Configuration Management Version* to see a list of installed packages.

To see ZENworks version information for all Primary Servers in your Management Zone:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 In the Server Hierarchy panel, view the version information in the *ZCM Version*, *ZAM Version*, and *ZPM Version* columns for each server.

6.5 Uninstalling a ZENworks Server

Instructions for uninstalling a ZENworks Server are provided in “[Uninstalling ZENworks Software](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Installation Guide*.

6.6 Deleting a ZENworks Primary Server

If you cannot run the uninstallation program to uninstall a ZENworks Primary Server, you can delete it from the Server Hierarchy panel.

WARNING: Use extreme caution when deleting a ZENworks Primary Server from your ZENworks system.

Deleting a ZENworks Primary Server is irreversible. The preferred way to decommission a Primary Server is to run the uninstallation program from the Server. Deleting a Primary Server should only be used if the uninstallation program cannot be run (for example, if the Primary Server experiences a hard drive failure). For more information about running the uninstallation program, see “[Uninstalling ZENworks Software](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Installation Guide*.

If you remove a Primary Server that hosts an internal ZENworks Sybase database, your entire ZENworks Management Zone becomes inoperable.

If you remove a Primary Server on which the Patch Management subscription service is configured to run, you must reset the Patch Management settings before deleting the server. For more information on how to reset the Patch Management settings, see “[Viewing Subscription Service Information](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Patch Management Reference*.

Deleting a ZENworks Server completely removes the ZENworks Server from the Management Zone. There is no recovery.

You can delete managed server and workstation devices by using the options on the *Devices* tab, as explained in “[Deleting Devices from Your ZENworks System](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Discovery, Deployment, and Retirement Reference*.

To remove a ZENworks Primary Server from your Management Zone:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 In the Server Hierarchy section, select the check box next to the Primary Server (you can select multiple devices).
- 3 Click *Action > Delete ZENworks Server*.

6.7 ZENworks Server Reports

You must have installed ZENworks Reporting Server to view the predefined reports. For more information on how to install ZENworks Reporting Server, see the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Reporting Server Installation Guide*.

To view a predefined report for the ZENworks Server:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Reports* tab.
- 2 In the ZENworks Reporting Server panel, click *ZENworks Reporting Server InfoView* to launch the ZENworks Reporting Server InfoView.
- 3 Navigate to the *Novell ZENworks Reports* folder > *Predefined Reports* > *ZENworks System* folder.

The following predefined report is included for the ZENworks Server:

ZENworks Server Statistics: Displays server statistics such as database, disk space, CPU usage, and various connection details that include total connections per day and average connections per day.

For more information on creating and managing reports, see the *ZENworks Configuration Management System Reporting Reference* documentation.

A Satellite is a managed device that can perform some of the roles that a ZENworks® Primary Server normally performs, including authentication, information collection, content distribution, and imaging. A Satellite can be any managed Windows device (server or workstation), but not a Primary Server. A Satellite can also be an unmanaged Linux device (server or workstation) that has the ZENworks Agent for Linux installed. For more information, see “[Satellite Requirements](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Installation Guide* and “[Deploying the ZENworks Adaptive Agent](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Discovery, Deployment, and Retirement Reference*.

When you configure a Satellite, you specify which roles it performs (Collection, Content, or Imaging). A Satellite can also perform roles that might be added by third-party products that are snap-ins to the ZENworks 10 Configuration Management framework.

NOTE: The Imaging Satellite role is not supported for Windows 2000.

You might, for example, create a Satellite in a location across a slow WAN link and create Closest Server rules to offload one or more roles from the Primary Server to the newly created Satellite to improve the performance of your ZENworks system.

NOTE: For information about Satellites from the perspective of an end user using the ZENworks Adaptive Agent, see “[Satellite Roles](#)” in the *Novell ZENworks Adaptive Agent Help*.

The following sections contain more information:

- ♦ [Section 7.1, “Understanding the Satellite Roles,”](#) on page 79
- ♦ [Section 7.2, “Adding and Configuring Satellite Devices,”](#) on page 81
- ♦ [Section 7.3, “Removing the Roles from a Satellite,”](#) on page 85
- ♦ [Section 7.4, “Removing Satellites from the Server Hierarchy,”](#) on page 85
- ♦ [Section 7.5, “Specifying Content to Be Hosted,”](#) on page 86
- ♦ [Section 7.6, “Moving a Satellite from One Primary Server to Another Primary Server,”](#) on page 87
- ♦ [Section 7.7, “Specifying a Different Repository for the Content Role Satellite \(Windows Only\),”](#) on page 87
- ♦ [Section 7.8, “Removing a Satellite Device,”](#) on page 88
- ♦ [Section 7.9, “Refreshing a Satellite,”](#) on page 89
- ♦ [Section 7.10, “Troubleshooting Satellites,”](#) on page 89

7.1 Understanding the Satellite Roles

A Satellite is a device that can perform some of the roles that a ZENworks Primary Server normally performs, including authentication, information collection, content distribution, and imaging. The following sections contain more information about each role:

- ♦ [Section 7.1.1, “Understanding the Collection Role,”](#) on page 80

- ♦ [Section 7.1.2, “Understanding the Content Role,” on page 80](#)
- ♦ [Section 7.1.3, “Understanding the Imaging Role,” on page 81](#)

7.1.1 Understanding the Collection Role

If you want to improve information roll-up access for a group of devices to minimize traffic to the ZENworks Primary Server that is hosting the ZENworks database, you can enable the Collection role on a device. For example, if you have devices that are rolling up information to a Primary Server outside of their network segment, you can minimize network traffic by enabling the Collection role on a device within the network segment to accept the information from the other devices in that segment. That Collection role device is then the only device from that segment that is rolling up information to the Primary Server.

You can enable the Collection role on any managed device. The Collection role requires only the Collection role module that is installed with the ZENworks Adaptive Agent. The module is inactive until you enable the Collection role on the managed device.

When you enable a Collection role on a device, you can assign any ZENworks Primary Server as its parent server. The Collection role device uploads information only to its parent Primary Server. If the parent Primary Server is not a child of another Primary Server, it writes the information directly to the database. If the parent Primary Server is a child of another Primary Server, it passes the information up to its parent Primary Server, which writes the information to the database.

A Satellite with the Collection role collects inventory information, messages (errors, warning, informational, and so forth), and policy and bundle statuses, then rolls that information up to its parent Primary Server, which in turn either writes to the database directly or passes the information to its parent Primary Server, which does the database writing. The role includes a roll-up schedule that you can edit.

On the managed device, the Collection module is inactive until you promote the managed device to be a Satellite with the Collection role or until the Collection role is added to an existing Satellite.

7.1.2 Understanding the Content Role

Content consists of bundles, policies, system updates (ZENworks Server and Adaptive Agent), and patches.

If you want to improve content access for a group of devices without creating another Primary Server, you can create the Content role on a device. For example, if you have devices that are accessing a Primary Server outside of their network segment, you can create the Content role on a device within the network segment to service those devices.

The Content role provides the same content delivery service as a Primary Server but requires only the Content role module that is installed with the ZENworks Adaptive Agent. The module is inactive until you enable it on the managed device.

When you enable the Content role on a device, you assign a Primary Server as its parent content server. The Content role Satellite downloads content only from its parent Primary Server. Therefore, any content you want hosted on a Content role Satellite must also be hosted on its parent Primary Server.

On the managed device, the Content module is inactive until you promote the managed device to be a Satellite with the Content role or until the Content role is added to an existing Satellite.

7.1.3 Understanding the Imaging Role

The Imaging role installs the Imaging services and adds the Imaging role to the device. With this role, the device can be used as an Imaging server to perform all Imaging operations, such as taking an image and applying an image within or across subnets by using unicast or multicast imaging.

The Imaging role can be used to achieve load balancing for the Primary Server, and also to support cross-subnet imaging. The Satellite uses ZENworks Control Center to communicate with the Primary Server for Imaging operations in the Auto mode.

On the managed device, the Imaging module is inactive until you promote the managed device to be a Satellite with the Imaging role or until the Imaging role is added to an existing Satellite. This activates the Imaging services on the device, and enables you to perform the Imaging operations in auto and maintenance mode. The Imaging services installed on the device include TFTP, Preboot policy, pbserv, and proxy DHCP. All services, except for proxy DHCP, are automatically started. You can manually start or stop the proxy DHCP service from ZENworks Control Center.

7.2 Adding and Configuring Satellite Devices

You can create a new Satellite device or configure an existing Satellite with the Content, Imaging, and Collection roles, change its default port, and adjust the schedules for the roles. You can also remove roles from an existing Satellite.

IMPORTANT: Before promoting a managed device as Satellite, ensure that the ZENworks 10 Configuration Management version installed on the managed device is same as that of the Primary Server.

- 1 To add a new Satellite into the Server Hierarchy panel, in ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab. In the Server Hierarchy panel, select the check box next to the desired Primary Server, click *Action*, then click *Add Satellite Server*.

or

To configure an existing Satellite from the Server Hierarchy panel, in ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab. In the Server Hierarchy panel, select the check box next to the Satellite that you want to configure, click *Action*, then click *Configure Satellite Server*.

You can only configure one Satellite at a time.

or

To configure an existing Satellite from the device view, in ZENworks Control Center, click the *Devices* tab, then on the *Managed* tab, click either *Servers* or *Workstations*. In the Servers or Workstations panel, select the check box for the Satellite that you want to configure, click *Action*, then click *Configure Satellite Server*.

You can only configure one Satellite at a time.

Depending on whether you are adding a new Satellite device or configuring an existing device, the title of the dialog box is different (Add Satellite Server or Configure Satellite Server). The settings and options on each page are similar.

- 2 (Conditional) To remove Satellite roles from a device, uncheck the desired role in the Satellite Server Roles section, then click *OK*.

You can also use the `zman satellite-server-delete (ssd)` command to remove roles from a Satellite. For more information, see “[Satellite Commands](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.

- 3 (Conditional) To add a role to a Satellite, select the desired role in the *Satellite Server Roles* section.

If the *Configure* link is disabled for any role, that role is disabled for this device. For example, if the Satellite’s parent Primary Server does not have the Collection role, the Satellite’s Collection role is disabled and cannot be configured. Non-configurable roles that a managed device performs are also listed in the dialog box but cannot be edited.

See the following sections for more information about each role:

- ♦ [Section 7.2.1, “Collection Role,” on page 83](#)
- ♦ [Section 7.2.2, “Content Role,” on page 83](#)
- ♦ [Section 7.2.3, “Imaging Role,” on page 84](#)

- 4 (Optional) In the *Port for Content and/or Collection HTTP Requests* field, specify the port number.

The default port is 80. Content and Collection servers share the same Web server and the same port. Make sure that the specified port is not in use.

- 5 (Optional) In the *Port for authentication Secure HTTPS requests* field, specify the port number.

The default port is 443. This is the port on which the Satellite device listens while communicating with the managed devices. Make sure that the specified port is not in use.

- 6 Click *OK* to save your changes and exit the dialog box.
- 7 Repeat the previous steps to configure other Satellites.

7.2.1 Collection Role

This role causes the device to collect inventory information, messages (errors, warning, informational, and so forth), and policy and bundle statuses, then rolls that information up to its parent Primary Server, which in turn either writes to the database directly or passes the information to its parent Primary Server, which does the database writing.

1 Select the check box next to *Collection*, then click *Configure*.

2 Fill in the field:

Collection Roll-Up Schedule: Specify the number of days, hours, and minutes for how often you want the collected data to be rolled up from the devices that use it as a collection server.

The Collection Roll-Up schedule determines how often the collected inventory information is rolled up to the parent Primary Server for inclusion in the ZENworks database. When the information is in the database, it is viewable in ZENworks Control Center.

To specify the devices that use the Collection Roll-Up role, configure the *Closest Server Rules* setting in the *Management Zone* settings on the *Configuration* page.

3 Click *OK*.

4 Continue with [Step 4 on page 82](#).

7.2.2 Content Role

1 Select the check box next to *Content*, then click *Configure*.

This role enables the managed device to distribute content (bundles, policies, system updates, and patches) to other devices.

When you set up a device to function with a Content role, you must specify a Primary Server as its parent. The device with the Content role receives all content from its parent Primary Server. Any content you want hosted on a Satellite with the Content role must also be hosted on its parent Primary Server. If the content is not hosted on the new Primary Server, it is added.

To specify the devices that need content from this Satellite, configure the *Closest Server Rules* setting in the *Management Zone* settings on the *Configuration* page.

Fill in the field:

Content Replication Schedule: Specify the number of days, hours, and minutes for how often you want the Satellite's content to be updated from the parent Primary Server.

2 Click *OK*.

3 (Optional) Specify the content to host on the Content Server. For more information, see [Section 27.3, "Including or Excluding Content," on page 232](#).

If you want to specify the content that the Satellite hosts, you can include or exclude content from being replicated to it.

If you want to include content that its parent Primary Server does not have, you must first add the content to the parent Primary Server.

This role enables the managed device to distribute content (bundles, policies, system updates, and patches) to other devices.

When you set up a device to function with a Content role, you must specify a Primary Server as its parent. The device with the Content role receives all content from its parent Primary Server. Any content you want hosted on a Satellite with the Content role must also be hosted on its parent Primary Server. If the content is not hosted on the new Primary Server, it is added.

To specify the devices that need content from this Satellite, configure the *Closest Server Rules* setting in the *Management Zone* settings on the *Configuration* page.

7.2.3 Imaging Role


Selecting this option installs the Imaging services and adds the Imaging role to the device. With this role, the device can be used as an Imaging server to perform all the Imaging operations, such as taking an image, applying an image, and multicasting an image. However, the ZENworks images are not replicated from the Primary Server to Imaging Satellites.

NOTE: The Imaging role is tied to the state of your ZENworks Configuration Management license. If your license state is deactivated, the Imaging role is disabled. For example, if you have a licensed copy of ZENworks Asset Management and you are evaluating ZENworks Configuration Management, the Imaging role is disabled if your ZENworks Configuration Management license expires. For more information, see [Section 31.5, “Possible License State Changes,” on page 259](#).

- 1 Select the check box next to *Imaging*, then click *Configure*.
- 2 (Conditional) Select the check box next to *Enable PXE Services* to automatically start the Proxy DHCP service on the device to which the Imaging Server role has been assigned.

To check whether the Proxy DHCP service has been started on the device, review the message log of the device (*Devices* tab > *Workstations* folder > click the workstation > *Summary* > Message Log panel).
- 3 (Conditional) Select the check box next to *Delete Image Files from the Server if Imaging Role is Removed* if you want the ZENworks image files to be automatically deleted from the device when the Imaging role is removed from the device.

The messages are logged in the Message Log panel if the severity level of the local file and the system log is set to *Information and Above* on the Local Device Logging page. (*Configuration* tab > *Device Management* > *Local Device Logging*).

This option is available only when you want to remove the Imaging Server role from the device.
- 4 Click *OK*.
- 5 (Conditional) If you configure the Imaging role, the role is immediately added to the device. If the role is not immediately added, it is added only during the next device refresh schedule. If you want to immediately apply the role to the device, manually refresh the device in one of the following ways:
 - ♦ In the *Configuration* tab > the *Server Hierarchy*, select the check box next to the devices you want to refresh, then click *Action* > *Refresh Device*.
 - ♦ On the Windows managed device, right-click the  icon, then click *Refresh*.
 - ♦ On the Linux unmanaged device, open a terminal, change your current working directory to `/opt/novell/zenworks/bin/`, and execute `./zac ref`.

To check whether the Proxy DHCP service has been started on the device, review the message log of the device (*Devices* tab > *Workstations* folder > click the workstation > *Summary* > Message Log panel or *Devices* tab > *Servers* folder > click the server > *Summary* > Message Log panel).

The messages are logged in the Message Log panel only if the severity level of the local file and the system log is set to *Information and Above* on the Local Device Logging page. (*Configuration* tab > *Device Management* > *Local Device Logging*).

- 6 (Conditional) If the Linux Satellite has the Imaging role configured, turn off the firewall on the device before performing imaging operations.

7.3 Removing the Roles from a Satellite

You can choose to remove one or more roles from a Satellite. However, the Satellite must have at least one role configured for it to continue to perform the Satellite function. If you remove all the roles, the Satellite is demoted to be only managed device.

Removing a Satellite role does not remove the device from any of the non-default Closest Server rules. The device is removed from the non-default Closest Server rules only when it is no longer a Satellite.

To remove one or more roles from a Satellite:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 In the Server Hierarchy panel, select the check box next to the Satellite from which you want to remove the role.
- 3 Click *Actions* > *Configure Satellite Server*.
- 4 In the Configure Satellite Server dialog box, deselect the check box next to the Satellite role you want to remove.
- 5 Click *OK*.

7.4 Removing Satellites from the Server Hierarchy

You can remove a Satellite from the Server Hierarchy listing when that device is no longer needed to perform Satellite functions. The device's object isn't removed from ZENworks; it is just removed from the Server Hierarchy listing. However, removing a Satellite from the hierarchy listing does cause the content, imaging, or collection roll-up information to be removed from the device.

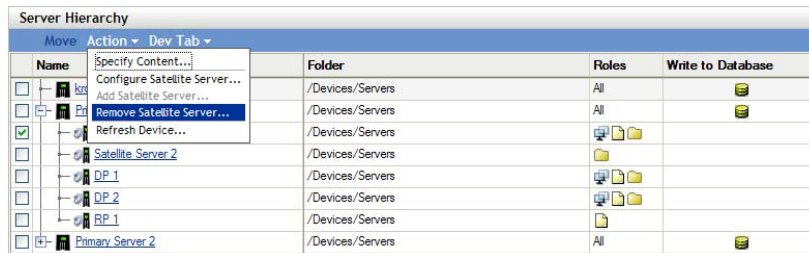
When you remove a Satellite, the managed devices that used it must be reconfigured to use another server for content and collection purposes. For more information, see [Chapter 9, "Closest Server Rules," on page 97](#).

You cannot use this option to remove a Primary Server from the listing.

To remove a Satellite:

- 1 For the Satellite that you want to remove, make a note of all devices that are using it for content and collection information roll-up.
- 2 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.

- 3 In the Server Hierarchy panel, select the check box next to the Satellite that you want to remove from the zone.
- 4 Click *Action > Remove Satellite Server*.



- 5 To confirm the removal, click *OK*.
- 6 As necessary, reconfigure the managed devices that used the Satellite so that they can continue to receive content and roll up collection information.

For more information, see [Chapter 9, “Closest Server Rules,” on page 97](#).

- 7 (Conditional) The Imaging role is immediately removed from the device. If the role is not immediately removed, it is removed only during the next device refresh schedule. If you want to immediately remove the role from the device, manually refresh the device in one of the following ways:
 - In the *Configuration* tab > the *Server Hierarchy*, select the check box next to the devices you want to refresh, then click *Action > Refresh Device*.
 - On the Windows managed device, right-click the icon, then click *Refresh*.
 - On the Linux unmanaged device, open a terminal, change your current working directory to `/opt/novell/zenworks/bin/`, and execute `./zac ref`.

7.5 Specifying Content to Be Hosted

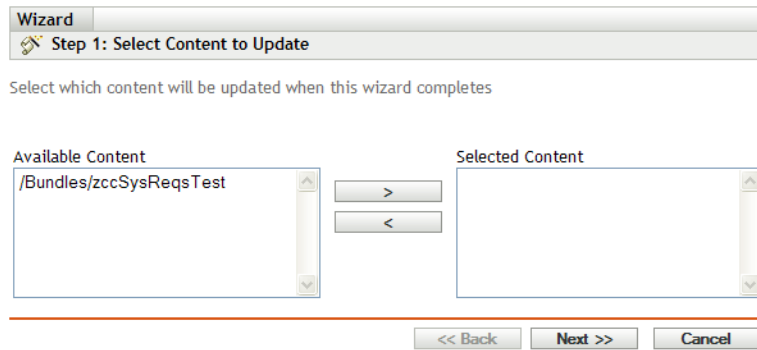
Because Content role devices retrieve their content from their parent Primary Servers, any content that you want hosted on a Satellite must also be hosted on its parent Primary Server.


You can specify the content that is included or excluded on specific Primary Servers or Satellites performing the Content role.

When you create relationships between content and content servers (ZENworks Primary Servers and Satellites) by using the Select Content to Update Wizard, these relationships override any existing relationships. For example, assume that you want Bundle A and Policy B to be hosted on Server 1 but not on Server 2. Currently, the content is hosted on both servers. You select Bundle A and Policy B, then use the Select Content to Update Wizard to include the content on Server 1 and exclude it from Server 2. During the next scheduled replication, Bundle A and Policy B are removed from Server 2.

To specify the content to be hosted:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab. In the Server Hierarchy section, select the check boxes next to the Satellites with the Content role that you want to designate as the hosts for one or more pieces of content.
- 2 Click *Action > Specify Content* to launch the Select Content to Update Wizard.



- 3 In the *Available Content* list, select the desired content.
You can use Shift+click and Ctrl+click to select multiple bundles or policies.
- 4 Click  to move the selected content to the *Selected Content* list.
- 5 Click *Next*.
- 6 Click *Finish* to create the relationships between the content and the content servers.

Depending on the relationships created, the content is replicated to or removed from content servers during the next scheduled replication.

7.6 Moving a Satellite from One Primary Server to Another Primary Server

You can move a Satellite from its parent Primary Server to another Primary Server.

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 In the Server Hierarchy panel, select the check box next to the Satellite that you want to move, then click *Move*.
- 3 Select the Primary Server you want to be the Satellite's new parent, then click *OK*.

Any content (bundles, policies, and patches) you want hosted on a Satellite with the Content role must also be hosted on its parent Primary Server. If the content is not hosted on the new Primary Server, it is added.

7.7 Specifying a Different Repository for the Content Role Satellite (Windows Only)

The content repository is located in the following default path on Windows Satellites:

`installation_path\zenworks\work\content-repo`

To change the default path to another location accessible to the server:

- 1 Make sure that the disk drive you want to use is attached to the Satellite and is properly formatted.
You do not need to specify a drive letter, but the server must recognize the hardware.

- 2 Make sure that there is no content in the default location (`installation_path\zenworks\work\content-repo`) by doing one of the following:
 - ♦ If the `content-repo` directory is not present in the path given above, create the `content-repo` directory in that path.
 - ♦ If you need to save the content that is now in this directory, rename the existing directory and create a new empty directory named `content-repo`.
You can later copy the content from the renamed directory to the new content repository location (see [Step 9](#)).
 - ♦ If you do not need any of the content in the existing `content-repo` directory, delete the directory and re-create the `content-repo` directory.

An empty `content-repo` directory must exist to act as the pointer to the new content repository location for the Satellite.
- 3 Click *Start*, right-click the *My Computer* icon, then select *Manage*.
You can also click *Start*, then enter `compmgmt.msc` at the *Run* command line.
- 4 Select *Disk Management* under the *Storage* section in the left pane.
The disk drive you selected in [Step 1](#) should be displayed.
- 5 Right-click the partition of the disk drive that you want to use as your content repository on the Satellite, then select *Change Drive Letter and Paths*.
This is the disk drive (see [Step 1](#)) that you will mount to the `content-repo` directory.
- 6 Click *Add*.
This displays the Add Drive Letter or Path dialog box.
- 7 Select *Mount in the Following Empty NTFS Folder*, then browse for and select the `content-repo` directory:
`installation_path\zenworks\work\content-repo`
- 8 Click *OK* as necessary to exit and save the configuration change.
- 9 If necessary (see [Step 2](#)), move the files from the old renamed `content-repo` directory to the new `content-repo` directory.
This copies the files to the hard drive that you have selected for your new content repository.

7.8 Removing a Satellite Device

You can remove any Satellite from the Management Zone that is listed in the Server Hierarchy panel. When you remove a Satellite, the roles of this device are removed, but the device is still a managed device in your ZENworks Management Zone.

For more information about deleting a Primary Server, see [Section 6.6, “Deleting a ZENworks Primary Server,” on page 76](#).

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the Configuration tab. In the Server Hierarchy section, select the check box next to the Satellite device that you want to delete.
- 2 Click *Action > Remove Satellite Server*.
- 3 Confirm that you want to completely delete the server, then click *OK*.

7.9 Refreshing a Satellite

You can refresh a device so that any pending actions take place immediately.

- 1 Select the check box next to the Satellite that you want to refresh.
- 2 Click *Action > Refresh Device*.
The QuickTask Status box is displayed while the action is in progress.
- 3 (Optional) To close the status dialog box, click *Hide*.
The refresh action continues in the background.
- 4 (Optional) To cancel the refresh action, click the check box for the device, click *Stop*, then click *Hide* to close the dialog box.

7.10 Troubleshooting Satellites

The following section provides solutions to the problems you might encounter while working with Satellites:

- ♦ “Unable to add a Satellite with the Imaging role to a Windows managed device by using the `zman ssc` command” on page 89
- ♦ “Unable to remove a Satellite with the Imaging role from a Windows device by using the `zman ssd` command” on page 89
- ♦ “The managed device is not promoted to the Imaging Satellite role even though the role has been assigned to it” on page 90
- ♦ “Unable to perform Imaging operations from a ZENworks 10 Configuration Management SP1 (10.1) Satellite with the Imaging role if the Primary Server has ZENworks 10 Configuration Management SP2 (10.2) installed” on page 90
- ♦ “Updated Imaging statistics are not displayed on the ZENworks icon when a Windows Vista SP2 managed device is promoted to be a Satellite with the Imaging role” on page 90

Unable to add a Satellite with the Imaging role to a Windows managed device by using the `zman ssc` command

Source: ZENworks 10 Configuration Management; Satellite.

Action: To promote a Windows managed device to be a Satellite with the Imaging role, use the `zman ssaimg` command.

For more information about the `zman ssaimg` command, view the `zman man` page (`man zman`) on the ZENworks Server or see “[Satellite Commands](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.

Unable to remove a Satellite with the Imaging role from a Windows device by using the `zman ssd` command

Source: ZENworks 10 Configuration Management; Satellite.

Action: To remove the Imaging Satellite role from a Windows managed device, use the `zman ssrimg` command.

This command does not remove other Satellite roles such as Content or Collection if they are assigned to the device.


For more information about the `zman ssring` command, view the `zman` man page (`man zman`) on the ZENworks Server or see “[Satellite Commands](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.

The managed device is not promoted to the Imaging Satellite role even though the role has been assigned to it

Source: ZENworks 10 Configuration Management; Satellite.

Possible Cause: The managed device is unable to contact the Primary Server because of the firewall settings configured on the managed device.

Action: Do the following on the managed device:

- 1 Disable the firewall settings.
- 2 Ping the Primary Server to make sure that the managed device can contact the server.
- 3 Refresh the information on the  icon by right-clicking the icon, then clicking *Refresh*.

Unable to perform Imaging operations from a ZENworks 10 Configuration Management SP1 (10.1) Satellite with the Imaging role if the Primary Server has ZENworks 10 Configuration Management SP2 (10.2) installed

Source: ZENworks 10 Configuration Management; Satellite.

Explanation: If the Management Zone has a ZENworks 10 Configuration Management SP2 (10.2) Primary Server and ZENworks 10 Configuration Management SP1 (10.1) Satellites with the Imaging role, you encounter the following error message when you use the Satellite to perform Imaging operations such as taking an image or restoring:

Specified port for HTTP server is already in use/Connection to HTTP server failed


Possible Cause: The Satellites with the Imaging role do not have the same version of ZENworks 10 Configuration Management that is installed on the Primary Server.

Action: Upgrade ZENworks 10 Configuration Management SP1 (10.1) Satellites to ZENworks 10 Configuration Management SP2 (10.2).

For detailed information on how to upgrade to ZENworks 10 Configuration Management SP2, see “[Upgrading from ZENworks Configuration Management 10.1.x to SP2 \(10.2\)](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Upgrade Guide*.

Updated Imaging statistics are not displayed on the ZENworks icon when a Windows Vista SP2 managed device is promoted to be a Satellite with the Imaging role

Source: ZENworks 10 Configuration Management; Satellite.

Explanation: When you promote a Windows Vista SP2 managed device to be a Satellite with the Imaging role, any updated Imaging statistics are not displayed on the  icon (*Show Properties > Satellite > Imaging*)

Action: To view the latest Imaging statistics on the Satellite:

- 1** At the console prompt, go to

ZENworks_installation_directory\novell\zenworks\bin\preboot.

- 2** Run the following command:

zmgmcast -status -i Satellite_IP_address

Your Management Zone's server hierarchy determines the relationships among the ZENworks® Primary Servers and Satellites. These relationships control the flow of content and information within the zone. Proper configuration can help you to minimize network traffic between network segments connected by slow links.

- ♦ [Section 8.1, “Primary Servers: Peer Versus Parent/Child Relationships,” on page 93](#)
- ♦ [Section 8.2, “Satellite Role Relationships,” on page 93](#)
- ♦ [Section 8.3, “Changing the Parent-Child Relationships of Primary Servers,” on page 94](#)

8.1 Primary Servers: Peer Versus Parent/Child Relationships

By default, each Primary Server that you add to the system is created as a peer to all other Primary Servers. Being in a peer relationship enables a Primary Server to:

- ♦ Have direct write access to the ZENworks database so that it can add information (inventory, messages, and status).
- ♦ Retrieve device configuration information directly from the database.
- ♦ Pull content (bundles, policies, system updates, and patches) from any Primary Server.

Direct write access to the ZENworks database requires a JDBC*/ODBC connection. If a Primary Server is located on the network so that it cannot effectively access the ZENworks database via a JDBC/ODBC connection, you can configure the Primary Server to be a child of another Primary Server that does have direct write access to the database. However, you should try to maintain peer relationships between your Primary Servers unless your network connections do not allow it.

Being in a child relationship instructs a Primary Server to use HTTP to roll up inventory, message, and status information to its parent Primary Server, which then writes the information to the database. However, the child Primary Server still retrieves configuration information from the database and passes configuration information back up to the database. For this reason, the child Primary Server must have a direct connection to the ZENworks database.

We do not recommend having a Primary Server across a WAN link from the ZENworks database because this causes increased traffic across the network. We recommend that you use a Satellite device across a WAN link. For more information, see [Section 8.2, “Satellite Role Relationships,” on page 93](#).

8.2 Satellite Role Relationships

A Satellite is a device that can perform certain roles that a ZENworks Primary Server normally performs. A Satellite can be any managed Windows device (server or workstation), but not a Primary Server. A Satellite can also be an unmanaged Linux device (server or workstation). When you configure a Satellite, you specify which roles it performs (Authentication, Collection, Content or Imaging). A Satellite can also perform roles that might be added by third-party products that are snap-ins to the ZENworks 10 Configuration Management framework. For more information about the tasks you can perform on Satellites, see [Chapter 7, “Satellites,” on page 79](#).

The following sections contain more information:

- ♦ [Section 8.2.1, “Content Role Server Relationships,” on page 94](#)
- ♦ [Section 8.2.2, “Collection Role Server Relationships,” on page 94](#)
- ♦ [Section 8.2.3, “Imaging Role Server Relationships,” on page 94](#)

8.2.1 Content Role Server Relationships

A Content role identifies a managed device that is able to distribute content (bundles, policies, system updates, and patches) to other devices. When you set up a device to function with a Content role, you must specify a Primary Server as its parent. The device with the Content role receives all content from its parent Primary Server.

8.2.2 Collection Role Server Relationships

A Collection role causes a managed device to collect inventory information, messages (errors, warning, informational, and so forth), and policy and bundle statuses, then rolls that information up to its parent Primary Server, which in turn either writes to the database directly or passes the information on to its parent Primary Server, which does the database writing.

8.2.3 Imaging Role Server Relationships

An Imaging role causes a managed device to take and restore images within as well as across subnets by using unicast or multicast imaging.

8.3 Changing the Parent-Child Relationships of Primary Servers

You can move a Primary Server to be a peer or child of other Primary Servers:

- ♦ [Section 8.3.1, “Making a Primary Server a Child,” on page 94](#)
- ♦ [Section 8.3.2, “Making a Primary Server a Peer,” on page 95](#)

8.3.1 Making a Primary Server a Child

You can place a Primary Server as a child of another Primary Server. This child Primary Server no longer writes collection data directly to the ZENworks database; instead, it passes its information on to its parent Primary Server, which does the database writing. However, the child Primary Server still retrieves configuration information from the database and passes configuration information back up to the database. For this reason, the child Primary Server must have a direct connection to the ZENworks database

To make a Primary Server a child of another server:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 In the Server Hierarchy panel, select the check box next to the Primary Server you want to make a child.
- 3 Click *Move* to display the *Move Device* dialog box.

- 4 Select the Primary Server that you want to be its parent server.
- 5 Click *OK*.

8.3.2 Making a Primary Server a Peer

This places the Primary Server back to the first level of the hierarchy, or moves it to be a child of another Primary Server if it is nested more than one level deep.

If you move a Primary Server back to the first level, it writes directly to the ZENworks database.

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 In the Server Hierarchy panel, select the check box next to the Primary Server you want to make a peer.
- 3 Click *Move* to display the *Move Device* dialog box.
- 4 Do one of the following:
 - ♦ Select *None* to move it up to the first level of servers in the listing.
 - ♦ Select another Primary Server to be the parent server.
- 5 Click *OK*.

Closest Server Rules

9

When you have multiple ZENworks Servers (Primary Servers and Satellites) in your environment, you can use Closest Server rules to determine which ZENworks Server a managed device contacts to perform the following functions:

- ♦ Collection
- ♦ Content
- ♦ Configuration

Closest Server rules help you improve load balancing between ZENworks Servers, perform failover, and improve performance when there is a slow link between the managed devices and Servers.

The Closest Server rules let you map devices to ZENworks Servers based on network addresses (DNS names and IP addresses).

For example, you can create a rule that maps all devices to Server1 that fall within the IP address range of 123.45.67.1 to 123.45.67.100.

The following sections provide information and instructions for setting up Closest Server rules:

- ♦ [Section 9.1, “Understanding Closest Server Rules,” on page 97](#)
- ♦ [Section 9.2, “Configuring the Closest Server Default Rule,” on page 99](#)
- ♦ [Section 9.3, “Creating Closest Server Rules,” on page 103](#)
- ♦ [Section 9.4, “Backing Up Closest Server Rules,” on page 109](#)

9.1 Understanding Closest Server Rules

When your ZENworks Management Zone includes more than one server (Primary Servers and Satellites), devices need to know which server to contact. The Closest Server Rules panel lets you create rules to determine which servers a device contacts.

With respect to Closest Server rules, devices that are configured as Satellites are considered as servers and can be listed for selection in the *Collection Servers* and *Content Servers* lists.

The following sections provide information you should understand before you start creating Closest Server rules:

- ♦ [Section 9.1.1, “ZENworks Server Functions,” on page 97](#)
- ♦ [Section 9.1.2, “Mapping Devices to Servers,” on page 98](#)
- ♦ [Section 9.1.3, “Effective Rules,” on page 98](#)

9.1.1 ZENworks Server Functions

There following are basic functions for which devices contact a server:

- ♦ **Collection:** Inventory and message log information is collected from each device, to be viewed in ZENworks Control Center and output to reports. Each ZENworks Primary Server and any Satellite can act as a collection server.

- ♦ **Content:** Content is provided to managed devices. Each ZENworks Primary Server and any Satellite can act as a content server.
- ♦ **Configuration:** Configuration settings and registration information are applied to devices. Only ZENworks Primary Servers can act as configuration servers.

A device can contact the same server for all functions, or it can contact different servers for each function.

9.1.2 Mapping Devices to Servers

A Closest Server rule maps devices with specific network addresses to the following lists:

- ♦ *Collection Server* list
- ♦ *Content Server* list
- ♦ *Configuration Server* list

For example, assume that you want to create a rule for devices that fall within the IP address range of 123.45.678.1 to 123.45.678.100. You specify the IP address range, then create the following lists:

Collection Server List	Content Server List	Configuration Server List
Server 1	Server 3	Server 1
Server 2	Server 1	Server 3
Server 3		Server 2

Based on the lists, any device whose IP address falls within the range contacts Server 1 for collection, Server 3 for content, and Server 1 for configuration. If any of these servers are unavailable, the device contacts the next server in the list.

9.1.3 Effective Rules

You can configure Closest Server rules at three levels:

- ♦ **Management Zone:** The rules are inherited by all device folders and devices.
- ♦ **Device Folder:** The rules are inherited by all devices contained within the folder or its subfolders. They override the Management Zone settings.
- ♦ **Device:** The rules apply only to the device for which they are configured. They override the settings set at the Management Zone and folder levels.

Each device can have only one Closest Server rule applied to it. A device's effective rule is determined as follows:

1. **Device Settings:** Evaluate all rules that are set on the device. If the device meets a rule's criteria, that rule becomes the device's effective rule.
2. **Folder settings:** If no device rule applies, evaluate all rules that are set on the device's parent folder. If the device meets a rule's criteria, that rule becomes the device's effective rule. If not, evaluate the rules on the next folder up in the hierarchy.

3. **Management Zone:** If no folder rule applies, evaluate all rules that are set in the Management Zone. If the device meets a rule's criteria, that rule becomes the device's effective rule. If not, apply the [Default rule](#) to the device.
4. **Default Rule:** If no device, folder, or Management Zone rule applies, apply the default rule to the device. The Default rule is simply a listing of all content servers in the order you want devices to contact them.

9.2 Configuring the Closest Server Default Rule

The Closest Server Default rule lets you define the rule that is used by a device to determine the closest collection, content, and configuration servers when no Closest Server rules have been defined or when none apply. This rule is simply a listing of the servers in the order you want devices to contact them. You cannot add or remove servers from the lists.

For Closest Server Default rules, devices that are Satellites are considered as servers and can be listed for selection in the appropriate lists.

By default, all ZENworks Servers function as collection, content, and configuration servers and are displayed in the appropriate lists. In addition, any devices that are defined with the Content or Imaging roles are also displayed in the Content Servers list, and any devices that are defined with the Collection role are also displayed in the Collection Servers list.

To configure a Closest Server Default rule:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab, click *Infrastructure Management* (in the Management Zone Settings panel), then click *Closest Server Default Rule*.

[Configuration](#) > Closest Server Default Rule

Closest Server Default Rule

Configure the setting for how managed devices determine their closest server using the default rule.

Collection Servers:

Move Up Move Down Groups L4 Switch

Name
<input type="checkbox"/> /Devices/Servers/msorensen5

Content Servers:

Move Up Move Down Groups L4 Switch

Name
<input type="checkbox"/> /Devices/Servers/msorensen5

Configuration Servers:

Move Up Move Down Groups L4 Switch

Name
<input type="checkbox"/> /Devices/Servers/msorensen5

OK Apply Reset Cancel

2 To configure the servers listed in the any section, do any of the following:

Task	Steps	Additional Details
Copy an existing group	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. In one of the role section listings, click <i>Groups > Copy Existing Group</i>.2. Select a group from the drop-down list, then click <i>OK</i>.3. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective.	<p>When you copy an existing group, it retains its group name and some of its members.</p> <p>For a member to be retained in the copied group, it must already have the role assigned to it that matches the role for the copied group's new section.</p>
Create an empty group	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. In one of the role section listings, click <i>Groups > Create Empty Group</i>. You can add members to it later by using the <i>Groups > Add to Group</i> option.2. Specify a name, click <i>OK</i>.3. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective.	<p>The created group displays only in the role section where it is created.</p>
Create a group from the selected servers	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. In one of the role section listings, select the check boxes for one or more servers.2. Click <i>Groups > Create Group from Selection</i>.3. Specify a group name, then click <i>OK</i>.4. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective.	<p>Servers can be members of multiple groups and L4 switch definitions.</p> <p>Servers that are members of a group or L4 switch definition are no longer listed at the top level of the server listing.</p>
Remove a group	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. In one of the role section listings, select the check boxes for one or more groups.2. Click <i>Groups > Remove Group</i>, then click <i>OK</i>.3. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective.	<p>When you remove a group, servers that were previously added to a role section's listing are retained. This is automatically done by moving members that are not members of another group or L4 switch definition in the role section listing to the top level of the listing.</p>

Task	Steps	Additional Details
Add servers to a group	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, select the check boxes for one or more servers. 2. Click <i>Groups > Add to Group</i>. 3. Do one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ To add the selected servers to a new group, select <i>Create New</i> and specify a group name, then click <i>OK</i>. ♦ To add the selected servers to an existing group, select a group from the drop-down list in the <i>Select Existing</i> field, then click <i>OK</i>. 4. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective. 	<p>Servers can be members of multiple groups and L4 switch definitions.</p> <p>Servers that are members of a group are no longer listed at the top level of the server listing.</p>
Remove servers from a group	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, select the check boxes for one or more servers that are listed under the group. 2. Click <i>Groups > Remove from Group</i>, then click <i>OK</i>. 3. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective. 	<p>In order to retain servers that were previously added to a role section's listing, this places the removed servers back at the top level of the listing, unless they are a member of another group or L4 switch definition in that listing.</p>
Create an empty L4 switch definition	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, click <i>L4 Switch > Create Empty L4 Switch Definition</i>. 2. Specify an L4 switch definition name, then click <i>OK</i>. <hr/> <p>IMPORTANT: The L4 switch definition name must be either the DNS name or IP address of the L4 switch itself.</p> <hr/> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective. 	<p>The L4 switch definition is displayed in each of the listings, no matter where it is created.</p>

Task	Steps	Additional Details
Create an L4 switch definition from selected servers	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, select the check boxes for one or more servers. 2. Click <i>L4 Switch > Create L4 Switch Definition from Selection</i>. 3. Specify an L4 switch definition name, then click <i>OK</i>. <hr/> <p>IMPORTANT: The L4 switch definition name must be either the DNS name or IP address of the L4 switch itself.</p> <hr/> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective. 	<p>The created L4 switch definition is displayed in each of the listings, no matter where it is created, with the selected servers listed under each instance of the L4 switch definition.</p> <p>Servers can be members of multiple groups and L4 switch definitions.</p> <p>Servers that are members of an L4 switch definition or group are no longer listed at the top level of the server listing.</p>
Remove an L4 switch definition	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, click <i>L4 Switch > Remove L4 Switch Definition</i>, then click <i>OK</i>. 2. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective. 	<p>Removing an L4 switch definition from one role section removes it from the other role sections.</p> <p>When you remove an L4 switch definition, servers that were previously added to a role section's listing are retained. This is automatically done by moving members that are not members of another group or L4 switch definition in the role section listing to the top level of the listing.</p>

Task	Steps	Additional Details
Add servers to an L4 switch definition	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, select the check boxes for one or more servers. 2. Click <i>L4 Switch > Add to L4 Switch Definition</i>. 3. Do one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ To add the selected servers to a new L4 switch definition, select <i>Create New</i> and specify an L4 switch definition name, then click <i>OK</i>. 	<p>Servers can be members of multiple groups and L4 switch definitions.</p> <p>Servers that are members of an L4 switch definition are no longer listed at the top level of the server listing.</p>
	<p>IMPORTANT: The L4 switch definition name must be either the DNS name or IP address of the L4 switch itself.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ To add the selected servers to an existing L4 switch definition, select an L4 switch definition from the drop-down list in the <i>Select Existing</i> field, then click <i>OK</i>. 	
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective. 	
Remove servers from an L4 switch definition	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, select the check boxes for one or more servers that are listed under the L4 switch definition. 2. Click <i>L4 Switch > Remove from L4 Switch Definition</i>, then click <i>OK</i>. 3. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective. 	<p>In order to retain servers that were previously added to a role section's listing, this places the removed servers back at the top level of the listing, unless they are a member of another group or L4 switch definition in that listing.</p>

3 Use the *Move Up* and *Move Down* buttons to determine the order devices should use to contact the servers.

4 When you are finished reordering the servers, click *OK* or *Apply* to save the changes.

9.3 Creating Closest Server Rules

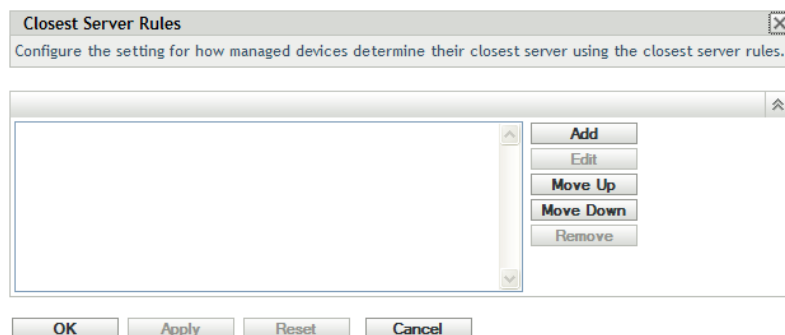
1 Launch ZENworks Control Center.

2 Do one of the following:

- ♦ To create a Closest Server rule for your Management Zone, click the *Configuration* tab, then click *Infrastructure Management* (in the Management Zone Settings panel) > *Closest Server Rules*.

- ♦ To create a Closest Server rule for a device folder, open the folder's details page, then click *Settings > Infrastructure Management* (in the Settings panel) > *Closest Server Rules*.
- ♦ To create a Closest Server rule for a device, open the device's details page, then click *Settings > Infrastructure Management* (in the Settings panel) > *Closest Server Rules*.

[Configuration](#) > Closest Server Rules



The dialog box titled "Closest Server Rules" has a close button (X) in the top right corner. Below the title bar, it says "Configure the setting for how managed devices determine their closest server using the closest server rules." The main area contains a large empty list box with a vertical scrollbar. To the right of the list box are five buttons: "Add", "Edit", "Move Up", "Move Down", and "Remove". At the bottom of the dialog are four buttons: "OK", "Apply", "Reset", and "Cancel".

- 3 Conditional: If you are creating Closest Server rules on a device or device folder, click *Override settings* to activate the Closest Server Rules panel.
The *Override* option (not depicted) displays only at the device and device folder levels.
- 4 Click *Add* to display the Rule Construction dialog box:



The "Rule Construction" dialog box has a title bar with a help icon (?) and a close icon (X). It contains the following fields and controls:

- Rule Name:** A text input field with an asterisk (*) indicating it is required.
- Exclude the Closest Server Default Rule:** A checkbox.
- Rule Logic:** A blue bar with buttons "Add Filter", "Insert Filter", and "Delete".
- A logic rule entry consisting of a checkbox, a dropdown menu (currently showing "--Select--"), and another dropdown menu.
- Collection Servers:** A blue bar with buttons "Move Up", "Move Down", "Add", "Remove", "Groups", and "L4 Switch". Below it is a table with a single column labeled "Name".
- Content Servers:** A blue bar with buttons "Move Up", "Move Down", "Add", "Remove", "Groups", and "L4 Switch". Below it is a table with a single column labeled "Name".
- Configuration Servers:** A blue bar with buttons "Move Up", "Move Down", "Add", "Remove", "Groups", and "L4 Switch". Below it is a table with a single column labeled "Name".
- A note at the bottom: "Fields marked with an asterisk are required."
- At the very bottom are "OK" and "Cancel" buttons.

- 5 In the *Rule Name* field, specify a name for the rule.

The name displays in the Closest Server Rules listing in ZENworks Control Center. To access this listing, click *Configuration* in the left pane, click the *Configuration* tab, click the *Management Zone Settings* panel to open it, click the *Infrastructure Management* section to open it, then click *Closest Server Rules*. All defined rules for the current level are displayed there.

- 6 If you do not want to append the Closest Server Default rule to the servers you are listing in this Closest Server rule, select the *Exclude the Closest Server Default Rule* check box.

The Closest Server rules feature first uses the servers specified in the rule, then proceeds to any other servers listed in the Closest Server Default rule if the specified servers are not available to the managed device. Therefore, to obtain content only from the servers specified in the rule, select this check box to exclude all other servers.

- 7 Use the *Rule Logic* fields to create the rule expression.

An expression consists of a criteria option, operator, and value. For example:

DNS Name Filter equal to *.novell.com

DNS Name Filter is the criteria option, equal to is the operator, and *.novell.com is the value. In the above example, the Closest Server rule is applied only to devices whose DNS name ends with .novell.com.

If necessary, you can use NOT to perform a logical negation of the expression. For example:

NOT DNS Name Filter equal to *.novell.com

In the above example, the Closest Server rule is applied only to devices whose DNS name does not end with .novell.com.

You can use more than one expression for the rule. For example:

DNS Name Filter equal to provo.novell.com or IP Address equal to 123.45.678.12/24

You can use the following criteria:

Option	Explanation
DNS Name Filter	<p>Matches DNS names that meet the filter criteria. You can specify an exact filter or use a question mark (?) or an asterisk (*) as a wildcard to match one or more characters in the DNS name. A ? matches one character and an * matches one or more characters. Examples:</p> <p>provo.novell.com: Matches all devices in the provo subdomain of the novell.com top-level domain.</p> <p>*.novell.com: Matches all devices in the novell.com top-level domain, including any devices in subdomains.</p> <p>provo?.novell.com: Matches all devices in the provo1 and provo 2 subdomains of the novell.com top-level domain; does not match devices in the provo12 subdomain.</p>

Option	Explanation
IP Address /n	<p>Matches IP addresses that fall within the specified CIDR (Classless Inter-Domain Routing) block. With CIDR, the dotted decimal portion of the IP address is interpreted as a 32-bit binary number that has been broken into four 8-bit bytes. The number following the slash (/n) is the prefix length, which is the number of shared initial bits, counting from the left side of the address. The /n number can range from 0 to 32, with 8, 16, 24, and 32 being commonly used numbers. Examples:</p> <p>123.45.678.12/16: Matches all IP addresses that start with 123.45.</p> <p>123.45.678.12/24: Matches all IP addresses that start with 123.45.678.</p>

8 To configure the servers listed in any section, do any of the following:

Task	Steps	Additional Details
Add members to a servers list	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, click <i>Add</i>. 2. Browse for and select one or more servers. You can add Primary Servers and Satellites. 3. Click <i>OK</i> to add the selected servers to the list. 	<p>The selected servers are added only into the list where you clicked <i>Add</i>. You can have different servers in each list.</p> <p>Primary Servers and Satellites with the assigned role are automatically included in the lists for the Closest Server Default rule.</p>
Reorder the servers	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, select the check box for one of the servers. 2. Click <i>Move Up</i> or <i>Move Down</i> as necessary to change its order in the list. 3. Repeat as necessary for the other servers listed. 	<p>Determines the order devices should use to contact the servers.</p> <p>You can order the servers differently in the lists. This allows you to spread the workload by placing different servers higher in one list than in the other two lists. For example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ Collection Servers: Server1, Server2, Server3 ♦ Content Servers: Server2, Server3, Server1 ♦ Configuration Servers: Server3, Server1, Server2
Copy an existing group	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, click <i>Groups > Copy Existing Group</i>. 2. Select a group from the drop-down list, then click <i>OK</i>. 3. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective. 	<p>When you copy an existing group, it retains its group name and some of its members.</p> <p>For a member to be retained in the copied group, it must already have the role assigned to it that matches the role for the copied group's new section.</p>

Task	Steps	Additional Details
Create an empty group	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, click <i>Groups > Create Empty Group</i>. You can add members to it later by using the <i>Groups > Add to Group</i> option. 2. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective. 	The created group displays only in the role section where it is created.
Create a group from the selected servers	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, select the check boxes for one or more servers. 2. Click <i>Groups > Create Group from Selection</i>. 3. Specify a group name, then click <i>OK</i>. 4. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective. 	<p>Servers can be members of multiple groups and L4 switch definitions.</p> <p>Servers that are members of a group or L4 switch definition are no longer listed at the top level of the server listing.</p>
Remove a group	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, select the check boxes for one or more groups. 2. Click <i>Groups > Remove Group</i>, then click <i>OK</i>. 3. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective. 	When you remove a group, servers that were previously added to a role section's listing are retained. This is automatically done by moving members that are not members of another group or L4 switch definition in the role section listing to the top level of the listing.
Add servers to a group	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, select the check boxes for one or more servers. 2. Click <i>Groups > Add to Group</i>. 3. Do one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ To add the selected servers to a new group, select <i>Create New</i> and specify a group name, then click <i>OK</i>. ♦ To add the selected servers to an existing group, select a group from the drop-down list in the <i>Select Existing</i> field, then click <i>OK</i>. 4. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective. 	<p>Servers can be members of multiple groups and L4 switch definitions.</p> <p>Servers that are members of a group are no longer listed at the top level of the server listing.</p>

Task	Steps	Additional Details
Remove servers from a group	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, select the check boxes for one or more servers that are listed under the group. 2. Click <i>Groups > Remove from Group</i>, then click <i>OK</i>. 3. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective. 	In order to retain servers that were previously added to a role section's listing, this places the removed servers back at the top level of the listing, unless they are a member of another group or L4 switch definition in that listing.
Create an L4 switch definition		This option is not used in the Rule Construction dialog box.
Remove an L4 switch	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, click <i>L4 Switch > Remove L4 Switch</i>, then click <i>OK</i>. 2. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective. 	<p>Removing an L4 switch definition from one role section removes it from the other role sections on the dialog box.</p> <p>Removing an L4 switch definition in the Rule Construction dialog box does not remove the definition from the Closest Servers Default Rule page.</p> <p>When you remove an L4 switch definition, servers that were previously added to a role section's listing are retained. This is automatically done by moving members that are not members of another group or L4 switch definition in the role section listing to the top level of the listing.</p>
Add an L4 switch	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, click <i>L4 Switch > Add L4 Switch</i>, select an existing switch from the drop-down list, then click <i>OK</i>. 2. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective. 	Allows you to select an existing L4 switch definition from those displayed on the Closest Server Default Rule page.

- 9** Use the *Move Up* and *Move Down* buttons to determine the order devices should use to contact the servers.

The order in which the ZENworks Servers are listed is the order in which a device contacts them. If the first ZENworks Server is not available, the second server is contacted, and so on.

- 10** When you are finished, click *OK* to add the rule to the *Closest Server Rules* list.

- 11** Repeat [Step 2](#) through [Step 10](#) to create additional rules.

- 12** If necessary, when you are finished creating rules, do the following:

- ♦ Use the *Move Up* and *Move Down* buttons to reorder the rules in the *Closest Server Rules* list.

The rules are evaluated in the order they are listed. You should place the rules in the order you want them evaluated.

- ♦ To modify the settings of a rule, select the desired rule, then click *Edit*.

9.4 Backing Up Closest Server Rules

If your ZENworks Management Zone has complex Closest Server rules configured, you might want to export these rules as part of your backup procedure.

The following zman commands are useful when backing up Closest Server rules:

- ♦ **location-copy-rules (loccp):** Copies Closest Server rules data from a source device or device folder to one or more destination devices or device folders.
- ♦ **location-export-rules-to-file (loctf):** Exports Closest Server rules data (in XML format) to a file. The XML file can be used as input for creating or appending to the Closest Server rules.
- ♦ **location-import-rules-from-file (locff):** Imports Closest Server rules data (in XML format) from a file.

For more information about these commands and their usage, see “[Location Rules Commands](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.

Backing Up and Restoring the ZENworks Server and Certificate Authority

10

The following sections provide more information about backing up and restoring a ZENworks Server and Certificate Authority:

- ♦ [Section 10.1, “Backing Up a ZENworks Server,” on page 111](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.2, “Restoring a ZENworks Server,” on page 112](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.3, “Backing Up the Certificate Authority,” on page 113](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.4, “Restoring the Certificate Authority,” on page 113](#)

10.1 Backing Up a ZENworks Server

Novell® ZENworks® 10 Configuration Management allows you to back up and restore the configuration files for a ZENworks Primary Server. This enables you to maintain a ZENworks Server’s identity and configuration if a server fails or if you need to upgrade to new server hardware.

A ZENworks Server only needs to be backed up once. The backup saves only the configuration files. The following items must be backed up separately:

- ♦ The content repository (bundle, policy, and image files). You should do a separate backup for the content repository if you only have one Primary Server in the Management Zone. If you have two or more Primary Servers and you’ve replicated all content to both servers, they serve as backup copies to each other.
- ♦ The ZENworks database (if it resides on the ZENworks Server). Backing up the ZENworks Server and backing up the ZENworks database are two separate processes. If your ZENworks database resides on the same server as one of your ZENworks Servers, first back up the database and then back up the ZENworks Server. Because the ZENworks database changes frequently, you should back up the database on a regular schedule. For information about backing up the database, see [Part IX, “Database Management,” on page 263](#).

When you back up a ZENworks Server using a `zman` command, all files in the `Novell\ZENworks\conf` directory on a Windows server or the `etc/opt/novell/zenworks/` directory on a Linux server are stored in an encrypted backup file in a location that you specify.

- 1 (Conditional) If the server you are backing up hosts the ZENworks database, manually back up the database file to a safe location.

For information about backing up the database, see [Part IX, “Database Management,” on page 263](#).

- 2 At a command prompt on the ZENworks Server, enter the following command:

```
zman zenserver-backup path_to_backup_file_to_create
```

For example:

```
zman zenserver-backup c:\zcm_backups\zone_backup.bak
```

or

```
zman zenserver-backup /root/zcm_backups/zone_backup.bak
```

- 3 When prompted, enter a ZENworks administrator name and password.
- 4 When prompted, enter a passphrase (at least 10 characters) to be used for encrypting the backup file.

Make sure you remember this passphrase. You must enter it if you ever need to restore the server.

- 5 (Conditional) If this is your only Primary Server, or if this is the only Primary Server that contains all content defined in your Management Zone, manually back up your content repository to a safe location.

For information on the content repository, see [Chapter 26, “Content Repository,” on page 225](#).

IMPORTANT: If this is the only Primary Server that contains all of your defined content for the Management Zone and you do not back up the content repository, you are not prepared for a full disaster recovery.

- 6 Repeat [Step 1](#) and [Step 5](#) on a regular basis.

The zman command documented in [Step 2](#) through [Step 4](#) only needs to be run once.

10.2 Restoring a ZENworks Server

This procedure assumes the following:

- ♦ You have a backup of the ZENworks Server’s configuration information. See [Section 10.1, “Backing Up a ZENworks Server,” on page 111](#).
- ♦ If the ZENworks database resides on the ZENworks Server, you have a backup of the database. See [Section 32.3, “Backing Up the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database,” on page 267](#).
- ♦ The bundles and policies that are stored on the ZENworks Server have been replicated to other ZENworks Servers. If not, distribution of a policy or bundle from the restored ZENworks Server fails.
- ♦ The image files that are stored on the ZENworks Server are available on another ZENworks Server. If not, distribution of the image files from the restored ZENworks Server will fail.

IMPORTANT: When you restore the ZENworks Server and the database, you must first restore the ZENworks Server, then continue with restoring the latest backed-up ZENworks database.

To restore a ZENworks server:

- 1 Reinstall the ZENworks Server, using the same IP address and DNS name.

If you do not use the same IP address and DNS name, any devices that connect to the server need to reregister.

If you have only one Primary Server connected to an external database in a zone, reinstall the Primary server and create a dummy database during the installation. You do not need to create an internal database.

If you have more than one Primary server connected to an external database in a zone, reinstall the failed Primary server as a second Primary Server. You are not prompted to configure the database during the installation.

- 2 Ensure that you have read/write rights to the `Novell\ZENworks\conf` directory on a Windows server or the `etc/opt/novell/zenworks` directory on a Linux server.
- 3 At a command prompt on the ZENworks Server, enter the following command:

```
zman zenserver-restore path_to_backup_file_to_restore
```

For example:

```
zman zenserver-restore c:\zcm_backups\zone_backup.bak
```

or

```
zman zenserver-restore /root/zcm_backups/zone_backup.bak
```
- 4 When prompted, enter a ZENworks administrator name and password.
- 5 When prompted, enter the passphrase (at least 10 characters) to be used for decrypting the backup file.
This is the same passphrase that was entered to encrypt the file when backing up the server.
- 6 (Conditional) If the database is located on the server, restore the database after the ZENworks Server information has been restored. For instructions, see [Section 32.4, “Restoring the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database,”](#) on page 273.
- 7 (Conditional) If you have backups of the image files, restore the files to the `Novell\Zenworks\work\content-repo\images` directory on a Windows server or the `/var/opt/novell/zenworks/content-repo/images` directory on a Linux server.
- 8 Restart the ZENworks Server.

10.3 Backing Up the Certificate Authority

To back up the Certificate Authority files on the Primary Server that is configured to be the ZENworks internal Certificate Authority:

- 1 At the command prompt of the ZENworks Server, enter the following command:

```
zman certificate-authority-export (certificate-authority-export/cae) [options] (file path)
```

This command exports the key-pair credentials of the zone Certificate Authority to a file. For more information about zman Certificate Authority commands, see “[zman\(1\)](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.
- 2 Enter the username and password of the administrator of the Management Zone.
- 3 Enter a passphrase for the file encryption.
Make sure you remember this passphrase. You must enter it if you ever need to restore the server.

10.4 Restoring the Certificate Authority

To restore the Certificate Authority files on the Primary Server that is configured to be the ZENworks internal Certificate Authority:

- 1 At the command prompt of the ZENworks Server, enter the following zman command:

```
zman certificate-authority-import (certificate-authority-import/cai) (file path)
```

This command imports the key-pair credentials of the zone certificate authority from a file. For more information about zman Certificate Authority commands, see “zman(1)” in the [ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference](#).

- 2 Enter the username and password of the administrator of the Management Zone.
- 3 Enter the file encryption passphrase you specified when you backed up the Certificate Authority files (Step 3 in [Section 10.3, “Backing Up the Certificate Authority,”](#) on page 113).
- 4 Manually open the CaConfig.xml file, which is located in `ZENworks_installation_directory\conf\security\` directory on Windows and in the `/etc/opt/novell/zenworks/security/` directory on Linux, to ensure that the <Keystore> tag contains the correct path of `zenca.keystore`. The `zenca.keystore` file is located by default in the `ZENworks_installation_directory\security\` directory on Windows and in the `/etc/opt/novell/zenworks/security/` directory on Linux.
- 5 (Conditional) If you edit the `zenca.keystore` path in the CaConfig.xml file in [Step 4](#), you must restart the Novell ZENworks Server service:
 - ♦ **On Windows:** Do the following:
 1. From the Windows desktop Start menu, click *Settings > Control Panel*.
 2. Double-click *Administrative Tools > Services*.
 3. Restart *Novell ZENworks Server*.
 - ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter `/etc/init.d/novell-zenserver restart`.

The following sections explain the disaster recovery mechanisms available in Novell® ZENworks® 10 Configuration Management that help you protect the first Primary Server of a Management Zone if an organizational risk assessment identifies a need for such steps:

- ♦ [Section 11.1, “Replacing the First Primary Server with the Second Primary Server,” on page 115](#)
- ♦ [Section 11.2, “Replacing an Existing Primary Server with a New Primary Server,” on page 118](#)
- ♦ [Section 11.3, “Re-Creating Certificates,” on page 120](#)

11.1 Replacing the First Primary Server with the Second Primary Server

You can replace the first Primary Server in your Management Zone with an existing second Primary Server or with a new server. If you choose to replace the first Primary Server with a new server that has a different hostname and IP address, you must install ZENworks 10 Configuration Management on the new server in the same Management Zone. Consequently, the new server becomes the second Primary Server.

The first Primary Server and the second Primary Server must have the same version of the ZENworks 10 Configuration Management installed.

NOTE: This scenario has been tested on the following platform combinations:

- ♦ Windows Server* 2003 (32-bit) to Windows Server 2008 (32-bit)
- ♦ SUSE® Linux Enterprise Server (SLES) 10 (32-bit) to SLES 10 (32-bit)

It has not been tested with ZENworks Reporting Server.

This scenario is not supported on Windows to Linux and vice-versa platform combinations.

To replace the first Primary Server with the second Primary Server:

- 1** Make sure that all the contents of the `content-repo` directory of the first Primary Server are replicated to the second Primary Server.

The `content-repo` directory is located in the `ZENworks_installation_directory\work\` directory on Windows and in the `/var/opt/novell/zenworks/` directory on Linux.

- 2** (Conditional) If the first Primary Server has add-on images:





- 2a** In ZENworks Control Center for the second Primary Server, click the *Bundles* tab, then click the Imaging bundle.

The *Summary* tab is displayed.

- 2b** Click *Edit* next to *Add-on Image File*.

The Bundle Add-on Image wizard is displayed.

- 2c** On the *Add Image Server Address* page, select the first Primary Server that is associated with the bundle, then click *Remove*.

- 2d** Click *Add*.
- 2e** Click  next to the *Servers* folder to navigate through the folders until you find the second Primary Server.
- 2f** Select the second Primary Server to display its name in the *Selected* list, then click *OK*.
- 2g** Click *Finish*.
The add-on image is associated with the second Primary Server, and the add-on image content is created on the second Primary Server.
- 2h** In the *Summary* tab of the bundle, click the *Increment Version* underlined link for *Version*, then click *Yes* in the Confirm Version Increment dialog box.
- 3** (Conditional) If the first Primary Server has a ZENworks Imaging bundle, copy the bundle to the second Primary Server:
 - 3a** Manually copy all the files with the `.zmg` extension from the `/content-repo/images` directory of the first Primary Server to the `/content-repo/images` directory on the second Primary Server.
 - 3b** In ZENworks Control Center of the second Primary Server, click the *Bundles* tab, then click the Imaging bundle.
 - 3c** Click the *Actions* tab.
 - 3d** Click the ZENworks Image action.
The Edit Action dialog box is displayed.
 - 3e** In the *ZENworks Image* field, click .
The Server and Path Information dialog box is displayed.
 - 3f** In the *Server Object, IP or DNS* field, click  to browse for and select the second Primary Server.
 - 3g** In the *File Path on Server* field, click  to browse for and select the `image.zmg` file.
- 4** Export the Certificate Authority role.
 - 4a** Take a reliable backup of the Certificate Authority of the first Primary Server.
For detailed information on how to take a backup of the Certificate Authority, see [Section 10.3, “Backing Up the Certificate Authority,” on page 113](#).

IMPORTANT: You must use the `-d` option with the `zman certificate-authority-export` command to remove the Certificate Authority role of the local server.

 - 4b** Restore the backed-up Certificate Authority on the second Primary Server.
For detailed information on how to restore a backed-up Certificate Authority, see [Section 10.4, “Restoring the Certificate Authority,” on page 113](#).
- 5** In the default closest server rule at the Management Zone level, move the first Primary Server as the last entry in the servers list.
 - 5a** In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
 - 5b** In the Management Zone Settings panel, click *Infrastructure Management > Closest Server Default Rule*.
 - 5c** In the *Collection Servers* list, select the check box next to the first Primary Server, then click *Move Down* until the server is the last entry in the list.

- 5d** In the *Content Servers* list, select the check box next to the first Primary Server, then click *Move Down* until the server is the last entry in the list.
- 5e** In the *Configuration Servers* list, select the check box next to the first Primary Server, then click *Move Down* until the server is the last entry in the list.
- 5f** Click *OK*.
- 6** (Conditional) If you have any additional closest server rules configured, remove the first Primary Server from the rules.
 - 6a** In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
 - 6b** In the Management Zone Settings panel, click *Infrastructure Management > Closest Server Rules*.
 - 6c** Select a closest server rule, then click *Edit*.
The Rule Construction dialog box is displayed.
 - 6d** In the *Collection Servers* list, select the check box next to the first Primary Server, then click *Remove*.
 - 6e** In the *Content Servers* list, select the check box next to the first Primary Server, then click *Remove*.
 - 6f** In the *Configuration Servers* list, select the check box next to the first Primary Server, then click *Remove*.
 - 6g** Click *OK* twice.
- 7** Refresh all the devices (Primary Servers, Satellites, and managed devices) in the Management Zone so that they get the new closest server rules.
- 8** (Conditional) Move the database to another device in any of the following scenarios:
 - ♦ You are using an internal ZENworks database (embedded Sybase SQL* Anywhere).
 - ♦ You are using an external database installed on the device hosting the first Primary Server and you do not plan to use the device after uninstalling the Primary Server.

To move the database to another device:

- 8a** (Conditional) If you are using an external database, ensure that you have a reliable backup of the database.

- 8b** Obtain the credentials of the database.

To procure the credentials of the internal database, use one of the following commands:

```
zman dgc -U administrator_name -P administrator_password
```

or

```
zman database-get-credentials -U administrator_name -P  
administrator_password
```

To obtain the credentials of the external database, contact the database administrator.

- 8c** Remove the database role from the first Primary Server:

- 8c1** Log into the database.

- 8c2** In the SQL editor, execute the following SQL query to remove the database role entry for the first Primary Server from the zZENServerRoles table:

```
delete from zZENServerRoles where Roles='Database';
```

8c3 In the SQL editor, execute the following SQL command:

```
commit;
```

- 8d** If the database is installed on the same device as that of the first Primary Server, move the database.

Internal Sybase: For detailed information on how to move the data from an internal Sybase database to an external Sybase database, see [Section 32.5, “Moving the Data from an Embedded Sybase Database to an External Sybase Database,”](#) on page 274.

External Sybase: For detailed information on how to move the data from one external Sybase database to another external Sybase database, see [Section 33.3, “Moving the Data from One External Sybase Database to another External Sybase Database,”](#) on page 295.

MS SQL: For detailed information on how to move the data to a new MS SQL database, see the MS SQL documentation. Later on, perform the steps described in [Section 33.5, “Configuring the ZENworks Server to Point to the New MS SQL Database Containing Data Moved from Another MS SQL Database,”](#) on page 299.

Oracle: For detailed information on how to move the data from one Oracle database to another Oracle database, see the Oracle documentation. Later on, perform the steps described in [Section 33.6, “Configuring the ZENworks Server to Point to the New Oracle Database Containing Data Moved from Another Oracle Database,”](#) on page 300.

- 9** Remove all Satellites under the first Primary Server from the Server Hierarchy.

For more information on how to remove the Satellites from the Server Hierarchy listing in ZENworks Control Center, see [Section 7.4, “Removing Satellites from the Server Hierarchy,”](#) on page 85.

- 10** Retire the first Primary Server by entering one of the following commands at the second Primary Server prompt:

```
zman zsret first_primary_server_object_name
```

or

```
zman zenserver-retire first_primary_server_object_name
```

For more information about zman, view the zman man page (`man zman`) on the server or see “[zman\(1\)](#)” in the [ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference](#).

- 11** After ensuring that all the operations in the Management Zone are working as expected, unretire the first Primary Server and subsequently uninstall ZENworks 10 Configuration Management on the first Primary Server.

For detailed information on how to unretire a device, see “[Retiring or Unretiring Devices](#)” in the [ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Discovery, Deployment, and Retirement Reference](#).

For detailed information on how to uninstall ZENworks 10 Configuration Management, see “[Uninstalling ZENworks Software](#)” in the [ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Installation Guide](#).

11.2 Replacing an Existing Primary Server with a New Primary Server

If you have only one Primary Server in the Management Zone and if you want to replace the device hosting the Primary Server with a new device that has the same hostname and IP address as the old device, you must move the Primary Server to the new device.

The existing Primary Server and the new Primary Server must have the same version of the ZENworks 10 Configuration Management installed.

NOTE: This scenario has been tested on the following platform combinations:

- ♦ Windows Server* 2003 (32-bit) to Windows Server 2008 (32-bit)
- ♦ SUSE® Linux Enterprise Server (SLES) 10 (32-bit) to SLES 10 (32-bit)

It has not been tested with ZENworks Reporting Server.

This scenario is not supported on Windows to Linux and vice-versa platform combinations.

- 1 Take a reliable backup of the existing ZENworks Server.

For detail information on how to take a backup of the ZENworks Server, see [Section 10.1, “Backing Up a ZENworks Server,” on page 111](#).

- 2 Take a reliable backup of the Certificate Authority of the Primary Server.

For detail information on how to take a backup of the Certificate Authority, see [Section 10.3, “Backing Up the Certificate Authority,” on page 113](#).

- 3 (Conditional) Take a reliable backup of database in any of the following scenarios:

- ♦ You are using an internal ZENworks database (embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere).
- ♦ You are using an external database installed on the device hosting the Primary Server and you do not plan to use the device after uninstalling the Primary Server.

For detailed information on how to take a backup of an internal database, see [Section 32.3, “Backing Up the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database,” on page 267](#).

To take a backup of an external database, see the documentation for the database.

- 4 Stop all the ZENworks services on the Primary Server.

For detailed information on how to stop the ZENworks services on Windows, see [Section 6.1.3, “Stopping a ZENworks Service,” on page 72](#). For detailed information on how to stop the ZENworks services on Linux, see [Section 6.2.3, “Stopping a ZENworks Service,” on page 74](#).

- 5 Take a reliable backup of the `content-repo` directory of the Primary Server.

The `content-repo` directory is located in the `ZENworks_installation_directory\work\` directory on Windows and in the `/var/opt/novell/zenworks/` directory on Linux.

- 6 Disconnect the device from the network.

- 7 Ensure that the hostname and the IP address of the new server are same as those of the old Primary Server.

- 8 Install ZENworks 10 Configuration Management on the new server with the same Management Zone name and ports as that of the old Primary Server.

For detailed information on how to install ZENworks 10 Configuration Management, see “Installing the ZENworks Server” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Installation Guide*.

- 9 Do the following on the new Primary Server:

- 9a** Restore the backed-up ZENworks Server.

For detailed information on how to restore the ZENworks Server, see [Section 10.2, “Restoring a ZENworks Server,” on page 112](#).

9b Restore the backed-up Certificate Authority.

For detailed information on how to restore the Certificate Authority, see [Section 10.4, “Restoring the Certificate Authority,” on page 113.](#)

9c (Conditional) Restore the backed-up database.

For detailed information on how to restore the internal ZENworks database, see [Section 32.4, “Restoring the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database,” on page 273.](#)

9d Copy the backed-up `content-repo` directory to the

`ZENworks_installation_directory\work\` directory on Windows or to the `/var/opt/novell/zenworks/` directory on Linux.

10 Ensure that the new server is running correctly. Subsequently, uninstall ZENworks Configuration Management from the old device.

For detailed information on how to uninstall ZENworks 10 Configuration Management see “Uninstalling ZENworks Software” in the [ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Installation Guide](#).

11.3 Re-Creating Certificates

You need to re-create certificates in the following scenarios:

- ♦ [Section 11.3.1, “Changing the Internal Certificate to an External Certificate on a Primary Server,” on page 120](#)
- ♦ [Section 11.3.2, “Changing the IP Address of the Primary Server after Installing ZENworks 10 Configuration Management,” on page 123](#)
- ♦ [Section 11.3.3, “Changing the DNS Name or the IP Address and DNS Name of the Primary Server after Installing ZENworks 10 Configuration Management,” on page 124](#)

IMPORTANT: ZENworks 10 Configuration Management SP2 currently does not support changing the external certificate to an internal certificate on Primary Servers.

11.3.1 Changing the Internal Certificate to an External Certificate on a Primary Server

On a Windows or Linux Primary Server, if you want to change the existing internal certificate to an external certificate or replace an expired server certificate with a new external certificate, perform the following tasks to create a new external certificate:

1 Before changing the internal certificate to an external certificate, take a reliable backup of the following on all the Primary Servers in the Management Zone:

- ♦ **Content-Repo Directory:** The `content-repo` directory is located by default in the `ZENworks_installation_directory\work` directory on Windows and in the `/var/opt/novell/zenworks/` on Linux.

Ensure that the `images` directory located within the `content-repo` directory has been successfully backed up.

- ♦ **Certificate Authority:** For detailed information on how to take a backup of the Certificate Authority, see [Section 10.3, “Backing Up the Certificate Authority,” on page 113.](#)

- ♦ **Embedded Database:** For detailed information on how to take a backup of the embedded database, see [Section 32.3, “Backing Up the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database,”](#) on page 267.
- 2 Create a Certificate Signing Request (CSR) by providing the hostname of the Primary Server as the subject.
For more information on how to create a CSR, see “[Creating an External Certificate Authority](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Installation Guide*.
 - 3 Replace the existing certificate with the newly created external certificate on all the devices in the Management Zone in the order listed below:
 1. “[Replacing the Existing Certificate with the New External Certificate on the Primary Servers](#)” on page 121
 2. “[Replacing the Existing Certificate with the New External Certificate on the Satellites](#)” on page 122
 3. “[Replacing the Existing Certificate with the New External Certificate on the Managed Devices](#)” on page 123

Replacing the Existing Certificate with the New External Certificate on the Primary Servers

Perform the following tasks on all the Primary Servers in the Management zone whose certificate you want to change:

- 1 Reconfigure the certificates on the Primary Server whose IP address and DNS name you changed in [Step 2](#) by entering the following command at the server’s command prompt:


```
novell-zenworks-configure -c SSL -Z
```

 Follow the prompts.
- 2 Restart all the ZENworks services by running the following command:


```
novell-zenworks-configure -c Start
```

 By default, all the services are selected. You must select *Restart* as the *Action*.
- 3 Unregister the ZENworks Adaptive Agent installed on the Primary Server from the Management Zone by entering the following command at the server’s command prompt:


```
zac unr -f
```

 For more information about *zac*, view the *zac* man page (`man zac`) on the device or see “[zac\(1\)](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.
- 4 Clear the ZENworks cache.

On Windows: Run the following commands:

```
zac cc
```

```
delete ZENworks_installation_directory>\Novell\ZENworks\ cache\zmd\ /s
```

On Linux: Run the following commands:

```
zac cc
```

```
rm -rf /var/opt/novell/zenworks/zmd/cache
```
- 5 Restart the ZENworks Adaptive Agent Service.
- 6 Register the ZENworks Adaptive Agent installed on the Primary Server to the correct Primary Server by entering the following command at the device’s command prompt:

```
zac reg https://IP_address_of_Primary_Server:port
```

For more information about zac, view the zac man page (`man zac`) on the device or see “[zac\(1\)](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.

This replaces the server certificate in the local cache.

- 7 In the `initial-web-service` file, which is located in the `ZENworks_installation_directory\Novell\ZENworks\conf` directory on Windows and in the `/etc/opt/novell/zenworks/` directory on Linux, change first line to:

```
https://localhost:port_number;https://127.0.0.1:port_number
```

Where, `port_number` is the port on which the server is running.

- 8 Clear the ZENworks cache by running the `zac cc` command.
- 9 Restart the ZENworks Adaptive Agent Service.
- 10 Re-create all the default and custom deployment packages.

Default Deployment Packages: At the server’s command prompt, enter the following command:

```
novell-zenworks-configure -c CreateExtractorPacks -Z
```

Custom Deployment Packages: At the server’s command prompt, enter the following command:

```
novell-zenworks- configure -c RebuildCustomPacks -Z
```

Replacing the Existing Certificate with the New External Certificate on the Satellites

Perform the following tasks at the command prompt of each Satellite registered to the Primary Server whose certificate you changed:

- 1 Run the following command to force the device to be unregistered locally:

```
zac unr -f
```

For more information about zac, view the zac man page (`man zac`) on the device or see “[zac\(1\)](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.

- 2 Clear the ZENworks cache.

On Windows: Run the following commands:

```
zac cc
```

```
delete c:\program files\novell\zenworks\cache\zmd /s
```

On Linux: Run the following commands:

```
zac cc
```

```
rm -rf /var/opt/novell/zenworks/zmd/cache
```

- 3 Restart the ZENworks Adaptive Agent Service.
- 4 Restart the Proxy DHCP services on all the Satellites.
- 5 Run the following command to register the device in the Management Zone:

```
zac reg https://ZENworks_Server_DNS_name:port_number
```

For more information about zac, view the zac man page (`man zac`) on the device or see “[zac\(1\)](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.

This replaces the server certificate in the local cache.

Replacing the Existing Certificate with the New External Certificate on the Managed Devices

Perform the following steps at the command prompt of each managed device registered to the Primary Server whose certificate you changed:

- 1 Locally unregister all the managed devices by entering the following command at the managed device's prompt:

```
zac unr -f
```

For more information about `zac`, view the `zac` man page (`man zac`) on the device or see “[zac\(1\)](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.

- 2 Clear the cache and delete the contents of the `ZENworks_installation_directory\Novell\ZENworks\cache\zmd` directory by entering the following commands at each managed device's prompt.

```
zac cc
```

```
delete ZENworks_installation_directory>\Novell\ZENworks\cache\zmd\ /s
```

- 3 Restart the ZENworks Adaptive Agent Service.
- 4 Run the following command to register the device in the Management Zone:

```
zac reg https://ZENworks_Server_DNS_name:port_number
```

For more information about `zac`, view the `zac` man page (`man zac`) on the device or see “[zac\(1\)](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.

This replaces the server certificate in the local cache.

11.3.2 Changing the IP Address of the Primary Server after Installing ZENworks 10 Configuration Management

If you want to change the IP address of the Primary Server after installing ZENworks 10 Configuration Management SP2, and if the CN of the certificate does not have the IP address configured, use the following steps to change the IP address of the Primary Server:

NOTE: This scenario has been tested only on the Windows Primary Server and the embedded Sybase database. In this setup, the DNS and DHCP servers are configured on the same device.

- 1 Before changing the IP address of the Primary Server, take a reliable backup of the following on all the Primary Servers in the Management Zone:
 - ♦ **Content-Repo Directory:** The `content-repo` directory is located by default in the `ZENworks_installation_directory\work` directory on Windows and in the `/var/opt/novell/zenworks/` on Linux.
Ensure that the `images` directory located within the `content-repo` directory has been successfully backed up.
 - ♦ **Certificate Authority:** For detailed information on how to take a backup of the Certificate Authority, see [Section 10.3, “Backing Up the Certificate Authority,”](#) on [page 113](#).
 - ♦ **Embedded Database:** For detailed information on how to take a backup of the embedded database, see [Section 32.3, “Backing Up the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database,”](#) on [page 267](#).

- 2 Change the IP address of the Primary Server.

IMPORTANT: Do not change the DNS name of the server.

- 3 Ensure that the new IP address of the server is correctly mapped to its existing DNS name on the DNS server.
- 4 Restart all the ZENworks services by running the following command at the server's command prompt:

```
novell-zenworks-configure -c Start
```

By default, all the services are selected. You must select *Restart* as the *Action*.

- 5 Re-create all the default and custom deployment packages.

Default Deployment Packages: At the server's command prompt, enter the following command:

```
novell-zenworks-configure -c CreateExtractorPacks -Z
```

Custom Deployment Packages: At the server's command prompt, enter the following command:

```
novell-zenworks-configure -c RebuildCustomPacks -Z
```

- 6 If the database is located on the Primary Server whose IP address you changed in [Step 2](#), you must change the database server address on all the second Primary Servers. On all the second Primary Servers, change the value of database server address in the `ZENworks_Installation_Directory\Novell\ZENworks\conf\datamodel\zdm.xml` to point to the new IP address of the first Primary Server.
- 7 Restart the ZENworks Adaptive Agent.
- 8 Restart the Proxy DHCP services on all the Satellites.

11.3.3 Changing the DNS Name or the IP Address and DNS Name of the Primary Server after Installing ZENworks 10 Configuration Management

If you want to change only the DNS name or if you want to change both the IP address and DNS name of the Primary Server after installing ZENworks 10 Configuration Management SP2, and if the certificate's CN has fully qualified DNS configured, use the following steps to change only the DNS name or to change both the IP address and DNS name of the Primary Server:

NOTE: This scenario has been tested only on the Windows Primary Server and the embedded Sybase database. In this setup, the DNS and DHCP servers are configured on the same device.

- 1 Before changing the IP address of the Primary Server, take a reliable backup of the following on all the Primary Servers in the Management Zone:
 - ♦ **Content-Repo Directory:** The `content-repo` directory is located by default in the `ZENworks_installation_directory\work` directory on Windows and in the `/var/opt/novell/zenworks/` on Linux.
Ensure that the `images` directory located within the `content-repo` directory has been successfully backed up.

- ♦ **Certificate Authority:** For detailed information on how to take a backup of the Certificate Authority, see [Section 10.3, “Backing Up the Certificate Authority,” on page 113.](#)
 - ♦ **Embedded Database:** For detailed information on how to take a backup of the Embedded database, see [Section 32.3, “Backing Up the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database,” on page 267.](#)
- 2** Do one of the following:
 - ♦ Change the IP address and the DNS name of the Primary Server.
 - ♦ Change the DNS name only of the Primary Server.
 - 3** Reboot the Primary Server.
 - 4** Ensure that the DNS entry of the Primary Server has been updated with the new DNS name.
 - 5** Create a Certificate Signing Request (CSR) by providing the hostname of the Primary Server as the subject.
 For more information on how to create a CSR, see [“Creating an External Certificate Authority” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Installation Guide*.](#)
 - 6** (Conditional) If the Primary Server whose DNS name you changed hosts the database, and if the database server IP address or DNS name has been changed, do the following on all Primary Servers:
 - 6a** Ensure that the database server IP address or DNS name has been configured correctly in the `zdm.xml` file, which is located in the `ZENworks_Installation_Directory\Novell\ZENworks\conf\datamodel\` directory on Windows, and in the `/etc/opt/novell/zenworks/datamodel/` directory on Linux.
 - 6b** Restart the following services:
 - ♦ Novell ZENworks Server
 - ♦ Novell ZENworks Loader
 - ♦ Novell ZENworks Agent Service
 - 7** Replace the existing certificate with the newly created external certificate on all the devices in the Management Zone in the order listed below:
 1. [“Replacing the Existing Certificate with the New External Certificate on the Primary Servers” on page 125](#)
 2. [“Replacing the Existing Certificate with the New External Certificate on the Satellites” on page 127](#)
 3. [“Replacing the Existing Certificate with the New External Certificate on the Managed Devices” on page 127](#)

Replacing the Existing Certificate with the New External Certificate on the Primary Servers

Perform the following tasks on all the Primary Servers in the Management zone whose certificate you want to change:

- 1** Reconfigure the certificates on the Primary Server whose IP address and DNS name you changed in [Step 2 on page 125](#) by entering the following command at the server’s command prompt:

```
novell-zenworks-configure -c SSL -Z
```

Follow the prompts.

- 2 Restart all the ZENworks services by running the following command:

```
novell-zenworks-configure -c Start
```

By default, all the services are selected. You must select *Restart* as the *Action*.

- 3 Unregister the ZENworks Adaptive Agent installed on the Primary Server from the Management Zone by entering the following command at the server's command prompt:

```
zac unr -f
```

For more information about `zac`, view the `zac` man page (`man zac`) on the device or see “[zac\(1\)](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.

- 4 Clear the ZENworks cache.

On Windows: Run the following commands:

```
zac cc
```

```
delete ZENworks_installation_directory>\Novell\ZENworks\ cache\zmd\ /s
```

On Linux: Run the following commands:

```
zac cc
```

```
rm -rf /var/opt/novell/zenworks/zmd/cache
```

- 5 Restart the ZENworks Adaptive Agent Service.

- 6 Register the ZENworks Adaptive Agent installed on the Primary Server to the correct Primary Server by entering the following command at the device's command prompt:

```
zac reg https://IP_address_of_Primary_Server:port
```

For more information about `zac`, view the `zac` man page (`man zac`) on the device or see “[zac\(1\)](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.

This replaces the server certificate in the local cache.

- 7 In the `initial-web-service` file, which is located in the `ZENworks_installation_directory\Novell\ZENworks\conf` directory on Windows and in the `/etc/opt/novell/zenworks/` directory on Linux, change first line to:

```
https://localhost:port_number;https://127.0.0.1:port_number
```

Where, *port_number* is the port on which the server is running.

- 8 Clear the ZENworks cache by running the `zac cc` command.

- 9 Restart the ZENworks Adaptive Agent Service.

- 10 Re-create all the default and custom deployment packages.

Default Deployment Packages: At the server's command prompt, enter the following command:

```
novell-zenworks-configure -c CreateExtractorPacks -Z
```

Custom Deployment Packages: At the server's command prompt, enter the following command:

```
novell-zenworks- configure -c RebuildCustomPacks -Z
```

Replacing the Existing Certificate with the New External Certificate on the Satellites

Perform the following tasks at the command prompt of each Satellite registered to the Primary Server whose certificate you changed:

- 1 Run the following command to force the device to be unregistered locally:

```
zac unr -f
```

For more information about zac, view the zac man page (`man zac`) on the device or see “[zac\(1\)](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.

- 2 Clear the ZENworks cache.

On Windows: Run the following commands:

```
zac cc
```

```
delete c:\program files\novell\zenworks\cache\zmd /s
```

On Linux: Run the following commands:

```
zac cc
```

```
rm -rf /var/opt/novell/zenworks/zmd/cache
```

- 3 Restart the ZENworks Adaptive Agent Service.
- 4 Restart the Proxy DHCP services on all the Satellites.
- 5 Run the following command to register the device in the Management Zone:

```
zac reg https://ZENworks_Server_DNS_name:port_number
```

For more information about zac, view the zac man page (`man zac`) on the device or see “[zac\(1\)](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.

This replaces the server certificate in the local cache.

Replacing the Existing Certificate with the New External Certificate on the Managed Devices

Perform the following steps at the command prompt of each managed device registered to the Primary Server whose certificate you changed:

- 1 Locally unregister all the managed devices by entering the following command at the managed device’s prompt:

```
zac unr -f
```

For more information about zac, view the zac man page (`man zac`) on the device or see “[zac\(1\)](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.

- 2 Clear the cache and delete the contents of the `ZENworks_installation_directory\Novell\ZENworks\cache\zmd` directory by entering the following commands at each managed device’s prompt.

```
zac cc
```

```
delete ZENworks_installation_directory>\Novell\ZENworks\cache\zmd\ /s
```

- 3 Restart the ZENworks Adaptive Agent Service.
- 4 Run the following command to register the device in the Management Zone:

```
zac reg https://ZENworks_Server_DNS_name:port_number
```

For more information about `zac`, view the `zac` man page (`man zac`) on the device or see “`zac(1)`” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.
This replaces the server certificate in the local cache.

ZENworks Adaptive Agent



The ZENworks® Adaptive Agent is part of the Novell® ZENworks 10 Configuration Management software that lets you manage devices over the network. The ZENworks Adaptive Agent, commonly referred to as the Adaptive Agent, provides services that do the following without requiring you to visit individual devices:

- ♦ Deliver software, patches, and system updates to devices.
- ♦ Manage policies that determine the behavior of devices.
- ♦ Take inventory of device hardware and software.
- ♦ Access devices from a remote location to troubleshoot and fix problems with hardware and software.
- ♦ Act as a Satellite to help distribute content, image devices, and collect inventory and device messages.

Each of these services is provided through the use of modules that plug in to the Adaptive Agent. Using ZENworks Control Center, you can configure which modules are active on devices, thus controlling which services are available on those devices. You can also configure a variety of other Adaptive Agent settings.

The following sections contain more information:

- ♦ [Chapter 12, “Viewing the Version of the Adaptive Agent Software and Modules on a Device,” on page 131](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 13, “Searching for Devices that Have a Specified Version of the Adaptive Agent,” on page 133](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 14, “Configuring Adaptive Agent Settings after Deployment,” on page 135](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 15, “Configuring ZENworks Explorer,” on page 149](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 16, “Removing the ZENworks Pre-Agent from a Device,” on page 153](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 17, “Troubleshooting the Adaptive Agent,” on page 155](#)

Viewing the Version of the Adaptive Agent Software and Modules on a Device

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Devices* tab.
- 2 Click *Servers* to view the Adaptive Agent software version on a server.
or
Click *Workstations* to view the Adaptive Agent software version on a workstation.
- 3 Click the underlined link for the desired device.
- 4 In the General section, view the version in the *ZENworks Agent Version* row.
- 5 (Optional) Click the underlined version number to display a list of the ZENworks Agent modules that are installed on the device, along with their version numbers.
You can uninstall, enable, or disable the ZENworks modules by using the ZENworks Agent settings on the device's Settings page. For more information, see [“Agent Features” on page 140](#).

Searching for Devices that Have a Specified Version of the Adaptive Agent

13

For upgrading or troubleshooting purposes, you can use the Advanced Search feature to display a list of devices in your ZENworks Management Zone that have a specified version of the Adaptive Agent software installed.

- 1** Depending on whether you want to search for all devices (servers and workstations), for servers, or for workstations that have the specified version of the Adaptive Agent installed, do one of the following in ZENworks Control Center:
 - ♦ To search for all devices, click the *Devices* tab.
 - ♦ To search for all servers, click the *Devices* tab > *Servers*.
 - ♦ To search for all workstations, click the *Devices* tab > *Workstations*.
- 2** In the Search section, click *Advanced Search*.
- 3** Click *Add* to display the Search Criteria dialog box.
- 4** Click *Add Filter*, click *Device/AgentVersion* from the drop-down list, then click *OK*.

Configuring Adaptive Agent Settings after Deployment

14

By default, the ZENworks Adaptive Agent is deployed with the features selected at the Management Zone level in the Agent Features panel of ZENworks Control Center. For more information on how to customize the agent features during deployment, see “[Customizing Features before Deployment](#)”. After the deployment, you can choose to uninstall, enable or disable the Adaptive Agent features, configure the agent’s cache, set retry settings, and select whether to let users uninstall the agent.

You can configure settings at three levels:

- ♦ **Management Zone:** The setting applies to all devices in the Management Zone.
- ♦ **Device Folder:** The setting applies to all devices contained within the folder or its subfolders. It overrides the Management Zone setting.
- ♦ **Device:** The setting applies only to the device for which it is configured. It overrides the settings established at the Management Zone and folder levels.

The following sections contain more information:

- ♦ [Section 14.1, “Configuring Agent Settings on the Management Zone Level,” on page 135](#)
- ♦ [Section 14.2, “Configuring Agent Settings on the Device Folder Level,” on page 136](#)
- ♦ [Section 14.3, “Configuring Agent Settings on the Device Level,” on page 137](#)
- ♦ [Section 14.4, “ZENworks Agent Settings,” on page 138](#)

14.1 Configuring Agent Settings on the Management Zone Level

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 In the *Management Zone Settings* panel, click *Device Management*.

Configuration	Registration	System Information	Asset Inventory	Asset Management	System Updates
Management Zone Settings					
Content					
Device Management					
Category	Description	Is Configured			
Local Device Logging	Enable and configure local logging of warnings and errors encountered by managed devices.	Yes			
Device Refresh Schedule	Configure the device refresh interval.	Yes			
ZENworks Agent	ZENworks Agent Configuration.	No			
Registration	Configure registration settings.	Yes			
Preboot Services	Configure Preboot Services.	No			
Primary User	Configure the setting for how the primary user is determined.	No			
Primary Workstation	Configure the setting for how the primary workstation is determined.	No			
Dynamic Group Refresh Schedule	Configure dynamic group refresh schedule.	No			
Wake-on-LAN	Configure the Wake-on-LAN settings	No			
Remote Management	Enable and configure remote management.	Yes			
Discovery and Deployment					
Event and Messaging					
Infrastructure Management					
Inventory					
Reporting Services					
Asset Management					
Patch Management Services					

- 3 Click *ZENworks Agent*.

The image shows the 'ZENworks Agent Configuration' window. The 'General' tab is active, displaying settings for the agent. Below it, the 'Agent Features' tab is also visible, showing a list of features and their status.

ZENworks Agent Configuration

General

- ☒ Allow users to uninstall agent
- Cache life: 336 hour(s)
- Cache orphaning threshold: 90 day(s)
- Times to retry requests to a busy server: 20
- Initial retry request wait (each subsequent request incremented by 1 second): 10 second(s)
- Maximum retry request wait: 20 second(s)

Agent Features

Feature	Installed	Enabled	Disabled
Image Management	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Remote Management	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Asset Management	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Policy Management	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Bundle Management	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
User Management	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Patch Management	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

Choose the Reboot Behavior (if needed):

- ☒ Prompt user to reboot (Default)
- ☐ Do not reboot device
- ☐ Force device to reboot

Buttons: OK, Apply, Reset, Cancel

- 4 Fill in the fields. For more information, see [Section 14.4, “ZENworks Agent Settings,”](#) on [page 138](#).
- 5 Click *OK* to apply the changes.

14.2 Configuring Agent Settings on the Device Folder Level

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Devices* tab.
- 2 Click the *Servers* or *Workstations* folder.
- 3 Click *Details* next to the folder for which you want to configure settings.
- 4 Click the *Settings* tab, click *Device Management*, then click *ZENworks Agent*.

ZENworks Agent
ZENworks Agent Configuration.
Current: (System) [Override settings](#)

General

☒ Allow users to uninstall agent
Cache life: 336 hour(s)
Cache orphaning threshold: 90 day(s)
Times to retry requests to a busy server: 20
Initial retry request wait (each subsequent request incremented by 1 second): 10 second(s)
Maximum retry request wait: 20 second(s)

Agent Features

Asset Management	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Installed	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enabled	<input type="radio"/> Disabled
Remote Management	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Installed	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enabled	<input type="radio"/> Disabled
Policy Management	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Installed	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enabled	<input type="radio"/> Disabled
Image Management	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Installed	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enabled	<input type="radio"/> Disabled
Patch Management	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Installed	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enabled	<input type="radio"/> Disabled
Bundle Management	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Installed	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enabled	<input type="radio"/> Disabled
User Management	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Installed	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enabled	<input type="radio"/> Disabled

Choose the Reboot Behavior (if needed):
☒ Prompt user to reboot (Default)
☐ Do not reboot device
☐ Force device to reboot

Close

- 5 Fill in the fields. For more information, see [Section 14.4, “ZENworks Agent Settings,”](#) on [page 138](#).
- 6 Click *OK* to apply the changes.

14.3 Configuring Agent Settings on the Device Level

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Devices* tab.
- 2 Click the *Servers* or *Workstations* folder.
- 3 Click the device for which you want to configure settings.
- 4 Click the *Settings* tab, click *Device Management*, then click *ZENworks Agent*.

ZENworks Agent
ZENworks Agent Configuration.
Current: (System) [Override settings](#)

General

☒ Allow users to uninstall agent

Cache life: 336 hour(s)

Cache orphaning threshold: 90 day(s)

Times to retry requests to a busy server: 20

Initial retry request wait (each subsequent request incremented by 1 second): 10 second(s)

Maximum retry request wait: 20 second(s)

Agent Features

Asset Management	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Installed	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enabled	<input type="radio"/> Disabled
Remote Management	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Installed	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enabled	<input type="radio"/> Disabled
Policy Management	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Installed	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enabled	<input type="radio"/> Disabled
Image Management	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Installed	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enabled	<input type="radio"/> Disabled
Patch Management	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Installed	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enabled	<input type="radio"/> Disabled
Bundle Management	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Installed	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enabled	<input type="radio"/> Disabled
User Management	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Installed	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enabled	<input type="radio"/> Disabled

Choose the Reboot Behavior (if needed):

☒ Prompt user to reboot (Default)

☐ Do not reboot device

☐ Force device to reboot

[Close](#)

5 Fill in the fields. For more information, see [Section 14.4, “ZENworks Agent Settings,”](#) on page 138.

6 Click *OK* to apply the changes.

14.4 ZENworks Agent Settings

- [Section 14.4.1, “General,”](#) on page 138
- [Section 14.4.2, “Agent Features,”](#) on page 140

14.4.1 General

You can configure the ZENworks Adaptive Agent’s cache, whether or not users can uninstall the Adaptive Agent, and set retry settings.

If you are configuring the ZENworks Agent settings on a device folder or a device, click *Override settings*.

The following settings can be configured:

- ♦ **Allow Users to Uninstall Agent:** Enable this option if you want users to be able to uninstall the ZENworks Adaptive Agent. This option is applicable only for the local uninstallation.
- ♦ **Cache Life:** The ZENworks Adaptive Agent’s cache directory contains content data used by the agent. Each piece of data, referred to as a cache entry, is stored in the cache database.

When a cache entry is added to the cache database, it is assigned a creation time and an expiration time. The creation time is simply the time it was added to the database. The expiration time is the creation time plus the number of hours specified by the *Cache Life* setting

(by default, 336 hours or 14 days). For example, suppose that a cache entry is added on June 10 at 3:00 p.m. With the default *Cache Life* setting, the expiration time is set to June 24 at 3:00 p.m.

The agent does not attempt to update a cache entry until after the entry's expiration time. At that point, the agent updates the cache entry the next time it contacts the ZENworks Server to refresh its information.

NOTE: Updates to expired cache entries occur only for cache entries that are content-related (bundles, policies, configuration settings, registration settings, and so forth). Updates to cache entries that are event-related (remote management, inventory, reporting, and so forth) only occur at the time the event takes place on the device.

A higher *Cache Life* setting reduces the traffic load on your network because cache entries are refreshed less frequently. A lower setting provides newer information but increases the traffic load.

This setting affects only how often the agent requests updates to a cache entry. Cache entries can also be updated before their expiration time if information is changed in ZENworks Control Center that causes the information to be pushed from the ZENworks Server to the agent.

- ♦ **Cache Orphaning Threshold:** Over a period of time, it is possible for entries to be inserted in the cache database but not removed. This can cause the cache to grow unnecessarily.

An orphan is an entry that is inserted into the cache but not accessed within the number of days specified by the *Cache Orphaning Threshold* setting. For example, suppose that a cache entry is accessed on July 1 at 10:00 a.m. Without the default *Cache Orphaning Threshold* setting (30 days), the entry becomes an orphan if it is not accessed again before July 31 at 10:00 a.m.

A higher *Cache Orphaning Threshold* setting ensures that infrequently accessed information is not removed from the cache database. A lower setting can reduce the cache size.

- ♦ **Times to Retry Requests to a Busy Server:** Lets you specify the number of times that the agent retries a request to a busy server before considering the server as bad instead of busy.

The default value is 15. The maximum value that you can specify is 20.

- ♦ **Initial Retry Request Wait:** The *Initial Retry Request Wait* setting lets you specify the initial amount of time that the agent waits before retrying a Web service request after receiving a busy response from the server. The wait time increases by one second with every busy response. The default setting is four seconds. The maximum value that you can set is ten seconds. Each subsequent request is incremented by one second.

For example, suppose that you leave this setting at the default (four seconds). After receiving a busy response from the server, the agent waits four seconds for the first retry attempt. If the server is still busy, the agent waits five additional seconds (4 + 1) before making the second retry attempt. The third retry attempt is 15 seconds after the initial retry attempt (4 + 5 + 6). The time increments until the value specified in the *Maximum Retry Request Wait* setting is reached. The retry attempts stop when the value specified in the *Times to Retry Requests to a Busy Server* setting is reached.

- ♦ **Maximum Retry Request Wait:** Lets you specify the maximum amount of time to wait before retrying a Web service request after receiving a busy response from the server.

The default setting is 16 seconds. The maximum value that you can specify is 20 seconds.

14.4.2 Agent Features

The ZENworks Adaptive Agent uses modules to perform the following functions on managed devices:

- ♦ Asset Management
- ♦ Bundle Management
- ♦ Image Management
- ♦ Patch Management
- ♦ Policy Management
- ♦ Remote Management
- ♦ User Management

If you are viewing the properties of a Windows 2000 device, the User Management options are disabled because user management cannot be disabled or uninstalled from Windows 2000 devices. If you are viewing the properties of the Management Zone or a folder, user management settings are ignored for Windows 2000 devices.

NOTE: You can use ZENworks 10 Asset Management with ZENworks 7 Desktop Management installed in your environment.

If you enable any Agent feature besides Asset Management, and you are running ZENworks 7 Desktop Management in your environment, you are prompted that the ZENworks 7 Desktop Management Agent will be uninstalled.

Ensure that you enable only the Asset Management feature if you want to use ZENworks 10 Asset Management and you want to continue using ZENworks 7 Desktop Management in your environment.

By default, all modules are installed on a device. However, you can uninstall any of the modules. You can also disable (or enable) any of the installed modules.

You can install, uninstall, enable or disable the modules at three levels:

- ♦ **Management Zone:** The setting applies to all devices in the Management Zone.
- ♦ **Device Folder:** The setting applies to all devices contained within the folder or its subfolders. It overrides the Management Zone setting.
- ♦ **Device:** The setting applies only to the device for which it is configured. It overrides the settings established at the Management Zone and folder levels.

To modify a module's state:

- 1 (Conditional) If you are configuring the ZENworks Agent settings on a device folder or a device, click *Override settings*.
- 2 To install a module, select the *Installed* check box.
or
To uninstall a module, deselect the *Installed* check box.

By default, the *Installed* check boxes for all modules are selected, meaning that all modules are installed on devices when they register to your ZENworks Management Zone. If you deselect a module's *Installed* check box, that module is uninstalled from the device the next time it refreshes.

- 3** To enable an installed module, click the *Enabled* button.

or

To disable an installed module, click the *Disabled* button.

By default, the *Enabled* option for all installed modules is selected, meaning that all modules are enabled on devices. Disabling a module does not cause that module to be uninstalled from currently managed devices. The module remains installed on the device, but it is disabled.

- 4** Specify the reboot behavior if a reboot is required.

This option applies only when installing or uninstalling a module. In some cases, Windows Installer might require a reboot of the device when installing or uninstalling the module. If a reboot is required during install, the module does not function until the reboot occurs. If a reboot is required during uninstall, the module's files are not completely removed until a reboot occurs, but the module stops functioning.

- ♦ *Prompt user to reboot (Default)*: The user is prompted to reboot the device. The user can reboot immediately or wait until later.
- ♦ *Do not reboot device*: No reboot occurs. The user must initiate a reboot.
- ♦ *Force device to reboot*: The device is automatically rebooted. The user is notified that the device will reboot in 5 minutes.

- 5** Click *Apply* to save the changes.

- 6** (Conditional) If you install the Remote Management or Image Management module on a device, reboot the device for the install to be effective.

To understand the effects of enabling, disabling, or uninstalling the modules, see the following tables:

- ♦ [Table 14-1, "Bundle Management," on page 142](#)
- ♦ [Table 14-2, "Image Management," on page 143](#)
- ♦ [Table 14-3, "Patch Management," on page 145](#)
- ♦ [Table 14-4, "Policy Management," on page 146](#)
- ♦ [Table 14-5, "Remote Management," on page 147](#)

Table 14-1 *Bundle Management*




Installed and Enabled	Installed and Disabled	Uninstalled	Additional Details
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ The Bundle Management service is running on the device. ♦ The  icon properties page displays the Bundle Management status as <i>Running</i> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ The Bundle Management service is stopped and disabled on the device. ♦ The  icon properties page displays the Bundle Management status as <i>Disabled</i>. ♦ The Windows bundle, File bundle, or Directive bundle that are assigned to the device are not displayed in the NAL window or in the shortcut locations such as Desktop, Start Menu, Quick Launch, or System Tray of the device. ♦ You cannot execute Windows bundle, File bundle, or Directive bundle related zac commands. ♦ If you disable the Bundle Management module when a bundle is being applied to the device, the module is disabled after the bundle is applied and the device is refreshed. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ The Bundle Management service is uninstalled from the device. ♦ The  icon properties page does not display an entry for the Bundle Management status in the Agent Status panel ♦ Bundles with content such as Windows bundle, File bundle, or Directive bundle that are assigned to the device but are not yet installed on the device are deleted from the device. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ If the ZENworks license expires, you cannot create, edit, enable, or disable bundles. However, you can view the existing bundles in ZENworks Control Center or by using zman commands. ♦ If the ZENworks license is deactivated, then the Bundles tab is no longer displayed in the left navigation pane of the ZENworks Control Center and you cannot use bundles related zman commands.

Table 14-2 *Image Management*






Installed and Enabled	Installed and Disabled	Uninstalled	Additional Details
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ novell-ziswin is installed and enabled on Windows XP and Windows 2003 managed devices. ♦ novell-ziswin is installed but disabled on Windows Vista, Windows 2008, managed devices. ♦ novell-zisdservice is installed and enabled on the Windows Vista, Windows 2008, managed devices. ♦ The Image Management Agent is installed and enabled if the managed device has Update for ZENworks 10 Configuration Management SP2 (10.2.1) or later installed. ♦ The  icon properties page displays the status of Image Management as <i>Running</i>. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ novell-ziswin is only disabled but it is not uninstalled on all the Windows XP and Windows 2003 managed devices. ♦ novell-zisdservice is only disabled but it is not uninstalled on the Windows Vista, Windows 2008, managed devices. ♦ The  icon properties page displays the status of Image Management as <i>Disabled</i>. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ novell-ziswin is uninstalled on all the Windows XP and Windows 2003 managed devices. ♦ novell-zisdservice is uninstalled on the Windows Vista, Windows 2008, managed devices. ♦ The Image Management Agent is additionally uninstalled from the device that has ZENworks 10 Configuration Management SP2 (10.2.1) or later installed. ♦ The  icon properties page does not display an entry for the Image Management in the Agent Status panel. ♦ If you choose to uninstall Image Management on a ZENworks 10 Configuration Management SP2 Imaging Satellite, the Satellite Imaging page is not displayed on the  icon during the next device refresh schedule. <p>However, you can still use the device as an Imaging Satellite. The device is displayed as an Imaging Satellite in ZENworks Control Center (<i>Configuration</i> tab > <i>Server Hierarchy</i> panel), and has the Imaging services running on it (desktop <i>Start</i> menu > <i>Settings</i> > <i>Control Panel</i> > <i>Administrative Tools</i> > <i>Services</i>).</p>	<p>When the ZENworks 10 Configuration Management license expires:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ On the ZENworks Server: You cannot install the agent with Image Management module on any new device. Also, you cannot enable or disable the Image Management module for the existing devices. ♦ On the Managed Device: novell-ziswin and the novell-zisdservice are disabled but are not uninstalled. Also, the  icon properties page displays the status of Image Management as <i>Disabled</i>.

Table 14-3 *Patch Management*




Installed and Enabled	Installed and Disabled	Uninstalled	Additional Details
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ The Patch Management service is running on the device. ♦ The  icon properties page displays the Patch Management status as <i>Running</i> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ The Patch Management service is stopped and disabled on the device. ♦ The  icon properties page displays the Patch Management status as <i>Disabled</i> ♦ The patch bundles that are assigned to the device are not displayed in the NAL window or in the shortcut locations such as Desktop, Start Menu, Quick Launch, or System Tray of the device. ♦ You cannot execute patch bundle related zac commands. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ The Patch Management service is uninstalled from the device. ♦ The  icon properties page does not display an entry for the Patch Management status in the Agent Status panel. ♦ Patch bundles that are assigned to the device but are not yet installed on the device are deleted from the device. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ If the ZENworks license is deactivated, you cannot download any new patch bundles. However, the existing patches can be used for assignments.

Table 14-4 Policy Management







Installed and Enabled	Installed and Disabled	Uninstalled	Additional Details
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ The Policy Management service is running on the device. ♦ The  icon properties page displays the Policy Management status as <i>Running</i>. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ The Policy Management service is stopped and disabled on the device. ♦ The  icon properties page displays the Policy Management status as <i>Disabled</i>. ♦ All the policies assigned to the device are unenforced from the device. ♦ You can use ZENworks Control Center to assign policies to a device. However, the policies are not enforced on the device until the Policy Management feature is enabled. ♦ You cannot execute policy related <code>zac</code> commands. ♦ If you disable the Policy Management module on a device that is running a Dynamic Local User (DLU) policy, the module is disabled after the device is rebooted 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ The Policy Management service is uninstalled from the device. ♦ The  icon properties page does not display an entry for the Policy Management status in the Agent Status panel. ♦ All the policies assigned to the device are unenforced from the device. ♦ If you uninstall the Policy Management module on a device that is running a Dynamic Local User (DLU) policy, the module is uninstalled after the device is rebooted. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ If the ZENworks license expires, you cannot create, edit, enable, or disable policies. However, the policies that are already enforced and enabled on a device continue to work on the device. ♦ If the User Management is disabled: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ The Roaming Profile policy and the DLU policy is not enforced on a device even if the user to whom the policy is assigned has logged in to the device ♦ The Windows Group Policy with user configuration settings is not enforced on the managed device even if the policy is assigned to the device.

Table 14-5 *Remote Management*

Installed and Enabled	Installed and Disabled	Uninstalled	Additional Details
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ The Remote Management service is running on the device. ♦ The  icon properties page displays the Remote Management status as <i>Running</i>. ♦ The device can be remotely managed. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ The Remote Management service is stopped and disabled on the device. ♦ The  icon properties page displays the Remote Management status as <i>Disabled</i>. ♦ The Remote Management policy is unenforced from the device. ♦ The device cannot be remotely managed. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ The Remote Management service is uninstalled from the device. ♦ The  icon properties page does not display an entry for the Remote Management status in the Agent Status panel ♦ The Remote Management policy is unenforced from the device. ♦ The device cannot be remotely managed. 	<p>If the ZENworks license expires, the Remote Management service continues to run and the device can be remotely managed.</p>

Configuring ZENworks Explorer

15

You can configure common settings at three levels for the ZENworks Explorer component of the ZENworks Adaptive Agent:

- ♦ **Management Zone:** The settings are inherited by all device folders and devices.
- ♦ **Device Folder:** The bundle settings are inherited by all devices contained within the folder or its subfolders.
- ♦ **Device:** The bundle settings apply only to the device for which they are configured.

The following sections contain more information:

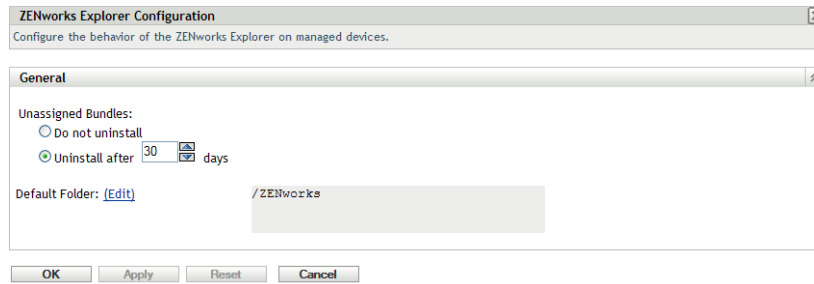
- ♦ [Section 15.1, “Configuring ZENworks Explorer Settings on the Management Zone Level,” on page 149](#)
- ♦ [Section 15.2, “Configuring ZENworks Explorer Settings on the Device Folder Level,” on page 150](#)
- ♦ [Section 15.3, “Configuring ZENworks Explorer Settings on the Device Level,” on page 151](#)

15.1 Configuring ZENworks Explorer Settings on the Management Zone Level

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.



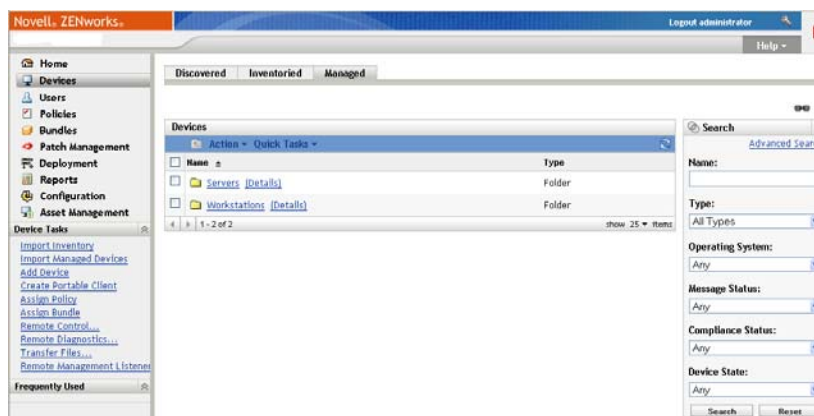
- 2 Click the *Device Management* tab.
- 3 Click *ZENworks Explorer Configuration*.



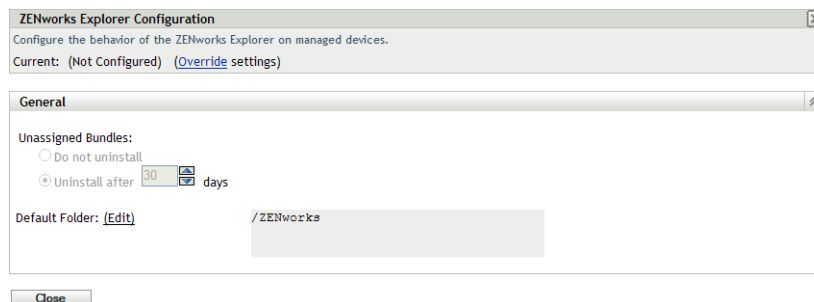
- 4 Fill in the fields. For more information, see [Section 15.4, “ZENworks Explorer General Settings,”](#) on page 152.
- 5 Click *OK* to apply the changes.

15.2 Configuring ZENworks Explorer Settings on the Device Folder Level

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Devices* tab.



- 2 Click the *Servers* or *Workstations* folder.
- 3 Click *Details* next to the folder for which you want to configure settings.
- 4 Click the *Settings* tab, click *Content*, then click *ZENworks Explorer Configuration*.



- 5 Click *Override Settings*.

If you are configuring the settings on a device folder or a device, you need to click *Override Settings* before you can select any of the settings.

- 6 Fill in the fields. For more information, see [Section 15.4, “ZENworks Explorer General Settings,”](#) on page 152.
- 7 Click *OK* to apply the changes.

15.3 Configuring ZENworks Explorer Settings on the Device Level

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Devices* tab.



- 2 Click the *Servers* or *Workstations* folder.
- 3 Click the device for which you want to configure settings.
- 4 Click the *Settings* tab, click the *Content* tab, then click *ZENworks Explorer Configuration*.



- 5 Click *Override Settings*.
If you are configuring the settings on a device folder or a device, you need to click *Override Settings* before you can select any of the settings.
- 6 Fill in the fields. For more information, see [Section 15.4, “ZENworks Explorer General Settings,”](#) on page 152.
- 7 Click *OK* to apply the changes.

15.4 ZENworks Explorer General Settings

You can use the ZENworks Explorer General panel to configure ZENworks Explorer to uninstall a bundle that is no longer assigned to the device, specify the number of days to wait before uninstalling the bundle, and specify the default folder that ZENworks Explorer uses:

- ♦ **Unassigned Bundles:** Select whether or not you want a bundle to be uninstalled after it is no longer assigned to a device or the device's user.

If you choose to uninstall the bundle, select the number of days to wait before uninstalling the application. Specify 0 if you want the application to be uninstalled as soon as it is no longer assigned to the device or user.

- ♦ **Default Folder:** ZENworks Explorer displays a default folder (ZENworks) in Windows Explorer, on the Windows Start menu and in the ZENworks Window. Bundles are placed in the default folder unless you override the default folder by specifying a folder on a bundle's Summary page.

The default folder can be renamed to meet the needs of your organization. Click *Edit* to change the folder name.

Removing the ZENworks Pre-Agent from a Device

16

During the uninstallation of ZENworks software from a device, if you choose to leave the ZENworks Pre-Agent installed on the device, the ZENworks Pre-Agent responds to the Advertised discovery requests and also to ZENworks Ping requests if an IP-based discovery is performed on the device.

To remove the ZENworks Pre-Agent from a device after ZENworks has been uninstalled from the device, perform the following steps:

- 1 Delete the directory named `ZENPreAgent` from the following registry:

`HKLM\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\`

- 2 Delete the `zenworks` directory from the operating system installation directory on the device. For example, if the operating system is installed in `C:/`:

- ♦ **On a Windows XP device:** Remove `C:\Windows\Novell\zenworks` directory.
- ♦ **On a Windows 2000 device:** Remove `C:\WINNT\Novell\zenworks` directory.

Troubleshooting the Adaptive Agent


17


The following section provides solutions to the problems you might encounter while working with the ZENworks Adaptive Agent:

- ♦ “Satellite menu is not displayed in the left navigation pane of the ZENworks Adaptive Agent page” on page 155
- ♦ “Unable to use rights-based authentication to remotely manage a device” on page 155
- ♦ “Unable to launch a terminal session with a Citrix Server that has ZENworks Adaptive Agent installed” on page 156
- ♦ “The ZENworks Adaptive Agent Policies page does not display the correct status for the DLU policy” on page 156
- ♦ “The partial or the general refresh of a terminal server might cause high usage of system resources and take considerable time to refresh the server” on page 156

Satellite menu is not displayed in the left navigation pane of the ZENworks Adaptive Agent page

Source: ZENworks 10 Configuration Management; ZENworks Adaptive Agent.

Explanation: When you promote a device to Satellite through ZENworks Control Center, the configured Satellite role is added to the device. However, when you double-click the  icon, the Satellite menu is not displayed in the left navigation pane of the ZENworks Adaptive Agent page.

Action: Refresh the managed device (In the notification area of the device, right-click the  icon, then click *Refresh*).

Unable to use rights-based authentication to remotely manage a device

Source: ZENworks 10 Configuration Management; ZENworks Adaptive Agent.

Explanation: When you use rights-based authentication to remotely manage a device, the following error is logged on the device:

```
Rights Authentication failed. An internal error occurred
while communicating to ZENworks Management Daemon. Contact
Novell Technical Services.
```

Possible Cause: ZENworks Adaptive Agent is not installed on the device. Only Remote Management service is installed on the device.

Action: Install ZENworks Adaptive Agent on the device. For more information on installing the ZENworks Adaptive Agent, see “[Installing the ZENworks Adaptive Agent](#)” in *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Administration Quick Start*.

Unable to launch a terminal session with a Citrix Server that has ZENworks Adaptive Agent installed

Source: ZENworks 10 Configuration Management; ZENworks Adaptive Agent.

Explanation: After deploying the ZENworks Adaptive Agent on a Citrix* server, you might encounter any of the following ICA login session issues:

- ♦ The ICA login session that is launched from Citrix agent terminates after some time.
- ♦ The ICA login session displays the following exception:

```
winlogon.exe ..Application Error
```

If you try to close the exception window, the session hangs displaying the following message:

```
Running login scripts
```

Action: Before launching a terminal session with the Citrix server, do any of the following on the server:

- ♦ Rename NWGina.dll.
 1. In the `c:\windows\system32` directory, rename NWGina.dll.
 2. In the Registry Editor, go to
`HKLM\Software\Microsoft\WindowsNT\CurrentVersion\Winlogon`, and change the value of the CtxGinaDLL key to the new name for NWGina.dll.
 3. Reboot the server.
- ♦ Install Novell Client.

NOTE: This needs to be done only once.

The ZENworks Adaptive Agent Policies page does not display the correct status for the DLU policy

Source: ZENworks 10 Configuration Management; ZENworks Adaptive Agent.

Explanation: If the User Management Agent Feature is disabled or uninstalled in ZENworks Control Center (Agent Features panel on the ZENworks Agent page), the status for the DLU policy on the ZENworks Adaptive Agent Policies page is displayed as *Success*, even though the policy is not effective on the device

Action: None.

The partial or the general refresh of a terminal server might cause high usage of system resources and take considerable time to refresh the server

Source: ZENworks 10 Configuration Management; ZENworks Adaptive Agent.

Explanation: During a partial or general refresh of a terminal server, the ZENworks agent on the server simultaneously refreshes the sessions of all the users logged into the terminal server. If too many users are logged in to the terminal server, the ZENworks agent might take substantial time to refresh the terminal server and the usage of the system resources on the server might also be high.

Action: Perform the following steps to refresh the user sessions in batches:

- 1** Open the Registry Editor.
- 2** Go to `HKLM\Software\Novell\ZENworks\.`
- 3** To enable batch refreshes, create a DWORD called `EnableBatchRefresh` and set the value to 1.
By default, there are 5 sessions in a batch.
- 4** (Optional) To change the number of user sessions in a batch, create a DWORD called `maxUserRefreshThreads` and set the desired value.

ZENworks System Updates

IV

The System Updates feature allows you to obtain updates to the Novell® ZENworks® 10 Configuration Management software on a timely basis, and also allows you to schedule automatic downloads of the updates.

- ♦ [Chapter 18, “Introduction to ZENworks System Updates,” on page 161](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 19, “Configuring Updates,” on page 163](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 20, “Managing Update Downloads,” on page 181](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 21, “Deploying Updates,” on page 187](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 22, “Deleting Updates,” on page 203](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 23, “Reviewing the Content of an Update,” on page 205](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 24, “Update Statuses,” on page 209](#)

Introduction to ZENworks System Updates

18

The System Updates feature allows you to obtain updates to the Novell® ZENworks® 10 Configuration Management software on a timely basis, and also allows you to schedule automatic downloads of the updates.

Software updates are provided periodically and you can choose whether to deploy each update after viewing its content.

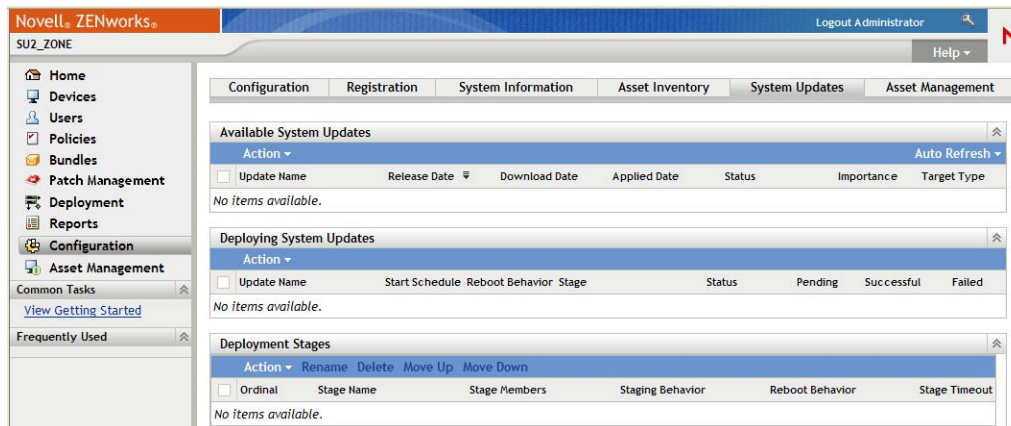
The first few ZENworks 10 Configuration Management updates are cumulative; thereafter they are additive. For example, if the update for version 10.0.3 is your first system update for ZENworks, it includes all updates contained in the update for version 10.0.2. However, you need to apply the update for version 10.0.3 before you can apply the update for version 10.0.4.

You can also download the latest [Product Recognition Update \(PRU\)](#) to update your knowledgebase so that Inventory can recognize newer software.

When you select to update your ZENworks software, you can update globally in one step or in stages. You can also select to update specific devices, groups of devices, or all devices in the Management Zone that have the ZENworks software installed. You can use ZENworks Control Center to track the successes and failures per device for each software update.

The following figure illustrates the System Updates page:

Figure 18-1 System Updates Panels (Available System Updates, Deploying System Updates, and Deployment Stages)



Review the following sections to set up and manage updates for your ZENworks software:

- ♦ [Chapter 19, “Configuring Updates,” on page 163](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 20, “Managing Update Downloads,” on page 181](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 21, “Deploying Updates,” on page 187](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 22, “Deleting Updates,” on page 203](#)

- ♦ [Chapter 23, “Reviewing the Content of an Update,” on page 205](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 24, “Update Statuses,” on page 209](#)

Perform the following tasks to configure your update process:

- ♦ [Section 19.1, “Configuring System Update Settings,” on page 163](#)
- ♦ [Section 19.2, “Creating Deployment Stages,” on page 172](#)

19.1 Configuring System Update Settings

You should configure System Update before attempting to use it. Configure as many of the following settings as necessary for your system:

- ♦ [Section 19.1.1, “Check for Updates Schedule,” on page 163](#)
- ♦ [Section 19.1.2, “Download Schedule,” on page 165](#)
- ♦ [Section 19.1.3, “E-Mail Notification,” on page 167](#)
- ♦ [Section 19.1.4, “Proxy Server Settings,” on page 168](#)
- ♦ [Section 19.1.5, “Dedicated Server Settings,” on page 169](#)
- ♦ [Section 19.1.6, “Stage Timeout Settings,” on page 170](#)
- ♦ [Section 19.1.7, “Reboot Behavior,” on page 171](#)

19.1.1 Check for Updates Schedule

The default is to not schedule update checking (*No Schedule* is displayed in the *Schedule Type* field). With this scheduling option selected, the only way you can check for software updates is to do so manually in the Available System Updates panel on the *System Updates* tab.

You can specify how often you want to check for updates. When you do this, information on available updates is automatically downloaded from Novell® to the Available System Updates panel on the *System Updates* tab when the schedule fires. This does not download the update content itself. Downloading can be scheduled in the Download Schedule panel (see [“Download Schedule” on page 165](#)).

To schedule checking for the ZENworks software updates:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 Click *Management Zone Settings* to expand its options, click *Infrastructure Management* to expand its options, then select *System Update Settings*.

In the Check for Updates panel, there are two scheduling options for updates:

- ♦ **No Schedule:** The default is to not schedule update checking. With this scheduling option selected, the only way you can check for software updates is to do so manually in the [Available System Updates](#) panel on the *System Updates* tab. To specify the *No Schedule* option, continue with [Step 3](#).

- ♦ **Recurring:** Lets you specify how often you want to check for updates. When you set this option, information on available updates is automatically downloaded from Novell to the [Available System Updates](#) panel on the *System Updates* tab when the schedule fires. This does not download the update content itself. To set a recurring schedule, skip to [Step 4](#).
- 3 (Conditional) To exclude scheduled checking for software updates (the default), click the down-arrow in the *Schedule Type* field, select *No Schedule*, click *Apply* to save the schedule change, then skip to [Step 6](#).
- With this option selected, you must check for updates manually. For more information, see [“Manually Downloading Updates” on page 183](#).
- 4 (Conditional) To set a recurring schedule for checking for updates to your ZENworks software, click the down-arrow in the *Schedule Type* field, then select *Recurring*.

[Configuration](#) > System Update Settings

System Update Settings
Configure the server for downloading System Updates, proxy server settings, and scheduling updates

Check For Updates Schedule
This setting allows the administrator to configure a schedule to check for available updates from Novell.

Schedule Type:
Recurring

☒ Days of the week

Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Start Time: 1 :00 am

[Hide Options](#)

☐ Process immediately if device unable to execute on schedule

☐ Use Coordinated Universal Time (Current UTC 7:50 PM)

☐ Start at a random time between Start and End Times

End Time: 1 :00 am

☐ Restrict schedule execution to the following date range:

Start Date: 2/5/08

End Date: 2/5/08

- 5 Fill in the fields:
- 5a Select one or more check boxes for the days of the week.
 - 5b To set the time of day for checking to occur, use the *Start Time* box to specify the time.
 - 5c (Optional) For additional scheduling options, click *More Options*, then select the following options as necessary:
 - ♦ **Process Immediately if Device Unable to Execute on Schedule:** Causes checking for updates to occur as soon as possible if the checking cannot be done according to schedule. For example, if a server is down at the scheduled time, checking for updates occurs immediately after the server comes back online.
 - ♦ **Use Coordinated Universal Time:** Causes the schedule to interpret the times you specify as UTC instead of local time.
 - ♦ **Start at a Random Time Between Start and End Times:** Allows checking for updates to occur at a random time between the time you specify here and the time you specified in [Step 5b](#). Fill in the *End Time* fields.

- ♦ **Restrict Schedule Execution to the Following Date Range:** In addition to the other options, you can specify a date range for when the checking can occur.

5d When you have finished configuring the recurring schedule, click *Apply* to save the schedule change.

6 To exit this page, click *OK* when you are finished configuring the schedule.

If you did not click *Apply* to make your changes effective, clicking *OK* does so. Clicking *Cancel* also closes the page, but loses your unapplied changes.

19.1.2 Download Schedule

The default is to not schedule downloading of updates (*No Schedule* is displayed in the *Schedule Type* field). With this scheduling option selected, the only way you can download updates is to do so manually in the Available System Updates panel on the *System Updates* tab.

If you do specify how often you want to download updates, you should set this schedule in conjunction with the schedule to check for updates (see “[Check for Updates Schedule](#)” on [page 163](#)).

After an update has been checked for and its information displayed in the Available System Updates panel on the *System Updates* tab, you can schedule the download from Novell to automatically occur when the schedule fires.

To schedule ZENworks software updates:

- 1** In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2** Click *Management Zone Settings* to expand its options, click *Infrastructure Management* to expand its options, then select *System Update Settings*.

In the Download Schedule panel, there are two scheduling options for downloading updates:

- ♦ **No Schedule:** The default is to not schedule downloading of updates (*No Schedule* is displayed in the *Schedule Type* field). With this scheduling option selected, the only way you can download updates is to do so manually in the [Available System Updates](#) panel on the *System Updates* tab. To specify the *No Schedule* option, continue with [Step 3](#).
- ♦ **Recurring:** You can specify how often you want to download updates. After an update has been checked for and its information displayed in the [Available System Updates](#) panel on the *System Updates* tab, you can schedule the download from Novell to automatically occur when the schedule fires. To set a recurring schedule, skip to [Step 4](#).

- 3** (Conditional) To exclude scheduled downloading of software updates (the default), click the down-arrow in the *Schedule Type* field, select *No Schedule*, click *Apply* to save the schedule change, then skip to [Step 6](#).

With this option selected, you must download updates manually. For more information, see [Section 20.2, “Downloading Updates,”](#) on [page 182](#).

- 4** (Conditional) To set a recurring schedule for downloading updates to your ZENworks software, click the down-arrow in the *Schedule Type* field, then select *Recurring*.

System Update Settings
Configure the server for downloading System Updates, proxy server settings, and scheduling updates

Check For Updates Schedule

Download Schedule
This setting allows the administrator to configure a download schedule for updates.

Schedule Type:
Recurring

Days of the week

Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Start Time: 1 : 00 am

[Hide Options](#)

☐ Process immediately if device unable to execute on schedule

☐ Use Coordinated Universal Time (Current UTC 7:52 PM)

☐ Start at a random time between Start and End Times

End Time: 1 : 00 am

☐ Restrict schedule execution to the following date range:

Start Date: 2/5/08

End Date: 2/5/08

5 Fill in the fields:

5a Select one or more check boxes for the days of the week.

5b To set the time of day for downloading to occur, use the *Start Time* field to specify the time.

5c (Optional) For additional scheduling options, click *More Options*, then select the following options as necessary:

- ♦ **Process Immediately if Device Unable to Execute on Schedule:** Causes checking for updates to occur as soon as possible if the checking cannot be done according to schedule. For example, if a server is down at the scheduled time, checking for updates occurs immediately after the server comes back online.
- ♦ **Use Coordinated Universal Time:** Causes the schedule to interpret the times you specify as UTC instead of local time.
- ♦ **Start at a Random Time Between Start and End Times:** Allows downloading of updates to occur at a random time between the time you specify here and the time you specified in [Step 5b](#). Fill in the *End Time* fields.
- ♦ **Restrict Schedule Execution to the Following Date Range:** In addition to the other options, you can specify the days when downloading can occur.

5d When you have finished configuring the recurring schedule, click *Apply* to save the schedule change.

6 To exit this page, click *OK* when you are finished configuring the schedule.

If you did not click *Apply* to make your changes effective, clicking *OK* does so. Clicking *Cancel* also closes the page, but loses your unapplied changes.

19.1.3 E-Mail Notification

In conjunction with [using stages](#), you can set up e-mail notifications to indicate when each stage has completed. When you deploy an update, you can specify to use the e-mail notifications.

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 Click *Management Zone Settings* to expand its options, click *Events and Messaging*, then select *SMTP Settings* to display the E-mail Notification panel:

[Configuration](#) > SMTP Settings

The screenshot shows the 'SMTP Settings' dialog box. The title bar says 'SMTP Settings' with a close button. Below it is the subtitle 'Configuration of settings related to SMTP Server'. The main area is titled 'E-mail Notification' and contains the following fields:

- SMTP Server Address: A text input field.
- SMTP Port: A text input field.
- SMTP Server requires authentication: A checkbox.
- User: A text input field.
- Password: A text input field.

At the bottom of the dialog are four buttons: 'OK', 'Apply', 'Reset', and 'Cancel'.

Staging must be used to receive notifications, and the stage behavior must be set to one of the following:

- ♦ *Advance Through Stage Automatically With Notification*
- ♦ *Advance To Next Stage and Notify When Complete*

SMTP must be configured in order for the staging e-mail configuration to work.

- 3 (Conditional) If you do not have SMTP configured:
 - 3a To access the SMTP Settings page, click *Configuration* in the left pane, click the arrows in the *Management Zone Settings* heading to expand its options, click *Event and Messaging*, then select *SMTP Settings*.
 - 3b In the *E-mail Notification* section, fill in the fields:
 - SMTP Server Address:** Specify the DNS name or IP address of the SMTP server.
 - SMTP Port:** Specify the SMTP server's communication port.
 - Use SSL:** To use an encrypted SSL channel for sending e-mails. By default this option is disabled.
 - SMTP Server Requires Authentication:** If authentication is required, select this check box, then specify the *User* and *Password* information.
 - 3c Click *OK* to save the changes.

- 3d Click *Management Zone Settings* to expand its options, click *Infrastructure Management*, then select *System Update Settings* to display the E-mail Notification panel:

[Configuration](#) > System Update Settings

The screenshot shows a window titled "System Update Settings" with a close button in the top right corner. Below the title bar is a subtitle: "Configure the server for downloading System Updates, proxy server settings, and scheduling updates". There are three expandable sections: "Check For Updates Schedule", "Download Schedule", and "Email Notification". The "Email Notification" section is expanded, showing a description: "This setting allows administrators to receive email notifications when a System Update Stage completes. Note: The SMTP Settings must be configured in order for emails to be sent and received." Below the description are two input fields labeled "From" and "To".

- 4 Fill in the fields:

From: Either specify your administrator e-mail address, or type something descriptive, such as System-Update-Stage-Notice. Do not use spaces between words.

To: Specify your administrator's e-mail address.

This is the person you want to be notified when the stage ends.

- 5 Click *Apply* to make the changes effective.

- 6 Either click *OK* to close the page, or continue with [another configuration task](#).

If you did not click *Apply* to make your changes effective, clicking *OK* does so. Clicking *Cancel* also closes the page, but loses your unapplied changes.

19.1.4 Proxy Server Settings

This option is useful for restrictive environments where you do not want all of your production servers to have Internet access. This is used in conjunction with the [Dedicated Server Settings](#) panel.

To specify a proxy server:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane.
- 2 On the *Configuration* tab, expand the *Management Zone Settings* section (if necessary), click *Infrastructure Management*, then click *System Update Settings* to display the Proxy Server Settings panel.

The screenshot shows a window titled "Proxy Server Settings" with a maximize button in the top right corner. It contains several input fields: "Proxy Server Address", "Proxy Server Port", "User", and "Password". There is also a checkbox labeled "Proxy Server requires authentication".

3 Fill in the fields:

Proxy Server Address: Specify the DNS name or IP address of the proxy server.

Proxy Server Port: Specify the proxy server's communication port.

Proxy Server Requires Authentication: When you select this check box, the *User* and *Password* fields become editable. If authentication is required, select this check box and specify the username and password for access to the proxy server.

4 Click *Apply* to make the changes effective.

5 Either click *OK* to close the page, or continue with [another configuration task](#).

If you did not click *Apply* to make your changes effective, clicking *OK* does so. Clicking *Cancel* also closes the page, but loses your unapplied changes.

19.1.5 Dedicated Server Settings

By default, any available Primary Server in the Management Zone can be used randomly to download the updates. However, you can specify one ZENworks Server to be dedicated to handling your update downloads. The server that you select should have access to the Internet, directly or through a [proxy server](#).

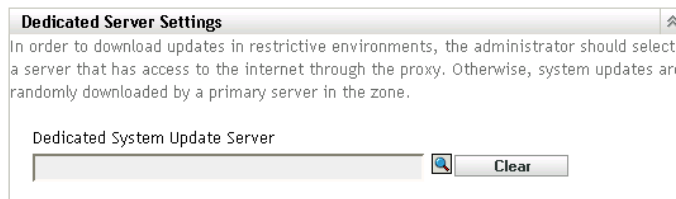
The following sections contain more information:

- ♦ [“Specifying a Dedicated Update Server” on page 169](#)
- ♦ [“Clearing a Dedicated Update Server” on page 170](#)

Specifying a Dedicated Update Server

1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane.

2 On the *Configuration* tab, expand the *Management Zone Settings* section (if necessary), click *Infrastructure Management*, then click *System Update Settings* to display the Dedicated Server Settings panel:



3 Browse for and select a ZENworks Primary Server.

The server's identification is displayed in the *Dedicated System Update Server* field.

This ZENworks Server must be a member of the Management Zone.

4 Click *Apply* to make the changes effective.

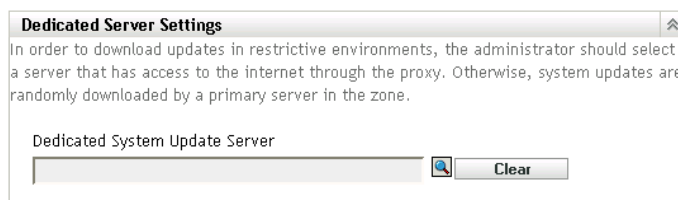
5 Either click *OK* to close the page, or continue with [another configuration task](#).

If you did not click *Apply* to make your changes effective, clicking *OK* does so. Clicking *Cancel* also closes the page, but loses your unapplied changes.

Clearing a Dedicated Update Server

Clearing a dedicated update server causes your updates to be retrieved randomly from any Primary Server in the Management Zone.

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane.
- 2 On the *Configuration* tab, expand the *Management Zone Settings* section (if necessary), click *Infrastructure Management*, then click *System Update Settings* to display the Dedicated Server Settings panel:



- 3 Click *Clear* to remove the dedicated server from the *Dedicated System Update Server* field.
- 4 (Conditional) If you need to revert to the last saved dedicated server setting, click *Reset*.
This resets the dedicated server to the last saved setting, such as when you last clicked *Apply* or *OK*.
- 5 Click *Apply* to make the change effective.

IMPORTANT: Previous settings cannot be restored after you click *Apply*.

19.1.6 Stage Timeout Settings

Deployment stages are optional; however, stages allow you to deploy an update one step at a time, such as to a test group first, then to your managed devices. If a failure occurs during the update process, the process is halted. [E-mail notifications](#) can let you know when each stage has completed.

The global default timeout setting is 3 days. This provides the same timeout length for each stage. For information about setting the timeout for individual stages, see [“Modifying the Stage Timeout” on page 175](#).

Set this value to be long enough to accommodate updating all of the devices you plan to update.

When the timeout value is reached, the stage’s deployment stops and an e-mail message is sent, if e-mail notification is configured. You can cancel the deployment, or you can clear the error to restart the stage and reset the timeout. Or, you can ignore all pending devices to trigger a stage progression (either automatic, or wait for administrator action based on the setting).

You can use [E-mail notification](#) to know when a stage has completed.

To configure global stage timeout settings:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane.
- 2 On the *Configuration* tab, expand the *Management Zone Settings* panel (if necessary), click *Infrastructure Management*, then click *System Update Settings* to display the Stage Timeout Settings panel:

Stage Timeout Settings

This setting allows the administrator to set a default timeout period for all stages. If the timeout value is reached before the stage completes, the deployment process ends and an error message will notify the administrator of the timeout. The default timeout setting is 3 days.

☐ Stage Timeout:

3 Days 0 Hours 0 Minutes

- 3 Select the *Stage Timeout* check box, then specify the days, hours, and minutes desired.
 - 4 Click *Apply* to make the changes effective.
 - 5 Either click *OK* to close the page, or continue with [another configuration task](#).
- If you did not click *Apply* to make your changes effective, clicking *OK* does so. Clicking *Cancel* also closes the page, but loses your unapplied changes.

19.1.7 Reboot Behavior

Some updates do not require a device to be rebooted after they have been deployed to a device. However, if a reboot is required to complete the update process, the deployment is not completed until the device is rebooted.

To configure the reboot behavior:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane.
- 2 On the *Configuration* tab, expand the *Management Zone Settings* panel (if necessary), click *Infrastructure Management*, then click *System Update Settings* to display the Reboot Behavior panel:

Reboot Behavior

This settings allow the administrator to control the reboot behavior for devices that will be registered in the zone after an update has been baselined.

Choose the Reboot Behavior:

☒ Prompt user to reboot when update finishes applying (Default)

☐ Do not reboot device or prompt user to reboot

☐ Force device to reboot

- 3 Select one of the following options:
 - ♦ **Prompt User to Reboot When Update Finishes Applying (Default):** After the update has been applied, a request to reboot is immediately displayed. If the user initially rejects rebooting, the user is periodically requested to reboot the device, until the device is rebooted.
 - ♦ **Do Not Reboot Device:** The device does not reboot; however, the user is periodically requested to reboot the device, until the device is rebooted.
 - ♦ **Force Device to Reboot:** After the update has been applied, the device is automatically rebooted without user intervention if a reboot is required by the update.
- 4 Click *Apply* to make the changes effective.
- 5 Either click *OK* to close the page, or continue with [another configuration task](#).

If you did not click *Apply* to make some of your changes effective, clicking *OK* does so. Clicking *Cancel* also closes the page, but loses your unapplied changes.

19.2 Creating Deployment Stages

Deployment stages are optional; however, stages allow you to deploy an update one step at a time, such as to a test group first, then to your managed devices. [If a failure occurs during the update process, the process is halted. E-mail notifications](#) can let you know when each stage has completed.

The following sections contain more information:

- ♦ [Section 19.2.1, “Understanding Stages,” on page 172](#)
- ♦ [Section 19.2.2, “Creating and Populating a Deployment Stage,” on page 174](#)
- ♦ [Section 19.2.3, “Modifying the Stage Timeout,” on page 175](#)
- ♦ [Section 19.2.4, “Modifying Staging Behavior,” on page 176](#)
- ♦ [Section 19.2.5, “Modifying Reboot Behavior,” on page 177](#)
- ♦ [Section 19.2.6, “Modifying the Membership of a Deployment Stage,” on page 177](#)
- ♦ [Section 19.2.7, “Renaming a Deployment Stage,” on page 178](#)
- ♦ [Section 19.2.8, “Deleting a Deployment Stage,” on page 179](#)
- ♦ [Section 19.2.9, “Rearranging the Order in Which Stages Start,” on page 179](#)

19.2.1 Understanding Stages

You can do the following with stages:

- ♦ Set them up for different devices or groups, such as for a test group, specific devices or device groups, or all managed devices in the zone.
- ♦ Modify an existing stage’s membership.
- ♦ Change the order in which the stages run.
- ♦ Rename and delete stages.
- ♦ Specify the default timeout for a stage. When the timeout value is reached, the stage’s deployment stops and an e-mail message is sent, if e-mail notification is configured. You can cancel the deployment, or you can clear the error to restart the stage and reset the timeout. Or, you can ignore all pending devices to trigger a stage progression (either automatic, or wait for administrator action based on the setting).
- ♦ Specify the reboot behavior when devices complete the update: prompt a reboot, force a reboot, or suppress rebooting.
- ♦ Specify how the update process is to advance through the stages:
 - ♦ Automatically, with or without notification
 - ♦ One stage at a time with notification when each stage is completed
 - ♦ Bypass the configured stages and immediately apply the update to all devices

There are many reasons for creating deployment stages:

- ♦ Testing the update on certain devices before deploying it to your production environment
- ♦ Including all Primary Servers in one stage so they can be updated at the same time.

- ♦ Grouping your servers in several stages so that the update process isn't too intensive for the Primary Server being used to perform the updates.
- ♦ Grouping the workstations in several stages so that the update process isn't too intensive for the Primary Server being used to perform the updates.

Any managed devices that are not part of a stage are automatically updated after the last deployment stage has been processed.

You cannot configure stages when an update is in progress.

The following figure illustrates the Deployment Stages panel on the System Updates page:

Figure 19-1 The Deployment Stages Panel

Deployment Stages					
Action ▾ Rename Delete Move Up Move Down					
<input type="checkbox"/>	Ordinal	Stage Name	Stage Members	Staging Behavior	Reboot Behavior Stage Timeout
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Deployment Stage: Test	View/Modify Members	Advance Through Stage Automatically Prompt User	3 days 0 hours 0 minutes
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	Deployment Stage: Production	View/Modify Members	Advance Through Stage Automatically Prompt User	3 days 0 hours 0 minutes

The following table explains the column information. For some columns, you can sort the listed information by clicking a column heading. Click it again to reverse the sorting order.

Table 19-1 Deployment Stages column descriptions.

Column Heading	Explanation
<i>Ordinal</i>	<p>Displays the order in which the stages run. You can rearrange the staging order by using the <i>Move Up</i> and <i>Move Down</i> options. For more information, see "Rearranging the Order in Which Stages Start" on page 179.</p> <p>The first stage listed always displays ordinal 1, the second, ordinal 2, and so on. Therefore, you do not need to include a sequence number in your stage names.</p>
<i>Stage Name</i>	<p>Name of the stage, which you specify when creating the stage by using the <i>Action > Add Stage</i> option.</p> <p>Make this name descriptive enough to indicate its purpose.</p>
<i>Stage Members</i>	<p>This column contains the <i>View/Modify Members</i> option, which opens the Modify Stage Members dialog box that lists all of the members of the stage. You can use the dialog box to add or remove members from the stage.</p> <p>Stage membership can include individual devices and groups that contain devices.</p> <p>For more information, see "Modifying the Membership of a Deployment Stage" on page 177.</p>
<i>Staging Behavior</i>	<p>Displays the current behavior for each stage, which you can change by using the <i>Action > Modify Staging Behavior</i> option. For more information, see "Modifying Staging Behavior" on page 176.</p>

Column Heading	Explanation
<i>Reboot Behavior</i>	<p>Displays the reboot behavior of devices after the update is deployed.</p> <p>Some updates do not require a device to be rebooted after they have been deployed to a device. However, if a reboot is required to complete the update process, the deployment is not completed until the device is rebooted.</p> <p>You have the following reboot options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ Prompt User to Reboot When Update Finishes Applying (Default): After the update has been applied, a request to reboot is immediately displayed. If the user initially rejects rebooting, the user is periodically requested to reboot the device, until the device is rebooted. ♦ Do Not Reboot Device: The device does not reboot; however, the user is periodically requested to reboot the device, until the device is rebooted. ♦ Force Device to Reboot: After the update has been applied, the device is automatically rebooted without user intervention, if a reboot is required by the update. <p>For more information, see “Modifying Reboot Behavior” on page 177.</p>
<i>Stage Timeout</i>	<p>Displays the stage timeout, listed in minutes, which you can change by using the <i>Action > Modify Stage Timeout</i> option. The default is 3 days, 0 hours, and 0 minutes, which is the global timeout value that can be changed in “Stage Timeout Settings” on page 170. Changing the value here only changes it for the selected deployment stage.</p> <p>When the timeout value is reached, the stage’s deployment stops and an e-mail message is sent, if e-mail notification is configured. You can cancel the deployment, or you can clear the error to restart the stage and reset the timeout. Or, you can ignore all pending devices to trigger a stage progression (either automatic, or wait for administrator action based on the setting).</p> <p>For more information, see “Modifying the Stage Timeout” on page 175.</p>

19.2.2 Creating and Populating a Deployment Stage

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.



Deployment Stages					
Action ▾ Rename Delete Move Up Move Down					
<input type="checkbox"/>	Ordinal	Stage Name	Stage Members	Staging Behavior	Reboot Behavior Stage Timeout
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Deployment Stage: Test	View/Modify Members	Advance Through Stage Automatically	Prompt User 3 days 0 hours 0 minutes
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	Deployment Stage: Production	View/Modify Members	Advance Through Stage Automatically	Prompt User 3 days 0 hours 0 minutes

- 2 In the Deployment Stages panel, click *Action*, then select *Add Stage*.

You cannot add a stage while a deployment is in process.

- 3 Specify a deployment stage name, then click *OK*.

Deployment stages appear as device folders on the *Devices* tab, so you should specify names that help you to know a folder’s purpose.

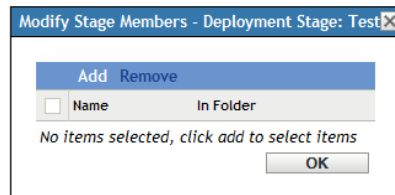
You might want to include something like “Deployment Stage” at the beginning of the name to sort the groups in the devices listing in ZENworks Control Center.

For information about naming in ZENworks Control Center, see [Appendix A, “Naming Conventions in ZENworks Control Center,”](#) on page 335.

A newly created stage does not have any members. You must modify the stage’s membership to add them.

4 Add devices to a deployment stage:

- 4a** In the *Stage Members* column, click *View/Modify Members* for the stage for which you want to add members.



- 4b** Click *Add*, browse for and select the devices, then click *OK*.

You can add individual devices or device groups, or any combination of them.

You can have both managed servers and workstations in the same deployment stage or in different stages, or you can split your servers and workstations into separate deployment stages.

IMPORTANT: Some of your network servers will be Primary Servers for use in ZENworks management, while other servers on your network might only be managed devices with the ZENworks Adaptive Agent installed on them.

You must update your Primary Servers before updating any of the other managed servers and especially before updating any managed workstations.

- 4c** Repeat [Step 4b](#) until you are finished adding members to the stage.

- 4d** To add members to another stage, repeat [Step 4a](#) through [Step 4c](#).

5 Repeat [Step 2](#) through [Step 4](#) until you have created all of your deployment stages.

- 6** If you need to reorder the sequence of the deployment stages, select a stage, then click *Move Up* or *Move Down*.

If you are using one of the stages for test purposes, make sure that it is first in the listing.

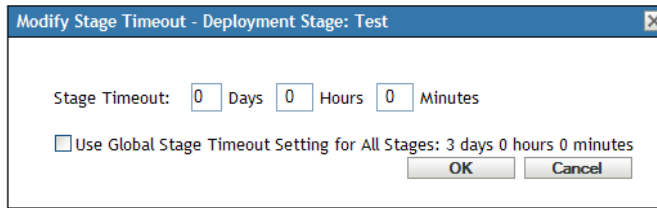
19.2.3 Modifying the Stage Timeout

A stage timeout sets the length of time before a stage terminates. The default timeout is 3 days. You set the value for individual stage timeouts by using the procedure in this section. The global stage timeout value is established by following the steps in [“Stage Timeout Settings”](#) on page 170.

You cannot modify a stage if an update is in progress.

To set the timeout value for a selected stage:

- 1** In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.
- 2** In the Deployment Stages panel, select the check box for a stage, click *Action*, then select *Modify Stage Timeout* to display the following dialog box:



3 Specify the timeout value.

This change in timeout value only applies to the selected stage. If you specify a timeout value for this stage, set its value to be long enough to accommodate updating all of the devices in the stage.

When the timeout value is reached, the stage's deployment stops and an e-mail message is sent, if e-mail notification is configured. You can cancel the deployment, or you can clear the error to restart the stage and reset the timeout. Or, you can ignore all pending devices to trigger a stage progression (either automatic, or wait for administrator action based on the setting).

4 (Optional) Select the *Use Global Stage Timeout Setting for All Stages* check box to specify using the global timeout value (default of 3 days, 0 hours, and 0 minutes).

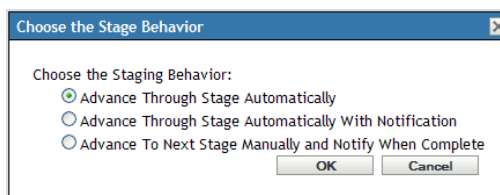
For more information, see [“Stage Timeout Settings” on page 170](#).

5 Click *OK*.

19.2.4 Modifying Staging Behavior

The default stage behavior is to automatically advance through the configured stages. You can change this default behavior. If you change the staging behavior for one stage, the change becomes effective for all stages.

- 1** In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.
- 2** In the Deployment Stages panel, select the check box next to any stage, click *Action*, then select *Modify Stage Behavior* to display the following dialog box:



3 Select one of the following stage behaviors:

Advance Through Stages Automatically: As soon as one stage has completed its updates, the next stage begins. This is the default behavior (its check box is enabled).

After the last stage has completed, all applicable devices that are not members of a stage are then processed.

Advance Through Stages Automatically with Notification: Starts the first stage, sends an e-mail notification when it has completed, then automatically starts the next stage, and so on.

To use this option, a notification method must be set up on the [System Update Download Settings page](#) in the *E-mail Notification* section.

Advance to Next Stage Manually and Notify When Complete: Use this method for user action between the stages, such as reviewing the results of an update to a test group.

This option automatically starts the first stage. After any stage has completed, e-mail notification is sent, then the system waits for you to manually start the next stage.

To use this option, a notification method must be set up on the [System Update Download Settings page](#) in the *E-mail Notification* section.

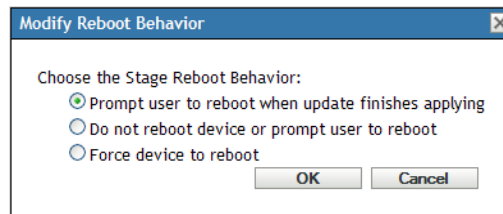
- 4 Click *OK*.

19.2.5 Modifying Reboot Behavior

Some updates do not require a device to be rebooted after they have been deployed to a device. However, if a reboot is required to complete the update process, the deployment is not completed until the device is rebooted.

To modify the reboot behavior:

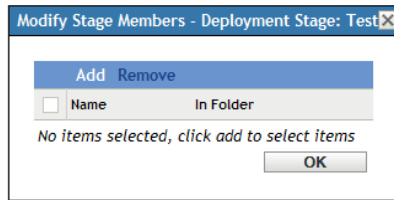
- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.
- 2 In the Deployment Stages panel, select the check box for one or more the deployment stages, click *Action*, then click *Modify Reboot Behavior*.



- 3 Select one of the following options:
 - ♦ **Prompt User to Reboot When Update Finishes Applying (Default):** After the update has been applied, a request to reboot is immediately displayed. If the user initially rejects rebooting, the user is periodically requested to reboot the device, until the device is rebooted.
 - ♦ **Do Not Reboot Device:** The device does not reboot; however, the user is periodically requested to reboot the device, until the device is rebooted.
 - ♦ **Force Device to Reboot:** After the update has been applied, the device is automatically rebooted without user intervention, if a reboot is required by the update.
- 4 Click *OK*.

19.2.6 Modifying the Membership of a Deployment Stage

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.
- 2 (Optional) Add devices to a deployment stage:
 - 2a In the *Stage Members* column, click *View/Modify Members* for the stage for which you want to add members.



- 2b** Click *Add*, browse for and select the devices, then click *OK*.

You can add individual devices or device groups, or any combination of them.

You can have both managed servers and workstations in the same deployment stage or in different stages, or you can split your servers and workstations into separate deployment stages.

IMPORTANT: Some of your network servers will be Primary Servers for use in ZENworks management, while other servers on your network might only be managed devices with the ZENworks Adaptive Agent installed on them.

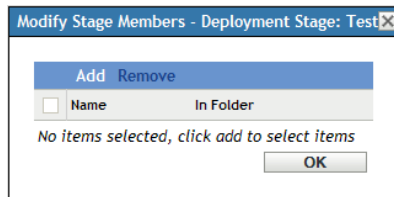
You must update your Primary Servers before updating any of the other managed servers and especially before updating any managed workstations.

- 2c** Repeat [Step 2b](#) until you are finished adding members to the stage.

- 2d** To add members to another stage, repeat [Step 2a](#) through [Step 2c](#).

- 3** (Optional) Remove devices from a deployment stage:

- 3a** In the *Stage Members* column, click *View/Modify Members* for the stage for which you want to remove members.



- 3b** Select the check box next one or more devices that you want to remove, then click *Remove*.

- 4** Click *OK* when you have finished configuring the stage's membership.

19.2.7 Renaming a Deployment Stage

- 1** In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.
- 2** In the Deployment Stages panel, click the check box for the deployment stage to be renamed.
- 3** Click *Rename*.
- 4** In the Rename dialog box, specify the new name, then click *OK*.

For information about naming in ZENworks Control Center, see [Appendix A, "Naming Conventions in ZENworks Control Center,"](#) on page 335.

19.2.8 Deleting a Deployment Stage

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.
- 2 In the Deployment Stages panel, click the check box for one or more of the deployment stages to be deleted.
- 3 Click *Delete*.

Deleted stages cannot be recovered.

19.2.9 Rearranging the Order in Which Stages Start

All updates that use stages deploy to the devices that are members of the stages according to the currently listed staging order.

To rearrange the staging order:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.
- 2 In the Deployment Stages panel, click the check box for the deployment stage to be moved.
- 3 Click *Move Up* or *Move Down* as necessary to rearrange the staging order.
- 4 Repeat [Step 2](#) and [Step 3](#) as necessary for each stage.

Managing Update Downloads

20

The Available System Updates panel on the System Updates page displays the updates that are available after you have checked for them. This includes the Product Recognition Update (PRU), which Novell® provides to update your knowledgebase so that ZENworks® Inventory can recognize newer software. The display refreshed according to the schedule you set in “[Check for Updates Schedule](#)” on page 163.

The first few ZENworks 10 Configuration Management updates are cumulative; thereafter they are additive. For example, if the update for version 10.0.3 is your first system update for ZENworks, it includes all updates contained in the update for version 10.0.2. However, you need to apply the update for version 10.0.3 before you can apply the update for version 10.0.4.

The following sections contain more information:

- ♦ [Section 20.1, “Understanding Available Updates,” on page 181](#)
- ♦ [Section 20.2, “Downloading Updates,” on page 182](#)
- ♦ [Section 20.3, “Downloading and Installing the PRU,” on page 185](#)
- ♦ [Section 20.4, “Canceling or Deleting a System Update,” on page 185](#)

20.1 Understanding Available Updates

The following figure illustrates the Available System Updates panel:

Figure 20-1 Available System Updates Panel

Available System Updates							
Action ▾							Auto Refresh ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	Update Name ▾	Release Date	Download Date	Applied Date	Status	Importance	Target Type
<input type="checkbox"/>	ZCM Update 10.0.5	Mar 7, 2008			Error	Optional	ZENworks Servers
<input type="checkbox"/>	ZCM Update 10.0.4	Jan 1, 2008			Available	Optional	All Devices
<input type="checkbox"/>	ZCM Update 10.0.3	Dec 25, 2007			Available	Optional	All Devices
<input type="checkbox"/>	ZCM Update 10.0.2	Oct 31, 2007			Available	Optional	ZENworks Servers
<input type="checkbox"/>	ZCM 10.0.2 (SU 1)	Oct 12, 2007			Baselined	Mandatory	ZENworks Servers

The Available System Updates panel displays all available updates. If an update is cumulative, meaning that it supersedes previous updates and includes new features and fixes from previous updates, those previous updates are not listed in the Available System Updates panel.

However, if a previous update is currently being deployed, it is listed in the Available System Updates panel, but it is greyed out and cannot be deployed to new devices. Because it is being deployed to devices, it displays in the Deploying System Updates panel.

If you need to deploy a previous update that is not listed (or is greyed out) in the Available System Updates panel, you must delete the cumulative update that superceded it and then download the manual import update file for that update from the [Novell Downloads Web site \(http://download.novell.com\)](http://download.novell.com) and then import it.

The following table explains the column information and the *Auto Refresh* drop-down list (on the right side of the panel, above *Target Type*). For some columns, you can sort the listed information by clicking a column heading. Click it again to reverse the sorting order.

Table 20-1 Available System Updates column descriptions.

Column Heading or List	Explanation
<i>Update Name</i>	<p>Displays the name of the update, which is created by Novell.</p> <p>Click the name to access the Release Details page.</p> <p>For more information, see Chapter 23, “Reviewing the Content of an Update,” on page 205.</p>
<i>Release Date</i>	<p>Displays the date that Novell created the update.</p>
<i>Download Date</i>	<p>Displays the date that you downloaded the update.</p>
<i>Applied Date</i>	<p>Displays the date that you applied the update.</p>
<i>Status</i>	<p>Displays the current status of the update, which is automatically updated every 15 seconds. For more information on the individual statuses, see Chapter 24, “Update Statuses,” on page 209.</p>
<i>Importance</i>	<p>Displays the relative importance of the update’s content to your ZENworks installation. Some possible entries include:</p> <p>OPTIONAL: Not required for normal operation of ZENworks.</p> <p>MANDATORY: A required update that must be applied.</p>
<i>Target Type</i>	<p>Displays the type of update, such as:</p> <p>ZENworks Servers: The update applies only to ZENworks Servers.</p> <p>All Devices: The update applies to all managed devices, including ZENworks Servers.</p>
<i>Auto Refresh</i>	<p>Click <i>Auto Refresh</i> (the menu item on the right side of the panel, above <i>Target Type</i>), then select one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ No Auto Refresh♦ 15-second Refresh♦ 30-second Refresh♦ 60-second Refresh <p>By default the panel view is not automatically refreshed. However, you can manually refresh the view by clicking the <i>System Updates</i> tab.</p>

20.2 Downloading Updates

You can schedule the downloads, or download them manually:

- ♦ [Section 20.2.1, “Scheduling Update Downloads,” on page 183](#)
- ♦ [Section 20.2.2, “Manually Checking for Updates,” on page 183](#)
- ♦ [Section 20.2.3, “Manually Downloading Updates,” on page 183](#)
- ♦ [Section 20.2.4, “Manually Importing Updates to Servers without Internet Connectivity,” on page 184](#)

20.2.1 Scheduling Update Downloads

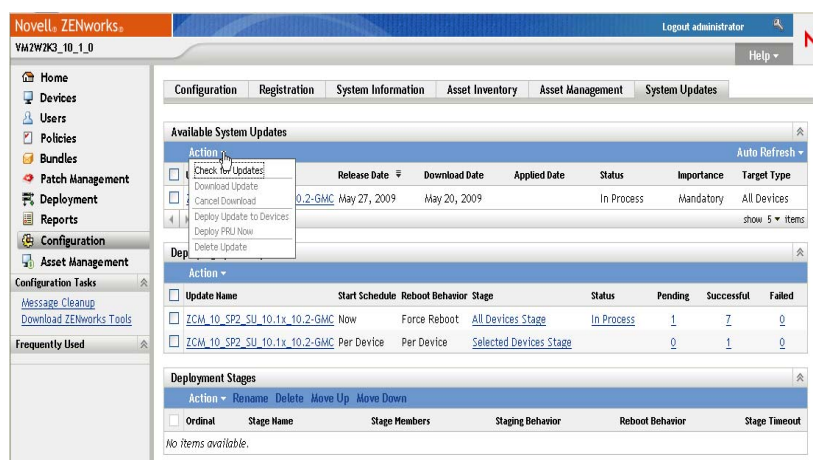
You can schedule both checking for updates and downloading them:

- ♦ “Check for Updates Schedule” on page 163
- ♦ “Download Schedule” on page 165

20.2.2 Manually Checking for Updates

If the most recent updates are not being displayed in the Available System Updates panel on the System Updates page, you can manually refresh the display.

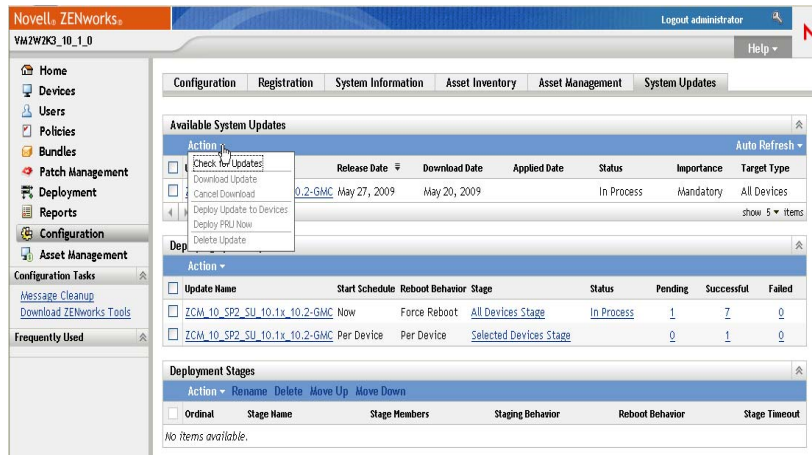
- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.



- 2 In the Available System Updates panel, click *Action* > *Check for Updates*.
Any available updates are displayed with a status of *Available*.
- 3 To re-sort the listed updates, click the heading for any of the columns in the Available System Updates panel.
Click the heading a second time to reverse the sorting order.

20.2.3 Manually Downloading Updates

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.



- 2 In the Available System Updates panel, select the check box next to one or more updates, click *Action*, then click *Download Update*.

The update is downloaded and its status is eventually set to *Downloaded*.

Depending on the size of the update, the downloading process can take some time.

- 3 To refresh the view of the download progress (*Status* column), click the *System Updates* tab or use the [Auto Refresh](#) option.
- 4 If you want to use deployment stages to apply the selected updates, go to [Chapter 21, “Deploying Updates,” on page 187](#) to configure the stages and deploy the updates.

or

To immediately apply the downloaded updates to all applicable devices in the Management Zone, select the check box for the downloaded update that you want to deploy, then click *Action > Deploy Update to Devices*. The Create System Update Deployment Wizard steps you through the deployment process. For more information, see [Chapter 21, “Deploying Updates,” on page 187](#).

20.2.4 Manually Importing Updates to Servers without Internet Connectivity

If you have servers in your environment that do not have Internet access, you can obtain the update or Product Recognition Update (PRU) files from the [Novell Downloads page \(http://download.novell.com\)](http://download.novell.com), copy the files onto a CD or other media, and then use the CD to import the files to a ZENworks Primary Server by using the `zman system-update-import` command. For more information, see “[System Update/Product Recognition Update Commands](#)” in the “[ZENworks Command Line Utilities](#)” guide.

After the files are on a ZENworks Primary Server, the update or PRU displays in the Available System Updates panel on the *System Updates* tab in ZENworks Control Center (*Configuration > System Updates*). You can then follow the instructions in [Chapter 21, “Deploying Updates,” on page 187](#) to deploy the update to managed devices.

20.3 Downloading and Installing the PRU

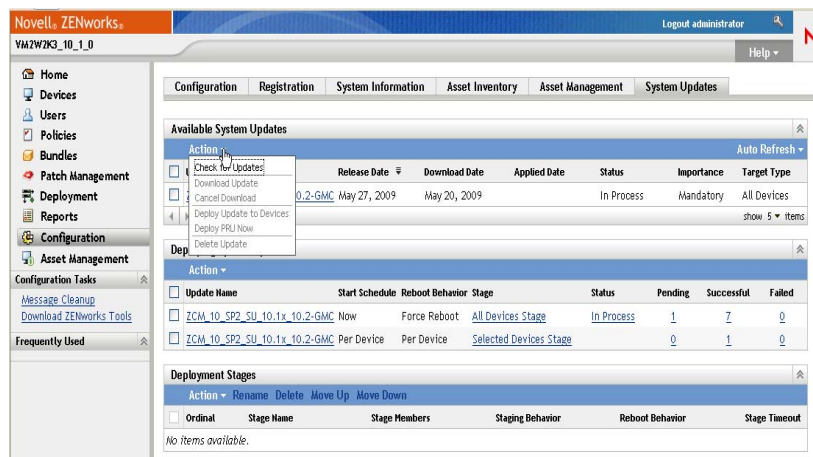
Novell provides a Product Recognition Update (PRU) to update your knowledgebase so that ZENworks Inventory can recognize newer software.

This action deploys the PRU to your database and sets its deployment to your managed devices to be scheduled. Deployment is then done by the ZENworks Adaptive Agent on the devices.

If the PRU is not up-to-date, Inventory might return some software as unrecognized. However, you can use the [Local Software Products](#) utility to take a fingerprint of the unrecognized software to update your knowledgebase.

To download and install the PRU:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.



- 2 If a PRU is not displayed in the Available System Updates panel, click *Action > Check for Updates*.
Information for the latest PRU is displayed, if it is available.
- 3 To download a listed PRU, go to the Available System Updates panel, select the check box for a listed PRU, then click *Action > Download Update*.
- 4 To install a downloaded PRU, go to the Available System Updates panel, then click *Action > Deploy PRU Now*.

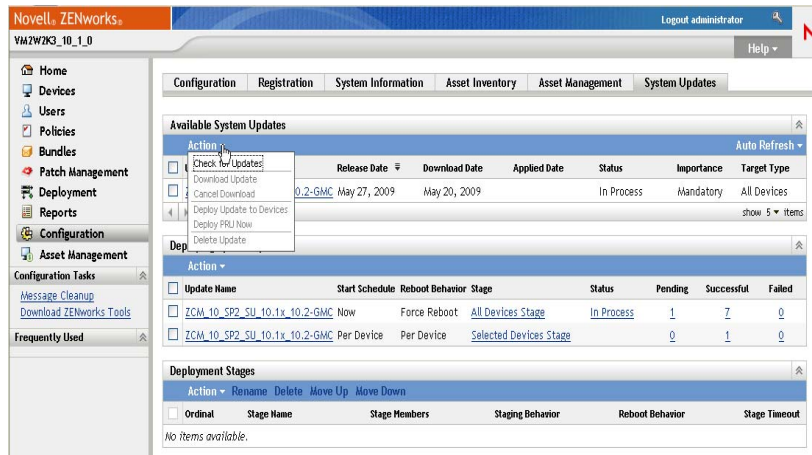
The PRU is now listed in the Deploying System Updates panel, where its progress is displayed.

20.4 Canceling or Deleting a System Update

You can cancel the downloading of an update, or you can delete the update from the Available System Updates list.

To cancel an update:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.



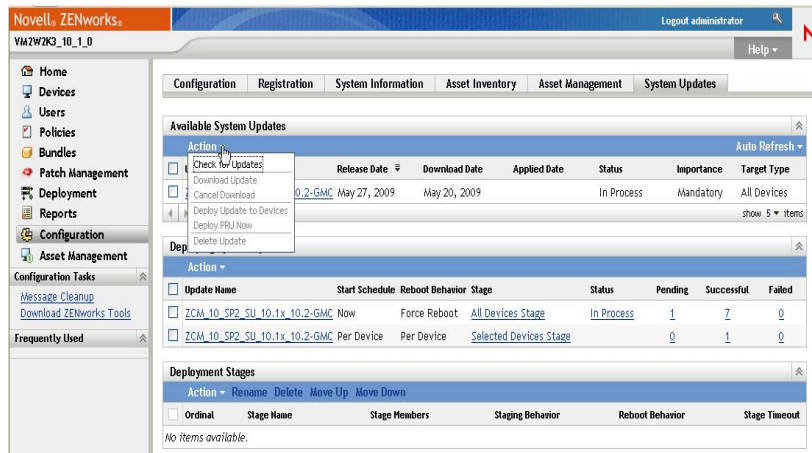
- 2 Select the check box for a system update that is being downloaded, then click *Action > Cancel Download*.

Cancelling an update cancels the downloading of an update. Already downloaded files are not automatically removed, but if you delete the update, any downloaded files are removed.

If a server's connection to the ZENworks database is lost while downloading an update, the download does not resume after reconnecting. Attempting to use the *Cancel Download* action results in the update hanging in the Cancel state. Use the `zman sudo --force` command to delete the update.

To delete an update:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.



- 2 Select the check box for the system update that you want to delete, then click *Action > Delete Update*.

Deleting an update removes it from the list and all downloaded files are removed. However, if the deleted update is still available on the update server the next time that you check for updates, it is displayed in the list again for possible downloading.

- 3 Click *OK* to confirm the deletion.

Deploying Updates

- [Section 21.1, “Understanding Deploying Updates,” on page 187](#)
- [Section 21.2, “Deploying Updates,” on page 189](#)
- [Section 21.3, “Starting a Pending Stage,” on page 196](#)
- [Section 21.4, “Rescheduling a Deployment,” on page 196](#)
- [Section 21.5, “Bypassing Staging,” on page 197](#)
- [Section 21.6, “Canceling a Deployment,” on page 197](#)
- [Section 21.7, “Clearing an Error to Retry a Deployment,” on page 197](#)
- [Section 21.8, “Viewing Status by Device,” on page 197](#)

21.1 Understanding Deploying Updates

You have the following options for deploying an update:

- Deploy the update to all devices without using deployment stages. You can schedule the deployment.
- Deploy the update by using deployment stages where one stage automatically starts after the previous one has completed, unless you have configured stages to pause the deployment and send e-mail notifications to the administrator. You can schedule the deployment.
- Deploy the update by using deployment stages with e-mail notification to allow manual control for starting the next stage. You can use this option to test the update before deploying it to all devices in your production environment. You can schedule the deployment.
- Deploy the update to specific devices (selected individually and by device groups) without using deployment stages. You can use this option to test the update before deploying it to all devices in your production environment. You can schedule the deployment.

If you choose to retire a managed device in ZENworks Control Center before deploying an update to all the devices in the Management Zone, you must first ensure that the device has retired and subsequently apply the update. The device is retired only when the ZENworks Adaptive Agent installed on the device is refreshed. If you deploy the update before the agent is refreshed, the update is also applied to the retired device. The agent is automatically refreshed during the next device refresh schedule (the default device refresh interval is set to 12 hours). If you want to deploy the update before the next device refresh schedule, you must manually refresh the agent.

The Deploying System Updates panel displays the progress and results of deploying an update.

Updates are removed from this panel when the entire update process completes. You can view the Deployment History panel on the Release Details page for information on deployed updates.

The following figure illustrates the Deploying System Updates panel:

Figure 21-1 *Deploying System Updates Panel*

Deploying System Updates							
Action ▾							
<input type="checkbox"/> Update Name	Start Schedule	Reboot Behavior	Stage	Status	Pending	Successful	Failed
<input type="checkbox"/> ZCM Update 10.0.2	Now	Prompt User	All Devices Stage	In Process	1	0	0

The following table explains the column information. For some columns, you can sort the listed information by clicking a column heading. Click it again to reverse the sorting order.

Table 21-1 *Deploying System Updates column descriptions*

Column Heading	Explanation
<i>Update Name</i>	<p>Displays the name of the update, which is created by Novell.</p> <p>Click the name to access the Status by Device page. You can also click the underlined number in the <i>Pending</i>, <i>Successful</i>, or <i>Failed</i> columns to view the appropriate Status by Device page, filtered to display devices with that status.</p>
<i>Start Schedule</i>	<p>Displays the current schedule, if any has been set. Use the Reschedule Deployment action to reschedule the update. For more information, see Section 21.4, “Rescheduling a Deployment,” on page 196.</p> <p>Each device can have its own schedule.</p>
<i>Reboot Behavior</i>	<p>Displays the reboot behavior of devices after the update is deployed.</p> <p>Some updates do not require a device to be rebooted after they have been deployed to a device. However, if a reboot is required to complete the update process, the deployment is not completed until the device is rebooted.</p> <p>You have the following reboot options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ Prompt User to Reboot When Update Finishes Applying: After the update has been applied, a request to reboot is immediately displayed. If the user initially rejects rebooting, the user is periodically requested to reboot the device, until the device is rebooted. This is the default. ♦ Do Not Reboot Device: The device does not reboot; however, the user is periodically requested to reboot the device, until the device is rebooted. ♦ Force Device to Reboot: After the update has been applied, the device is automatically rebooted without user intervention, if a reboot is required by the update.
<i>Stage</i>	<p>Indicates the deployment state. The possible entries are:</p> <p>stage_name: The update is being deployed to the managed devices that are members of the current stage that is listed.</p> <p>Selected Devices Stage: The update is being deployed to selected managed devices without the use of stages.</p> <p>All Devices Stage: The update is being deployed to all managed devices in the Management Zone without the use of stages.</p> <p><i>All Devices Stage</i> is displayed after the last stage has completed, which means any devices left in the Management Zone that were not part of a completed stage are then receiving the update. In other words, managed devices cannot skip an update.</p> <p>If stages are being used, click a stage name to view the device status for each stage member. For more information, see Section 21.8, “Viewing Status by Device,” on page 197.</p>

Column Heading	Explanation
<i>Status</i>	<p>Indicates the status of the update being deployed (for the current stage, if stages are being used). For information on the possible statuses, see Chapter 24, “Update Statuses,” on page 209.</p> <p>Click an item in the <i>Status</i> column to view a message explaining the current status.</p> <p>When the status for an update reaches either the APPLIED or BASELINE status, the update deployment item is no longer displayed in this panel, but is displayed in the Deployment History panel. For more information, see Section 21.8, “Viewing Status by Device,” on page 197.</p>
<i>Pending</i>	<p>Displays the number of devices for which the update deployment process is pending. A device can be pending if it is a member of a stage when stages are not automatically started after another stage completes.</p> <p>Click the number to view the Status by Device page, which displays the devices that have a pending deployment of the update. For more information, see Section 21.8, “Viewing Status by Device,” on page 197.</p>
<i>Successful</i>	<p>Displays the number of devices for which the update deployment process is complete.</p> <p>Click the number to view the Status by Device page, which displays the devices that successfully received the update. For more information, see Section 21.8, “Viewing Status by Device,” on page 197.</p>
<i>Failed</i>	<p>Number of devices for which the update deployment process has failed.</p> <p>Click the number to view the Status by Device page, which displays the devices that failed to receive the update. For more information, see Section 21.8, “Viewing Status by Device,” on page 197.</p> <p>For failed deployments, you have the option of ignoring the error and continuing, or you can redeploy the update if the error has been resolved.</p>

21.2 Deploying Updates

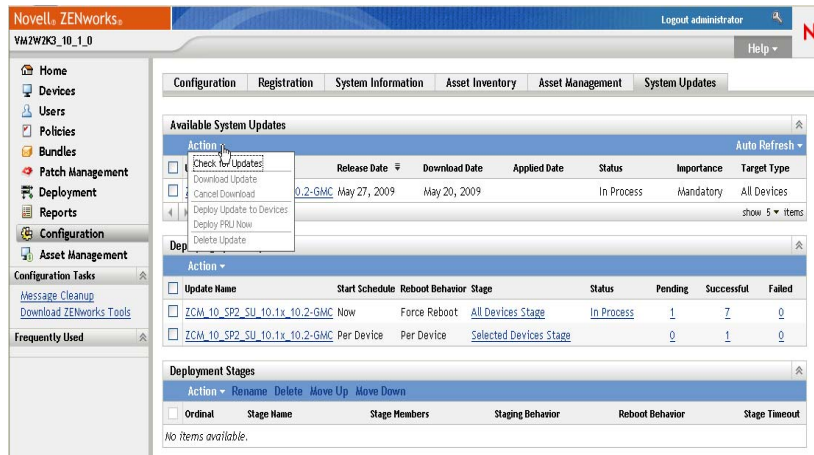
- 1 (Optional) Before deploying the updates, ensure that the health of the Primary Servers and the database in the Management zone is conducive for the deployment by performing diagnostic tests on the Primary Server using the ZENworks Diagnostic Center tool.

For detailed information about the ZENworks Diagnostic Center tool, see the [ZENworks Diagnostic Center Cool Solutions \(http://www.novell.com/communities/node/9479/zenworks-diagnostics-center\)](http://www.novell.com/communities/node/9479/zenworks-diagnostics-center) at the [Novell User Communities Web site \(http://www.novell.com/communities/cool solutions\)](http://www.novell.com/communities/cool solutions).

- 2 (Optional) If you want to use deployment stages, set them up if you have not previously done so.

For more information, see [Section 19.2, “Creating Deployment Stages,” on page 172](#).

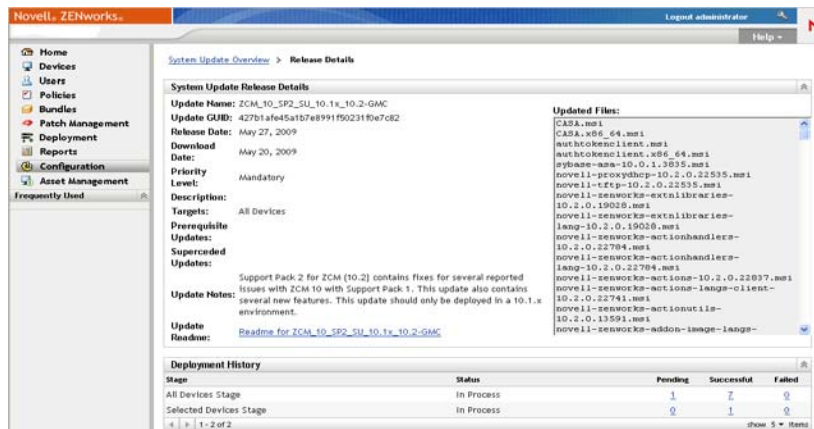
- 3 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab to display the Available System Updates panel:



- 4 (Conditional) If new updates are not being displayed, click *Action > Check for Updates*.
The following illustrates available updates:

Action	Update Name	Release Date	Download Date	Applied Date	Status	Importance	Target Type
<input type="checkbox"/>	ZCM Update 10.0.5	Mar 7, 2008			Available	Optional	ZENworks Servers
<input type="checkbox"/>	ZCM Update 10.0.4	Jan 1, 2008			Available	Optional	All Devices
<input type="checkbox"/>	ZCM Update 10.0.3	Dec 25, 2007			Available	Optional	All Devices
<input type="checkbox"/>	ZCM Update 10.0.2	Oct 31, 2007			Available	Optional	ZENworks Servers
<input type="checkbox"/>	ZCM 10.0.2 (SU 1)	Oct 12, 2007			Baselined	Mandatory	ZENworks Servers
<input type="checkbox"/>	ZCM 10.0.1 (PMR)	Jul 12, 2007			Baselined	Mandatory	ZENworks Servers
<input type="checkbox"/>	Update for ZCM 10.0.8	Apr 8, 2008	Apr 11, 2008		Aborted	Optional	All Devices
<input type="checkbox"/>	Update for ZCM 10.0.7	Apr 7, 2008			Available	Optional	All Devices
<input type="checkbox"/>	Update for ZCM 10.0.6	Apr 7, 2008	Apr 10, 2008	Apr 10, 2008	Baselined	Optional	All Devices
<input type="checkbox"/>	20 content files	Aug 19, 2006	Apr 10, 2008		Downloaded	Optional	All Devices

- 5 (Optional) To view the content of an available update, click the name of the update (in the *Update Name* column) to display the Release Details page:



For more information, see [Chapter 23, “Reviewing the Content of an Update,”](#) on page 205.

- 6 To download an update, select the check box for it, click *Action >* then click *Download Updates*.

After an update has completed downloading, its status is automatically changed to Downloaded. The length of time to download an update depends on its size and your hardware configuration.

You can download multiple updates at a time, but you can only deploy one at a time. Because these steps are repeated for each update, you only need to download the update you plan to deploy at this time.

The following illustrates downloaded updates:

Available System Updates						
Action ▾	Auto Refresh ▾					
<input type="checkbox"/> Update Name	Release Date	Download Date	Applied Date	Status	Importance	Target Type
<input type="checkbox"/> ZCM Update 10.0.5	Mar 7, 2008			Error	Optional	ZENworks Servers
<input type="checkbox"/> ZCM Update 10.0.4	Jan 1, 2008			Available	Optional	All Devices
<input type="checkbox"/> ZCM Update 10.0.3	Dec 25, 2007			Available	Optional	All Devices
<input type="checkbox"/> ZCM Update 10.0.2	Oct 31, 2007	Apr 12, 2008		In Process	Optional	ZENworks Servers
<input type="checkbox"/> ZCM 10.0.2 (SU 1)	Oct 12, 2007			Baselined	Mandatory	ZENworks Servers
1 - 5 of 10						show 5 ▾ items

7 Determine whether to deploy the downloaded update, then select its check box.

You can deploy only one update at a time.

If you want to review the content of the update that you downloaded, see [Chapter 23, “Reviewing the Content of an Update,” on page 205](#) for instructions about reviewing the content of a downloaded update.

If you want to download a different update for deployment, return to [Step 5](#).

8 Click *Action > Deploy Update to Devices*.

This starts the Create System Update Deployment Wizard for deploying the update to all applicable devices. If deployment stages are enabled, they can be used.

The Deployment Wizard provides you with many options, including scheduling the deployment.

Create System Update Deployment

Step 1: Choose the Reboot Behavior for the Deployment

Update Name:

Update for ZCM 10.0.7

Release Date:

Apr 7, 2008

Download Date:

Apr 12, 2008

Priority Level:

OPTIONAL

Description:

Targets:

Product Version:

0

Update Notes:

Update Readme:

Updated Files:

Choose the Deployment Option for the Management Zone:

☐ Deploy System Updates to Selected Devices in the Management Zone

☒ Deploy System Updates to All Devices in the Management Zone

☐ Deploy System Updates using Stages to Devices in the Management Zone

<< Back

Next >>

Cancel

9 In the Deployment Wizard, complete the following steps:

9a On the Choose the System Update and Deployment Option page, select a deployment option (all of them can be scheduled in a subsequent wizard page).

NOTE: Depending on the size of your ZENworks system, we recommend as a best practice to deploy the selected update to one ZENworks Primary Server before deploying the update to other Primary Servers and to the managed devices that contact those servers.

We recommend that you perform the following actions in order:

1. Designate a ZENworks Primary Server to download the system update.
2. After the system update is in the *Downloaded* state, assign the update to only the designated Primary Server you chose above.
3. Refresh the ZENworks Agent on the Server and let the system update finish, then reboot the Server.
4. After the Server is restarted and running, update the other Primary Servers in your system, followed by managed devices.

In a production environment, we recommend that you use the *Deploy System Updates to Selected Devices in the Management Zone* option to update the first Primary Server, update the remaining Primary Servers, and then update the managed devices. Or you should use the *Deploy System Updates Using Stages to Devices in the Management Zone* option to deploy the update to a stage containing the first Primary Server before deploying the update to other stages containing the remaining Primary Servers and managed devices.

-
- ♦ **Deploy System Updates to Selected Devices in the Management Zone:** Deploys the selected update to only the devices that you select in [Step 9e](#). Stages are not used. If you choose this option, the next page of the wizard lets you select the reboot behavior for the devices included in the deployment.
 - ♦ **Deploy System Updates to All Devices in the Management Zone:** Deploys the selected update to all devices in the Management Zone. Stages are not used. If you choose this option, the next page of the wizard lets you select the reboot behavior for the devices included in the deployment.

This option does not guarantee that ZENworks Servers are updated before managed devices. In a large ZENworks system or in a production environment, we recommend that you use one of the other options.

- ♦ **Deploy System Updates Using Stages to Devices in the Management Zone:** The selected update is deployed to only the devices that have membership in one of the stages. The stages are executed one after the other; that is, a stage does not start until the previous stage completes. After all stages complete, the *All Devices* stage is run. If you choose this option, and because the reboot behavior is set per stage, the next page of the wizard lets you select the reboot behavior for the [All Devices Stage](#), which runs automatically after all other stages.

For more information on stages, see the [Section 19.2, “Creating Deployment Stages,” on page 172](#).

9b Click *Next* to display the following page:

Create System Update Deployment

Step 2: Choose the Reboot Behavior for the Deployment

Choose the Reboot Behavior for the Deployment:

☒ Prompt user to reboot when update finishes applying

☐ Do not reboot device

☐ Force device to reboot

<< Back Next >> Cancel

9c Select one of the following options:

- ♦ **Prompt User to Reboot When Update Finishes Applying:** After the update has been applied, a request to reboot is immediately displayed. If the user initially rejects rebooting, the user is periodically requested to reboot the device, until the device is rebooted. This is the default.
- ♦ **Do Not Reboot Device:** The device does not reboot; however, the user is periodically requested to reboot the device, until the device is rebooted.
- ♦ **Force Device to Reboot:** After the update has been applied, the device is automatically rebooted without user intervention, if a reboot is required by the update.

Some updates do not require a device to be rebooted after they have been deployed to a device. However, if a reboot is required to complete the update process, the deployment is not completed until the device is rebooted.

9d Click *Next*.

9e (Conditional) If you selected *Deploy System Updates to Selected Devices* in the Management Zone in [Step 9a](#), the following wizard page displays:

Create System Update Deployment

Step 3: Choose the Deployment Devices and Groups

Add Remove

Name	In Folder
No items selected, click add to select items	

<< Back Next >> Cancel

9f To add devices or groups to the deployment configuration, click *Add*, browse for and select the devices or device groups to include in the update deployment, then click *OK*.

9g Click *Next* to display the Choose the Deployment Schedule page.

9h Fill in the fields:

Schedule Type: Select one of the schedule options:

- ♦ **Now:** Immediately deploys the update when you finish the wizard.

Create System Update Deployment

Step 2: Choose the Deployment Schedule

Schedule Type:

Now

This schedule will run immediately upon the completion of the wizard.

<< Back Next >> Cancel

- ♦ **Date Specific:** Deploys the update according to the schedule that you set. The following options are displayed for the *Date Specific* option:

Create System Update Deployment
Step 4: Choose the Deployment Schedule

Schedule Type:
Date Specific

Start Date(s): 4/12/08

☐ Run event every year
☒ Process immediately if device unable to execute on schedule

Select when schedule execution should start:
☒ Start immediately at Start Time
☐ Start at a random time between Start and End Times

Start Time: 1 : 00 am End Time: 1 : 00 am

<< Back Next >> Cancel

Fill in the fields:

- ♦ **Start Date:** Select the deployment date from the calendar.
- ♦ **Run Event Every Year:** Select this option to deploy the update every year on the start date.
- ♦ **Process Immediately if Device Unable to Execute on Schedule:** Do not use this option for updates. It does not apply to updates.
- ♦ **Start Immediately at Start Time:** Lets you deploy updates at the start time you specify.
- ♦ **Start at a Random Time Between Start and End Times:** Lets you deploy updates at a random time between the times you specify. Fill in the *End Time* fields.

9i Click *Next* to display the Review Deployment Options page, then review the information.

Create System Update Deployment
Step 5: Review Deployment Options

Update Name: ZCM Update 10.0.2
 Deployment Type: Deploy System Updates to Selected Devices in the Management Zone
 Deployment Reboot Behavior: Prompt user to reboot when update finishes applying
 Deployment Schedule:

Schedule Type:
Date Specific


Dates scheduled event will be performed on:
4/12/08

Start time:
1:00 AM

End time:

<< Back Finish Cancel

10 If you are satisfied, click *Finish* to start the update's deployment; otherwise, click *Back* to make changes.

- 11** (Conditional) If you chose the deployment schedule type as *Now* in [Step 9h](#), the update is deployed only during the next device refresh schedule. However, if you want to immediately apply the update to the device, you must manually refresh the managed device in one of the following ways:
- Click the *Devices* tab > the *Managed* tab > *Servers* or *Workstations*, then select the check box next to the devices you want to refresh, click *Quick Tasks* > *Refresh Device*.
 - On the managed device, right-click the  icon, then click *Refresh*.
 - On the Linux unmanaged device, open a terminal, change your current working directory to `/opt/novell/zenworks/bin/`, and execute `./zac ref`.
- 12** To observe the progress of the update deployment, do any of the following:
- In ZENworks Control Center, observe the panels on the System Updates page:
 - The Available System Updates panel automatically displays *Baselined* in the *Status* column when the deployment has completed.
 - The Deployed System Updates panel displays the update in its listing when the deployment has completed.
 - On a Windows device where the update is being deployed, right-click the ZENworks icon, then select *Show Progress* to open the ZENworks Progress dialog box.
 You cannot view the download progress on a Linux device because these devices are not ZENworks managed devices and do not have the ZENworks icon.
 The progress of downloading the update MSI files is displayed. When it has finished, the dialog box automatically closes and the *Show Progress* option is dimmed.
 After a 5-minute wait, all ZENworks services are closed on the device. Then the MSIs (for Windows) or RPMs (for Linux) are installed and the services are restarted.
- 13** To verify that the update was successfully deployed:
- 13a** To verify that the MSIs or RPMs have been installed and the update process is complete, review the following log files:
- Windows:** `installation_path\novell\zenworks\logs\systemupdate.log`
- Linux:** `/var/opt/novell/log/zenworks/SystemUpdate.log`
- You can also look for the existence of the following file (the same path for both Windows and Linux):
- `installation_path\novell\zenworks\work\system-update\systemupdate.ini.timestamp`
- 13b** Test the ZENworks software on the device to ensure that it is working properly.
- 13c** To ensure that the update has been deployed, do one of the following to determine whether the version number has been incremented (for example, the first update for ZENworks should change the value from 10.0.x to 10.0.2):
- Open the Windows Registry and browse to the following:
`HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE/Software/Novell`
 For the *ZENworks* key, the update process should have incremented the *version* value.
 - On a Windows device, review the following file:
`Installation_path\Novell\ZENworks\version.txt`

- ♦ On a Linux device, review the following file:

`/etc/opt/novell/zenworks/version.txt`

13d Repeat [Step 13a](#) through [Step 13c](#) for each test device.

- 14** (Conditional) If you are receiving e-mail notifications at the completion of the deployment stages and are ready to begin the next stage, go to the Deployed System Updates panel, then click *Action > Advance to Next Stage*.
- 15** To deploy another update, repeat from [Step 5](#).

21.3 Starting a Pending Stage

The default stage behavior is to automatically advance through the configured stages. However, you can configure stage behavior for individual stages or for all stages.

The *Start Pending Stage* option is only available if you used the *Advance to Next Stage Manually and Notify When Complete* option to stop each stage for manual input before continuing, instead of having the stages complete automatically.

To start a pending stage:

- 1** In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.
- 2** In the Deploying System Updates panel, select the check boxes for an update.
- 3** Click *Action > Start Pending Stage*.

21.4 Rescheduling a Deployment

You cannot reschedule a deployment after it starts:

- ♦ [Section 21.4.1, “Rescheduling a Deployment for the All Stages Status,” on page 196](#)
- ♦ [Section 21.4.2, “Rescheduling a Deployment for the Other Statuses,” on page 196](#)

21.4.1 Rescheduling a Deployment for the All Stages Status

- 1** Select the check box for an update.
Because all devices do not need to have the update deployed at the same time, you can set individual deployment schedules for the devices.
- 2** Click *Action > Reschedule Deployment* to open the Redeployment Schedule dialog box.
- 3** Either click *OK* to accept the default schedule of *Now*, or select *Date Specific* in the *Schedule Type* field, specify the new date, then click *OK*.

21.4.2 Rescheduling a Deployment for the Other Statuses

- 1** Select the check box for an update.
- 2** Click *Action > Reschedule Deployment*.
- 3** In the Status by Device page, select the check box for an update, then click *Reschedule Deployment*.
- 4** On the Status by Device page, select one or more devices that are listed in the *Device* column.

- 5 Click *Reschedule Devices* to open the Redeployment Schedule dialog box.
- 6 Either click *OK* to accept the default schedule of *Now*, or select *Date Specific* in the *Schedule Type* field and specify the new date, then click *OK*.

21.5 Bypassing Staging

You can bypass the stages at any time and immediately deploy the update to all managed devices in the Management Zone.

- 1 Select the check box for an update.
- 2 Click *Action > Bypass Stages and Apply to All Devices*.

21.6 Canceling a Deployment

This option is mainly for canceling a deployment that has not yet started.

If you select to apply the update only through stages, and if you cancel the update deployment, the status in the Available System Updates panel is changed to *Aborted*.

However, for an update, you can select to deploy to individual devices, as well as through stages for the other devices. Therefore, the status in the Available System Updates panel is changed to:

- ♦ *Ready* if you cancel only the staged deployment.
- ♦ *Aborted* if you cancel both the staged deployment and the deployment for individually selected devices.

To cancel a deployment:

- 1 Select the check box for an update.
- 2 Click *Action > Cancel Deployment*.

WARNING: If you cancel a deployment that is currently running (not just scheduled), all deployment actions performed up to that point cannot be reversed. There currently is no rollback option.

- 3 Click *OK* to confirm canceling the deployment.

21.7 Clearing an Error to Retry a Deployment

To continue with the deployment after determining that an error is not serious enough to stop the deployment:

- 1 Click *Action > Clear Error and Continue*.

21.8 Viewing Status by Device

The following sections contain more information:

- ♦ [Section 21.8.1, “Understanding Device Statuses,” on page 198](#)
- ♦ [Section 21.8.2, “Viewing a Device’s Properties,” on page 199](#)
- ♦ [Section 21.8.3, “Viewing Information on a Device’s Status,” on page 199](#)

- ◆ [Section 21.8.4, “Toggling Ignored Devices,” on page 199](#)
- ◆ [Section 21.8.5, “Redeploying Updates to Devices,” on page 200](#)
- ◆ [Section 21.8.6, “Rescheduling Updates to Devices,” on page 200](#)
- ◆ [Section 21.8.7, “Refreshing Devices,” on page 201](#)

21.8.1 Understanding Device Statuses

The following graphic illustrates the Deploying System Updates panel on the System Updates page:

Figure 21-2 Deploying System Updates Panel

Deploying System Updates							
Action ▾							
<input type="checkbox"/> Update Name	Start Schedule	Reboot Behavior	Stage	Status	Pending	Successful	Failed
<input type="checkbox"/> ZCM Update 10.0.2	Now	Prompt User	All Devices Stage	In Process	1	0	0

You can click any of the underlined links to display the corresponding status of devices. For example, if you click the link in the *Pending* column, you see the status of devices on which the deployment is pending, as in the following figure:

Figure 21-3 Device by Status Page for Devices with Pending Status

Update for ZCM 10.0.7 - Devices with Pending Status					
Action ▾					
<input type="checkbox"/> Ignore Device	Device ▲	Status	Device Type	In Folder	
<input type="checkbox"/>	zendoc3a	Update Assigned	Server	/ devices/servers/zendoc3a	

The possible statuses that can be viewed on this page are:

All Devices: Lists all devices that were configured to receive the selected update, regardless of status.

Pending Devices: Lists only the devices where the selected update is pending.

Successful Devices: Lists all of the devices where the selected update has been successfully deployed.

Failed Devices: Lists only the devices where the selected update failed.

Update Assigned: Lists only the devices where the selected update has been assigned.

The following table explains the column information. For some columns, you can sort the listed information by clicking a column heading. Click it again to reverse the sorting order. This page refreshes automatically to allow you to work with devices as the update is applied on them.

Column Heading	Explanation
<i>Device</i>	The device's name. Click it to display the device's properties page in ZENworks Control Center.
<i>Status</i>	The current update deployment status for the device. Click the status item to view information about the status.
	For more information on the individual statuses, see Chapter 24, “Update Statuses,” on page 209 .

Column Heading	Explanation
<i>Device Type</i>	Whether the device is a server or workstation.
<i>In Folder</i>	Displays the ZENworks Control Center folder where the device's ZENworks object resides.

21.8.2 Viewing a Device's Properties

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.
- 2 In the Deploying System Updates panel, click an underlined link in the *Update Name*, *Stage*, *Pending*, *Successful*, or *Failed* column to display the appropriate Status by Device page.

For example, if you click the link in the *Pending* column, you see the status of devices on which the deployment is pending, as in the following figure:

Update for ZCM 10.0.7 - Devices with Pending Status				
Action ▾				
<input type="checkbox"/> Ignore Device	Device	Status	Device Type	In Folder
<input type="checkbox"/>	zendoc3a	Update Assigned	Server	/devices/servers/zendoc3a

- 3 Click the underlined link in the *Device* column to display the device's properties.

21.8.3 Viewing Information on a Device's Status

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.
- 2 In the Deploying System Updates panel, click an underlined link in the *Update Name*, *Stage*, *Pending*, *Successful*, or *Failed* column to display the appropriate Status by Device page.

For example, if you click the link in the *Pending* column, you see the status of devices on which the deployment is pending, as in the following figure:

Update for ZCM 10.0.7 - Devices with Pending Status				
Action ▾				
<input type="checkbox"/> Ignore Device	Device	Status	Device Type	In Folder
<input type="checkbox"/>	zendoc3a	Update Assigned	Server	/devices/servers/zendoc3a

- 3 Click the underlined link in the *Status* column to display status information about the device.

21.8.4 Toggling Ignored Devices

Ignoring a device is helpful if an update fails on a device and you want to continue with the deployment without resolving the error. For example, if a device is offline, you might want to ignore that device so that the deployment can continue.

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.
- 2 In the Deploying System Updates panel, click an underlined link in the *Update Name*, *Stage*, *Pending*, *Successful*, or *Failed* column to display the appropriate Status by Device page.

For example, if you click the link in the *Pending* column, you see the status of devices on which the deployment is pending, as in the following figure:

Update for ZCM 10.0.7 - Devices with Pending Status				
Action ▾				
<input type="checkbox"/> Ignore Device	Device ▲	Status	Device Type	In Folder
<input type="checkbox"/>	zendoc3a	Update Assigned	Server	/devices/servers/zendoc3a
1 - 1 of 1		show 5 ▼ items		

3 Click the check box next to one or more devices.

4 Click *Action > Toggle Ignored Devices*.

The options available from the *Action* menu vary, depending on whether you are viewing the All Assigned Devices Status panel, the Devices with Pending Status panel, or the Devices with Failed Status panel. If you are viewing the Devices with Success Status panel, no options are available.

21.8.5 Redeploying Updates to Devices

1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.

2 In the Deploying System Updates panel, click an underlined link in the *Update Name*, *Stage*, *Pending*, *Successful*, or *Failed* column to display the appropriate Status by Device page.

For example, if you click the link in the *Pending* column, you see the status of devices on which the deployment is pending, as in the following figure:

Update for ZCM 10.0.7 - Devices with Pending Status				
Action ▾				
<input type="checkbox"/> Ignore Device	Device ▲	Status	Device Type	In Folder
<input type="checkbox"/>	zendoc3a	Update Assigned	Server	/devices/servers/zendoc3a
1 - 1 of 1		show 5 ▼ items		

3 Select the check box next to one or more devices.

4 Click *Action > Redeploy Update to Devices*.

The options available from the *Action* menu vary, depending on whether you are viewing the All Assigned Devices Status panel, the Devices with Pending Status panel, or the Devices with Failed Status panel. If you are viewing the Devices with Success Status panel, no options are available.

21.8.6 Rescheduling Updates to Devices

1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.

2 In the Deploying System Updates panel, click an underlined link in the *Update Name*, *Stage*, *Pending*, *Successful*, or *Failed* column to display the appropriate Status by Device page.

For example, if you click the link in the *Pending* column, you see the status of devices on which the deployment is pending, as in the following figure:

Update for ZCM 10.0.7 - Devices with Pending Status				
Action ▾				
<input type="checkbox"/> Ignore Device	Device ▲	Status	Device Type	In Folder
<input type="checkbox"/>	zendoc3a	Update Assigned	Server	/devices/servers/zendoc3a
1 - 1 of 1		show 5 ▼ items		

3 Select the check box next to one or more devices.

4 Click *Action > Reschedule Devices*.

The options available from the *Action* menu vary, depending on whether you are viewing the All Assigned Devices Status panel, the Devices with Pending Status panel, or the Devices with Failed Status panel. If you are viewing the Devices with Success Status panel, no options are available.

The *Reschedule Devices* option displays only when the update deployment is scheduled. If the update has a schedule of *Now*, this option is not available.

21.8.7 Refreshing Devices

1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.

2 In the Deploying System Updates panel, click an underlined link in the *Update Name*, *Stage*, *Pending*, *Successful*, or *Failed* column to display the appropriate Status by Device page.

For example, if you click the link in the *Pending* column, you see the status of devices on which the deployment is pending, as in the following figure:

Update for ZCM 10.0.7 - Devices with Pending Status				
Action ▾				
<input type="checkbox"/> Ignore Device	Device ▲	Status	Device Type	In Folder
<input type="checkbox"/>	zendoc3a	Update Assigned	Server	/devices/servers/zendoc3a
1 - 1 of 1		show 5 ▼ items		

3 Select the check box next to one or more devices.

4 Click *Action > Refresh Device*.

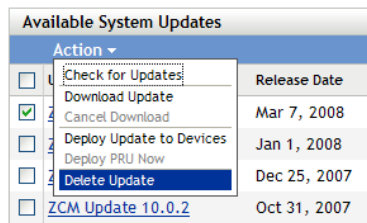
The options available from the *Action* menu vary, depending on whether you are viewing the All Assigned Devices Status panel, the Devices with Pending Status panel, or the Devices with Failed Status panel. If you are viewing the Devices with Success Status panel, no options are available.

Deleting Updates

22

You can clear an update that fails to download, or an update that you do not want to deploy.

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.
- 2 In the Available System Updates panel, select the check boxes for one or more updates.
- 3 Click *Action > Delete Update*.



The update is deleted from the list and all downloaded files are removed. However, if the deleted update is still available on the update server, it is displayed in the list again for possible downloading the next time that you check for updates.

Reviewing the Content of an Update

You might want to review the content of an update for the following reasons:

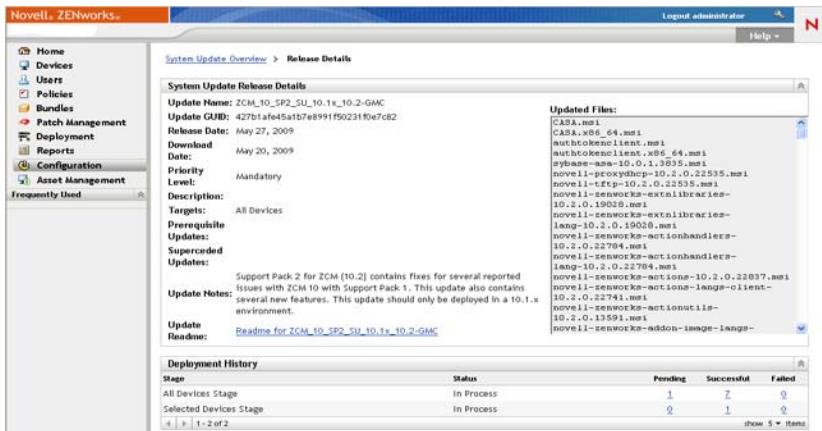
- To determine whether to download the update
- To determine whether to deploy a downloaded update
- To review what was deployed by the update
- To review the history of the update

This section contains the following information:

- [Section 23.1, “Viewing the Release Details Page,” on page 205](#)
- [Section 23.2, “Update Release Details,” on page 205](#)
- [Section 23.3, “Deployment History,” on page 206](#)

23.1 Viewing the Release Details Page

- 1 In ZENworks® Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.
- 2 In the Available System Updates panel, click an update name in the *Update Name* column to display the Release Details page:



23.2 Update Release Details

Table 23-1 Information from the System Update Release Details Panel

Column Heading	Explanation
Update Name	The name of the update, which is created by Novell®.

Column Heading	Explanation
<i>Update GUID</i>	The update's GUID.
<i>Release Date</i>	The date the update was released by Novell.
<i>Download Date</i>	The date you downloaded the content of the update, including all files necessary to install the update.
<i>Priority Level</i>	<p>The relative importance of the update's content to your ZENworks installation. Some possible entries:</p> <p>OPTIONAL: Not required for normal operation of ZENworks.</p> <p>MANDATORY: A required update that must be applied.</p>
<i>Description</i>	Brief information about the purpose of the update and its content.
<i>Targets</i>	Indicates whether the target devices are Primary Servers only, all managed devices, or servers with ZENworks roles.
<i>Product Version</i>	The version of ZENworks in this update.
<i>Prerequisite Updates</i>	Any updates that are required for this update.
<i>Superseded Updates</i>	Any updates that the current update supersedes.
<i>Update Notes</i>	Brief information about important issues related to the update.
<i>Update Readme</i>	Information pertinent to deploying the update, such as last-minute instructions. Click this entry to open the Readme.
<i>Updated Files</i>	Lists all of the files contained in the update that will be applied to update your ZENworks software.

23.3 Deployment History

This Deployment History panel displays a current snapshot of the history for the selected update. It does not automatically refresh its content.

The following sections contain more information:

- ♦ [Section 23.3.1, “Understanding Deployment History Details,” on page 207](#)
- ♦ [Section 23.3.2, “Performing Deployment History Tasks,” on page 208](#)

23.3.1 Understanding Deployment History Details

Table 23-2 Columns for the Deployment History Details Panel

Column Heading	Explanation
<i>Stage</i>	<p>Indicates the deployment method used. The possible entries are:</p> <p>stage_name: The update was deployed to the managed devices that are members of the stage that is listed.</p> <p>Selected Devices Stage: The update was deployed to selected managed devices in the Management Zone that are not members of a stage.</p> <p>All Devices Stage: The update was deployed to all managed devices in the Management Zone that are not members of a stage.</p>
<i>Status</i>	<p>Indicates the status of the update that was successfully deployed, such as <i>Applied</i> or <i>Baselined</i>.</p> <p>In Process: The update is currently being deployed to the members of the stage.</p> <p>For more information on the individual statuses, see Chapter 24, “Update Statuses,” on page 209.</p>
<i>Pending</i>	<p>Displays the number of devices for which the update deployment process is pending. A device can be pending if it is a member of a stage when stages are not automatically started after another stage completes.</p> <p>Click the number to view the Status by Device page, which displays the devices that have the deployment of the update pending.</p>
<i>Successful</i>	<p>Displays the number of devices for which the update deployment process has completed.</p> <p>Click the number to view the Status by Device page, with the devices displayed that successfully received the update.</p>
<i>Failed</i>	<p>Displays the number of devices for which the update deployment process has failed.</p> <p>Click the number to view the Status by Device page, which displays the devices that failed to receive the update.</p> <p>For failed deployments, you have the option of ignoring the error and continuing, or you can redeploy the update if the error has been resolved.</p>

23.3.2 Performing Deployment History Tasks

Table 23-3 *Tasks for Evaluating an Update's Deployment History*

Task	Steps	Additional Details
View which devices have their deployment pending	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. In the Deployment Stages panel, click the number in the <i>Pending</i> column.2. On the Status by Device page, review the information.	Displays devices where the deployment of the update is pending.
View the devices where deployment was successful	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. In the Deployment Stages panel, click the number in the <i>Successful</i> column.2. On the Status by Device page, review the information.	Displays devices that have had the selected update successfully applied.
View which devices had the deployment fail	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. In the Deployment Stages panel, click the number in the <i>Failed</i> column.2. On the Status by Device page, review the information.	<p>Displays devices where the update deployment failed.</p> <p>In order to consider a deployment successfully finished when there are failed devices, the failed devices should either be ignored, or the error should be fixed before you redeploy the update to those failed devices.</p>

Update Statuses

24

The following update statuses can be displayed in the *Status* column of several System Update panels in ZENworks® Control Center:

Aborted: The deployment of the update was stopped, such as by selecting *Action > Cancel Deployment*.

Applied: The update was successfully applied to the managed devices.

Available: Updates with this status have downloaded the information about the update, which you can view by clicking the update name in the *Update ID* column.

Awaiting Reboot: The device is waiting for you to manually reboot after the update has been applied.

Baselined: The update has been assigned to the */Devices* folder, meaning that all new devices added to the Management Zone automatically get the update, unless they are already at that update level. When an update is baselined, any packages (MSIs and RPMs) that were updated by the system update have been deleted and replaced with the new packages. A baselined update is considered complete; although, individual devices could have been ignored.

In previous versions of ZENworks Configuration Management, when an update was baselined, the ZENworks Agent packages on all ZENworks Servers were rebuilt with the latest software. In this version, however, the agent packages are rebuilt during the upgrade process of each individual Server.

Canceled: Displays after you select *Action > Cancel Download* and the download or deployment was successfully canceled.

Canceling: Temporarily displays after you select *Action > Cancel Download*.

Deploying: The update is currently being deployed. See [Chapter 21, “Deploying Updates,” on page 187](#) for further deployment information and for actions that you can take on an update that is being deployed.

Downloaded: You have downloaded the update’s content and it is ready for deployment. See [Chapter 21, “Deploying Updates,” on page 187](#) for further deployment information and for actions that you can take on an update that has been deployed.

Downloading: Displays a percentage of completion during the downloading process. This status changes to *Downloaded* when the download is complete.

Error: The stage failed to complete because of an error with one or more of the devices being updated. You can select to ignore the error and continue, or to fix the error before continuing. This status can also indicate an error in downloading the update.

In Process: That the current stage is active.

Installing Update: The update is currently being installed on the device.

Ready: The current stage is ready to start.

Reboot in Process: Rebooting the device is in process.

Reboot Process Canceled: Rebooting the device after the update was applied was canceled.

Scheduled: The update has a schedule defined for it. See [Chapter 21, “Deploying Updates,” on page 187](#) when creating the deployment in the Create System Update Deployment Wizard. You can alter the update’s schedule by using the *Action > Reschedule Deployment* option.

Stage Complete: The stage has completed.

Status Unknown: The status of updates for the device is unknown.

Superseded: Indicates that the update has been replaced by another update listed in the Available System Updates section. You should see this status only if you are in the process of deploying this update and there are pending devices. You can delete a superseded update, but you cannot deploy it.

Update Aborted: The update was canceled for the device.

Update Completed: Installation of the update has been completed on the device.

Update Completed with Errors: Installation of the update has been completed on the device, but there were errors. Check the update log for details.

Update Assigned: The update has been assigned to the device.

Zone Pre-Update Actions: Actions for the Management Zone are taking place before the server update begins.

Zone Post-Update Actions: Actions for the Management Zone are taking place after the server upgrade finishes.

Zone Administration



This section contains information about Management Zone configuration settings that let you control a wide range of functionality for your Zone.

- ♦ [Chapter 25, “Management Zone Configuration Settings,” on page 213](#)

Management Zone Configuration Settings

25

The Management Zone configuration settings enable you to control a wide range of functionality for your Zone. There are Content settings that let you control when content can be distributed to devices and how often content is replicated between ZENworks® Servers (if you have multiple servers). There are Device Management settings that let you control how often devices access a ZENworks Server for refreshed information, how often dynamic groups are refreshed, and what levels of messages (informational, warning, or error) are logged by the ZENworks Adaptive Agent. There are Inventory settings, Discovery and Deployment settings, and much more.

The configuration settings are grouped into categories:

- ♦ [Section 25.1, “Accessing Configuration Settings,” on page 213](#)
- ♦ [Section 25.2, “Content Settings,” on page 217](#)
- ♦ [Section 25.3, “Device Management Settings,” on page 217](#)
- ♦ [Section 25.4, “Discovery and Deployment Settings,” on page 218](#)
- ♦ [Section 25.5, “Event and Messaging Settings,” on page 218](#)
- ♦ [Section 25.6, “Infrastructure Management Settings,” on page 219](#)
- ♦ [Section 25.7, “Inventory Settings,” on page 219](#)
- ♦ [Section 25.8, “Reporting Services Settings,” on page 220](#)
- ♦ [Section 25.9, “Asset Management Settings,” on page 220](#)
- ♦ [Section 25.10, “Patch Management Services Settings,” on page 221](#)

25.1 Accessing Configuration Settings

Management Zone settings that apply to devices are inherited by all devices in the zone. You can override zone settings by configuring them on device folders or on individual devices. This allows you to establish zone settings that apply to the largest number of devices and then, as necessary, override the settings on folders and devices.

By default, your zone settings are preconfigured with values that provide common functionality. You can, however, change the settings to best adapt them to the behavior you need in your environment.

- ♦ [Section 25.1.1, “Modifying Configuration Settings at the Zone,” on page 213](#)
- ♦ [Section 25.1.2, “Modifying Configuration Settings on a Folder,” on page 214](#)
- ♦ [Section 25.1.3, “Modifying Configuration Settings on a Device,” on page 215](#)

25.1.1 Modifying Configuration Settings at the Zone

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.

- 2 In the Management Zone Settings panel, click the settings category (*Content, Device Management, Discovery and Deployment, Event and Messaging, and so forth*) whose settings you want to modify.



- 3 Click the setting to display its details page.

- 4 Modify the setting as desired.

For information about the settings, click the *Help* button in ZENworks Control Center or see the following sections:

- ♦ “Content Settings” on page 217
- ♦ “Device Management Settings” on page 217
- ♦ “Discovery and Deployment Settings” on page 218
- ♦ “Event and Messaging Settings” on page 218
- ♦ “Infrastructure Management Settings” on page 219
- ♦ “Inventory Settings” on page 219
- ♦ “Reporting Services Settings” on page 220
- ♦ “Asset Management Settings” on page 220
- ♦ “Patch Management Services Settings” on page 221

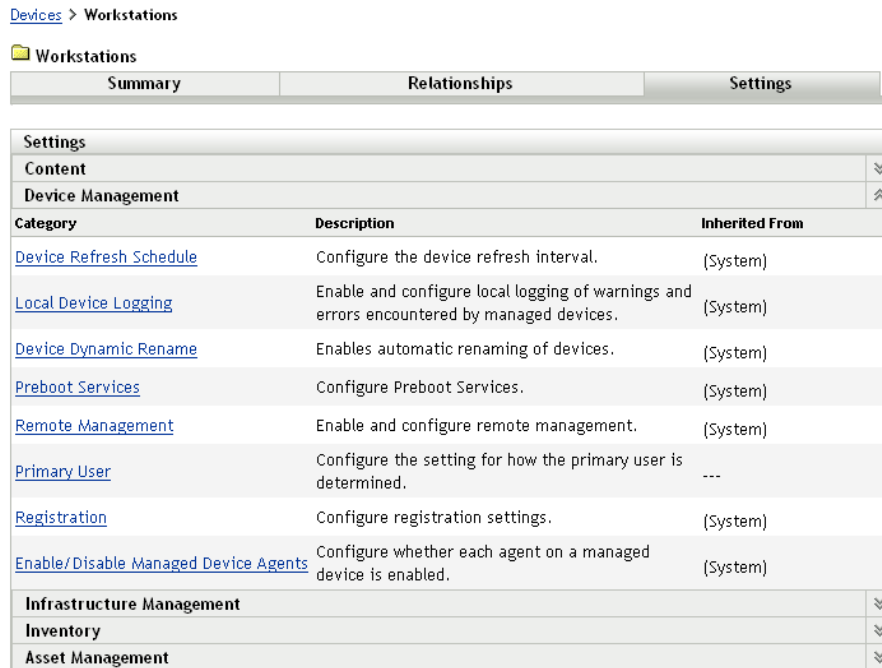
- 5 When you have finished modifying the setting, click *OK* (or *Apply*) to save your changes.

If the configuration setting applies to devices, the setting is inherited by all devices in the zone unless the setting is overridden at a folder level or a device level.

25.1.2 Modifying Configuration Settings on a Folder

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Devices* tab.
- 2 In the Devices panel (on the *Managed* tab), browse for the folder whose settings you want to modify.
- 3 When you find the folder, click *Details* next to the folder name to display the folder’s details.
- 4 Click the *Settings* tab.

- 5 In the Settings panel, click the settings category (*Content*, *Device Management*, *Infrastructure Management*, and so forth) whose settings you want to modify.



- 6 Click the setting to display its details page.

- 7 Modify the setting as desired.

For information about the setting, click the *Help* button in ZENworks Control Center or see the following sections:

- ♦ “Content Settings” on page 217
- ♦ “Device Management Settings” on page 217
- ♦ “Discovery and Deployment Settings” on page 218
- ♦ “Event and Messaging Settings” on page 218
- ♦ “Infrastructure Management Settings” on page 219
- ♦ “Inventory Settings” on page 219
- ♦ “Reporting Services Settings” on page 220
- ♦ “Asset Management Settings” on page 220
- ♦ “Patch Management Services Settings” on page 221

- 8 When you have finished modifying the setting, click *OK* (or *Apply*) to save your changes.


The configuration setting is inherited by all devices in the folder, including any devices contained in subfolders, unless the setting is overridden on a subfolder or individual device.

25.1.3 Modifying Configuration Settings on a Device

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Devices* tab.
- 2 In the Devices panel (on the *Managed* tab), browse for the device whose settings you want to modify.

- 3 When you find the device, click the device name to display the its details.
- 4 Click the *Settings* tab.
- 5 In the Settings panel, click the settings category (*Content*, *Device Management*, *Infrastructure Management*, and so forth) whose settings you want to modify.

[Devices](#) > [Servers](#) > zendoc1a

 zendoc1a																										
Summary	Inventory	Relationships																								
Settings	Content	Statistics																								
Vulnerabilities																										
<div>Settings</div> <div>Content</div> <div>Device Management</div> <table> <tr> <th>Category</th><th>Description</th><th>Inherited From</th></tr> <tr> <td>Device Refresh Schedule</td><td>Configure the refresh interval for this device.</td><td>(System)</td></tr> <tr> <td>Local Device Logging</td><td>Enable and configure local logging of warnings and errors encountered by this device.</td><td>(System)</td></tr> <tr> <td>Preboot Services</td><td>Configure Preboot Services for this device. Unless you choose to override settings, the values specified in the system configuration, or in individual folder settings, will be used.</td><td>(System)</td></tr> <tr> <td>Remote Management</td><td>Enable and configure remote management for this device.</td><td>(System)</td></tr> <tr> <td>Primary User</td><td>Configure the setting for how the primary user is determined.</td><td>---</td></tr> <tr> <td>Adaptive Agent Throttling</td><td>Configures the throttling rate of downloaded and replicated content for the ZENworks Adaptive Agent.</td><td>---</td></tr> <tr> <td>Enable/Disable Managed Device Agents</td><td>Configure whether each agent on a managed device is enabled.</td><td>(System)</td></tr> </table> <div>Infrastructure Management</div> <div>Inventory</div> <div>Asset Management</div>			Category	Description	Inherited From	Device Refresh Schedule	Configure the refresh interval for this device.	(System)	Local Device Logging	Enable and configure local logging of warnings and errors encountered by this device.	(System)	Preboot Services	Configure Preboot Services for this device. Unless you choose to override settings, the values specified in the system configuration, or in individual folder settings, will be used.	(System)	Remote Management	Enable and configure remote management for this device.	(System)	Primary User	Configure the setting for how the primary user is determined.	---	Adaptive Agent Throttling	Configures the throttling rate of downloaded and replicated content for the ZENworks Adaptive Agent.	---	Enable/Disable Managed Device Agents	Configure whether each agent on a managed device is enabled.	(System)
Category	Description	Inherited From																								
Device Refresh Schedule	Configure the refresh interval for this device.	(System)																								
Local Device Logging	Enable and configure local logging of warnings and errors encountered by this device.	(System)																								
Preboot Services	Configure Preboot Services for this device. Unless you choose to override settings, the values specified in the system configuration, or in individual folder settings, will be used.	(System)																								
Remote Management	Enable and configure remote management for this device.	(System)																								
Primary User	Configure the setting for how the primary user is determined.	---																								
Adaptive Agent Throttling	Configures the throttling rate of downloaded and replicated content for the ZENworks Adaptive Agent.	---																								
Enable/Disable Managed Device Agents	Configure whether each agent on a managed device is enabled.	(System)																								

- 6 Click the setting to display its details page.
- 7 Modify the setting as desired.

For information about the setting, click the *Help* button in ZENworks Control Center or see the following sections:

- ♦ “Content Settings” on page 217
- ♦ “Device Management Settings” on page 217
- ♦ “Discovery and Deployment Settings” on page 218
- ♦ “Event and Messaging Settings” on page 218
- ♦ “Infrastructure Management Settings” on page 219
- ♦ “Inventory Settings” on page 219
- ♦ “Reporting Services Settings” on page 220
- ♦ “Asset Management Settings” on page 220
- ♦ “Patch Management Services Settings” on page 221

- 8 When you have finished modifying the setting, click *OK* (or *Apply*) to save your changes.

25.2 Content Settings

The Content section contains the following settings:

Content Blackout Schedule: Define times when content (bundles, policies, configuration settings, and so forth) is not delivered to devices. For more information, see [Content Blackout Schedule \(../resources/help/settings_sysreplication.html\)](#).

Content Replication: Determine how often content (bundle and policy files) is updated on the ZENworks Primary Servers and Satellites. For more information, see [Content Replication \(../resources/help/settings_contentreplication.html\)](#).

25.3 Device Management Settings

The Device Management section contains the following settings:

Local Device Logging: Configure logging of messages to a managed device's local drive. You can determine what severity level messages are logged and when the log file is backed up. You can also determine what severity level messages are sent to the ZENworks server for viewing in ZENworks Control Center. For more information, see [Local Device Logging \(../resources/help/settings_syslocallogging.html\)](#).

Device Refresh Schedule: Specify how often a device contacts a ZENworks Server to update bundle, policy, configuration, and registration information. You can also specify what to do with a device when it has not contacted a ZENworks Server within a certain number of days. For more information, see [Device Refresh Schedule \(../resources/help/settings_sysrefreshsched.html\)](#).

ZENworks Agent: Configure uninstall and caching settings for the ZENworks Adaptive Agent as well as enable or disable specific Adaptive Agent modules. For more information, see [ZENworks Agent \(../resources/help/settings_agent.html\)](#).

Registration: Control the settings used when registering devices, including how registered devices are named, whether registration rules are enabled, and whether device objects in ZENworks Control Center can be renamed as they update their registration information. For more information, see [Registration \(../resources/help/settings_registration.html\)](#).

ZENworks Explorer Configuration: Configure common settings for ZENworks Explorer component of the ZENworks Adaptive Agent. You can select whether or not you want a bundle to be uninstalled after it is no longer assigned to a device or the device's user. You can also rename the default folder in Windows Explorer, on the Start menu, and in the ZENworks Window where all bundles are placed. For more information, see [ZENworks Explorer Configuration \(../resources/help/settings_applicationbundles.html\)](#).

System Variables: Define variables that can be used to replace paths, names, and so forth as you enter information in ZENworks Control Center. For more information, see [System Variables \(../resources/help/settings_systemvariables.html\)](#).

Preboot Services: Configure settings for devices that use Preboot Services. For more information, see [Preboot Services \(../resources/help/settings_sysimaging.html\)](#).

Primary User: Determine how and when a device's primary user is calculated. For more information, see [Primary User \(../resources/help/settings_primaryuser.html\)](#).

Primary Workstation: Determine how and when a device's primary workstation is calculated. You can also disable the calculation by selecting the *None (do not calculate)* option. For more information, see [Primary Workstation \(../../resources/help/settings_primaryws.html\)](#).

Dynamic Group Refresh Schedule: Determine how often a dynamic group's criteria are applied to devices in order to update membership in the group. Membership in a dynamic group is determined by applying the dynamic group's criteria to devices. If a device meets the criteria, it is added to the group; you cannot manually add devices to a dynamic group or remove them from a dynamic group. For more information, see [Dynamic Group Refresh Schedule \(../../resources/help/settings_dynamicgroupschedule.html\)](#).

Wake-on-LAN: Configure the number of retry attempts to wake up a device and the time interval between the retry attempts. For more information, see [Wake-on-LAN \(../../resources/help/settings_wakeonlan.html\)](#).

Remote Management: Configure Remote Management settings, which are a set of rules that determine the behavior or the execution of the Remote Management service on the managed device. For more information, see [Remote Management \(../../resources/help/settings_sysremotemanagement.html\)](#).

25.4 Discovery and Deployment Settings

The Discovery and Deployment section contains the following settings:

Advertised Discovery Settings: Specify how often you want your ZENworks system to attempt to discover devices on your network that have the ZENworks pre-agent installed. For more information, see [Advertised Discovery Settings \(../../resources/help/settings_discovery_advertised.html\)](#).

Discovery: Control the settings used during the discovery processes, including the maximum number of discovery requests that can be running at one time and the technologies to use for the discovery. You can also specify IP and SNMP settings used by the WMI (Windows Management Instrumentation) and SNMP discovery technologies. For more information, see [Discovery \(../../resources/help/settings_discoverysettings.html\)](#).

Windows Proxy: Specify a managed Windows device in your zone to perform discovery and deployment tasks in place of a ZENworks Server. This is designed primarily to enable ZENworks Servers running on Linux to offload discovery tasks that use Windows-specific discovery technologies such as WMI and WinAPI and deployment tasks that involve Windows managed devices. For more information, see [Windows Proxy \(../../resources/help/settings_winproxysettings.html\)](#).

25.5 Event and Messaging Settings

The Event and Messaging section contains the following settings:

Centralized Message Logging: Configure the settings related to message logging performed by the Primary Server, including automatic message cleanup, e-mail notification, SNMP traps, and UDP forwarding. For more information, see [Centralized Message Logging \(../../resources/help/settings_syscentralizedlogging.html\)](#).

SMTP Settings: Configure the SMTP server for sending the e-mail notifications to ZENworks administrators. For more information, see [SMTP Settings \(../resources/help/settings_smtpsettings.html\)](#).

25.6 Infrastructure Management Settings

The Infrastructure Management section contains the following settings:

Closest Server Default Rule: Define the rule that is used by a device to determine the closest collection, content, and configuration servers when no Closest Server rules have been defined or when none apply. This rule is simply a listing of the servers in the order you want devices to contact them. You cannot add or remove servers from the lists. For more information, see [Closest Server Default Rule \(../resources/help/settings_closestserverdefaultrule.html\)](#).

Closest Server Rules: Create rules that are used to determine which servers a device contacts for the collection, content, and configuration functions, if your ZENworks Management Zone includes more than one server. For more information, see [Closest Server Rules \(../resources/help/settings_closestserverrules.html\)](#).

HTTP Proxy Settings: Define proxy servers you want to use. A proxy server lets a device connect indirectly to a ZENworks Server through the proxy server. The device's ZENworks Adaptive Agent connects to the proxy server, then requests resources from a ZENworks Server. The proxy provides the resource either by connecting to the ZENworks Server or by serving it from a cache. For more information, see [HTTP Proxy Settings \(../resources/help/settings_httpproxy.html\)](#).

System Update Settings: Configure how you want to use the System Updates feature, including how often to check for updates, specifying a download schedule, configuring e-mail notifications, and more. For more information, see [System Update Settings \(../resources/help/settings_systemupdate.html\)](#).

ZENworks News Settings: Configures the server and the schedule for downloading the ZENworks News. For more information, see [ZENworks News Settings \(../resources/help/settings_zenworksnews.html\)](#).

25.7 Inventory Settings

The Inventory section contains the following settings:

Inventory: Configure inventory scanning settings, including on-demand scans, first scans, and recurring scans. You can also specify directories to skip when performing scans and identify software applications that are not contained in the ZENworks Knowledgebase. For more information, see [Inventory \(../resources/help/settings_sysinventory.html\)](#).

Inventory Schedule: Specify when to run an inventory scan, including specifying that scans do not run automatically or specifying a date-specific, recurring, or event-driven scan. For more information, see [Inventory Schedule \(../resources/help/settings_sysinventoryschedule.html\)](#).

Collection Data Form: Configure which demographic data to collect for a device or devices, such as a user's name or telephone, which department the user belongs to, and so on. For more information, see [Collection Data Form \(../resources/help/settings_sysinventorycollectwizard.html\)](#).

Collection Data Form Schedule: Configure how you send out the Collection Data Form. You can schedule it as part of a regular inventory scan, you can use a Device Quick Task, or you can use the Collection Data Form Schedule. For more information, see [Collection Data Form Schedule \(../resources/help/settings_sysinventorywizardschedule.html\)](#).

Inventory Only: Configure inventory scan settings for devices in the zone that don't have the ZENworks Adaptive Agent installed but do have the Inventory Module installed. This type of scan is useful for devices running Windows NT, Windows 95, Windows 98, Windows Me, NetWare, and Mac OS* X. For more information, see [Inventory Only \(../resources/help/settings_sysumi.html\)](#).

Inventory Only Schedule: Configure when to run an Inventory Only scan. For more information, see [Inventory Only Schedule \(../resources/help/settings_sysumischedule.html\)](#).

Inventory Only Reconciliation: Control whether and how new workstations are reconciled to avoid the possibility of duplicates in the database. When a scan is made of a workstation that is new to the Management Zone, it is assigned an identifier. If the identifier is lost, such as by a disk crash, it is assigned a new identifier during the next scan. Reconciliation allows you to check whether the workstation is already in the database. If it is, the identifier in the database is changed to match the new identifier. For more information, see [Inventory Only Reconciliation \(../resources/help/settings_sysinventoryreconcile.html\)](#).

25.8 Reporting Services Settings

The Reporting Services section contains the following settings:

E-mail Notification Settings: Configure the ZENworks Reporting Server for sending e-mail notifications to the ZENworks administrator. For more information, see [E-mail Notification Settings \(../resources/help/cfg_mzset_reptsrv_set.html\)](#).

Folder Sync Schedule: Define the refresh interval when the Custom Report folders that are created in the ZENworks Reporting Server InfoView must synchronize with the ZENworks Control Center. For more information, see [Folder Sync Schedule \(../resources/help/cfg_report_foldersync.html\)](#).

Reset the Passphrase of the ZENworks Reporting Server: Allow the user to reset the Passphrase of the ZENworks Reporting Server. For more information, see [Reset the Passphrase \(../resources/help/cfg_report_resetpassphrase.html\)](#).

File Location Notification Settings: Specify the destination directory for the report instances on the ZENworks Reporting Server or on any other remote server. For more information, see [File Location Notification Settings \(../resources/help/cfg_report_filelocsettings.html\)](#).

FTP Server Notification Settings: Specify the destination on the FTP server where you want to transfer the reporting instances. For more information, see [FTP Server Notification Settings \(../resources/help/cfg_report_ftpsrvrsettings.html\)](#).

25.9 Asset Management Settings

The Asset Management section contains the following settings:

Reports: Configure report settings for Asset Management. For more information, see [Reports \(../resources/help/settings_sysamreport.html\)](#).

Compliance: Set the time of day that license compliance data is refreshed. For more information, see [Compliance \(../resources/help/settings_sysamcompliance.html\)](#).

Usage Monitoring: Enable software usage monitoring. For more information, see [Usage Monitoring \(../resources/help/am_usagemonitor.html\)](#).

Usage Display: Configure whether or not usage data is displayed on License Management pages (Asset Management > License Management tab) in the ZENworks Control Center. For more information, see [Usage Display \(../resources/help/am_usagedisplay.html\)](#).

25.10 Patch Management Services Settings

The Patch Management Services section contains the following settings:

Subscription Service Information: Display information about your subscription, including the status. You can also update your subscription settings. For more information, see [Subscription Service Information \(../resources/help/b9f6zcf.html\)](#).

Configure HTTP Proxy: Configure an HTTP proxy for access to Internet patch subscription. The HTTP proxy server allows ZENworks Patch Management Services to download subscription service over the Internet. For more information, see [Configure HTTP Proxy \(../resources/help/b9f9hi0.html\)](#).

Subscription Download: Configure the subscription download options for the ZENworks primary server. For more information, see [Subscription Download \(../resources/help/b9fa3i3.html\)](#).

Content

VI

ZENworks® replicates and distributes content among Primary Servers, Satellites, and managed devices. This includes the following content:

- ♦ **Bundles:** The files, configuration settings, installation instructions, and so forth required to deploy and manage an application or files on a device. Used in ZENworks Configuration Management and ZENworks Patch Management.
- ♦ **Policies:** The set of rules that control a range of hardware and software configuration settings on managed devices. Used in ZENworks Configuration Management.
- ♦ **Patches:** The files and instructions required to update existing software on a managed device. Used in ZENworks Patch Management.
- ♦ **System Updates:** The software updates for ZENworks system components. Used in ZENworks Configuration Management, ZENworks Asset Management, and ZENworks Patch Management.

The following sections contain more information:

- ♦ [Chapter 26, “Content Repository,” on page 225](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 27, “Content Replication,” on page 229](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 28, “Content Delivery,” on page 235](#)

Each ZENworks® Server contains a content repository. The content repository stores all bundle and policy content that has been replicated to the server and any images that have been captured and stored to the server.

ZENworks 10 Configuration Management supports any filesystem to host the content repository, although each filesystem has advantages and limitations. For example, the XFS filesystem handles very large files, which can be an advantage, depending on the nature of the content in the repository.

A single content repository cannot be shared by multiple Primary Servers. Each server must use its own content repository.

The content repository is self-maintaining. Whenever you add a bundle or policy, the bundle or policy content is added to the appropriate content repositories based upon the replication settings. Whenever you remove a bundle or policy or change which servers host its content, the bundle or policy content is also removed from the appropriate servers.

If necessary, you can move the content repository to a different location. The following sections provide instructions:

- [Section 26.1, “Changing the Location of the Content Repository on a Windows Server,” on page 225](#)
- [Section 26.2, “Changing the Location of the Content Repository on a Linux Server,” on page 227](#)

26.1 Changing the Location of the Content Repository on a Windows Server

The content repository is found in the following location on a Windows server:

```
installation_path\zenworks\work\content-repo
```

You can specify a different disk drive to be your content repository. In Windows, this is done by “mounting” the drive. Mounting is simply pointing an existing path to a hard drive partition without the use of mapped drive letters.

In the following steps, you mount the default content repository location to a disk drive partition, which becomes the new content repository:

- 1 Make sure that the disk drive you want to use is attached to the server and is properly formatted as NTFS.

This disk drive can be an existing or new one for the machine. The hardware must be recognized by the server. However, do not specify a drive letter if you are adding a new disk drive to the machine. Windows does not allow mounting to a drive letter.

2 Because an empty `content-repo` directory must exist in the default location (`installation_path\zenworks\work\content-repo`) to be the pointer to the new content repository location, do one of the following to make sure that there is no content in the default location:

- ♦ If you need to save the content that is now in this directory, rename the existing directory and create a new directory named `content-repo`.

You can later copy the content from this renamed directory to the new content repository location (see [Step 10](#)).

- ♦ If you do not need any of the content in the existing `content-repo` directory, delete the directory and re-create it.
- ♦ If the `content-repo` directory is not present in the path given above, create the path and directory.

3 Click *Start*, right-click the *My Computer* icon, then select *Manage*.

You can also click *Start*, then enter `compmgmt.msc` at the *Run* command line.

4 Select *Disk Management* under the *Storage* section in the left pane.

The disk drive you selected in [Step 1](#) should be displayed in the right pane.

5 (Conditional) If a driver letter is associated with the partition that you want to use as the new content repository location, do the following:

5a In the Computer Management dialog box, right-click the drive's partition.

5b Select *Change Drive Letter and Paths*.

5c Select the drive letter.

5d Click *Remove*, then select *Yes* to confirm.

6 Right-click the partition of the disk drive that you want to use as your content repository, then select *Change Driver Letter and Paths*.

This is the disk drive that you will mount to the `content-repo` directory in [Step 8](#).

7 Click *Add*.

This displays the Add Drive Letter or Path dialog box.

8 Select *Mount in the Following Empty NTFS Folder*, browse for and select the default `content-repo` directory, then click *Next*.

The default directory is `installation_path\zenworks\work\content-repo`.

This mounts the default path to the hard drive partition that you selected in [Step 6](#).

If necessary, format the drive as NTFS using the Computer Management feature in Windows.

9 Click the buttons as necessary to exit and save the configuration change.

10 (Conditional; see [Step 2](#)) Copy the files from the old renamed `content-repo` directory to the new `content-repo` directory.

From this point on, all ZENworks 10 Configuration Management data is written directly to the new content repository location on the selected hard drive partition.

26.2 Changing the Location of the Content Repository on a Linux Server

You can store your data on a local mount or on a network share such as NFS, SMB, or CIFS and mount the share in your `content-repo` directory to access your data.

You can also create a symbolic link on your local hard drive if you want to store your data elsewhere on your local device. However, the existing `content-repo` directory must be deleted.

- 1 (Optional) Run the following command to move the content from the `content-repo` directory to a new directory on the disk to which you want to create the symbolic link:

```
mv /var/opt/novell/zenworks/content-repo/* another-local-directory-on-device
```

- 2 Run the following command to delete the `content-repo` directory:

```
rm -rf /var/opt/novell/zenworks/content-repo/
```

- 3 Run the following command to create the symbolic link to the new directory where you want to store the data:

```
ln -s another-local-directory-on-device /var/opt/novell/zenworks/content-repo
```

See the `ln(1)` man page for more information about how to symbolically link directories.

- 4 ZENworks requires that the ZENworks user has complete ownership rights on the directory to which you have created the symbolic link. Run the following command to make the ZENworks user the owner of this directory:

```
chown zenworks:zenworks -R /var/opt/novell/zenworks/content-repo/
```

See the `chown(1)` man page for more information about how to change ownership of directories.

The following sections provide information on managing content repository locations on Linux:

- ♦ [Section 26.2.1, “Mounting a Share,” on page 227](#)
- ♦ [Section 26.2.2, “Unmounting a Share,” on page 228](#)
- ♦ [Section 26.2.3, “Creating a Permanent Mount,” on page 228](#)
- ♦ [Section 26.2.4, “Moving Existing Content to the New Repository,” on page 228](#)

26.2.1 Mounting a Share

After configuring a share on a remote machine, you can mount it from `/var/opt/novell/zenworks/content-repo` by using the following command:

```
mount -t cifs -o username=username //example.machine.com/share_name /var/opt/novell/zenworks/content-repo
```

In the command, `//example.machine.com/share_name` is the share to mount and `/var/opt/novell/zenworks/content-repo` is the mount point.

If you only need to store the data from part of your content repository on another share, you can also do that. For example, if you need to store your ZENworks image files on another share, you can use the following command:

```
mount -t cifs -o username=username //example.machine.com/share_name /var/opt/  
novell/zenworks/content-repo/images
```

Or, to store bundle and policy content on another share, you can use the following command:

```
mount -t cifs -o username=username //example.machine.com/share_name /var/opt/  
novell/zenworks/content-repo/content
```

26.2.2 Unmounting a Share

This mount that you created in [Section 26.2.1, “Mounting a Share,” on page 227](#) is temporary; the share is unmounted when the operating system is shut down or rebooted. You can also use the following command to manually unmount the share:

```
umount /var/opt/novell/zenworks/content-repo
```

26.2.3 Creating a Permanent Mount

To ensure that the mount occurs each time the Linux server starts, you must add the following entry to your `/etc/fstab` configuration file:

```
//example.machine.com/share_name /var/opt/novell/zenworks/content-repo cifs  
credentials=path_to_credentials_file 0 0
```

The credentials file listed in the command contains a username and password. For more information, see the `mount.cifs(8)` man page. The format of the credentials file is:

```
username=value
```

```
password=value
```

26.2.4 Moving Existing Content to the New Repository

After you change the location of a content repository by mounting a new share, any content in the old location is no longer available. To make it available, you must move it to the new repository.

For information about ownership issues, see [TID 7000673 \(http://support.novell.com\)](http://support.novell.com).

When you add a bundle or policy that contains files, the files are uploaded to the content repository on the ZENworks® Server. In addition, the ZENworks database is updated to reflect the addition of the bundle or policy and its content.

ZENworks Servers and Satellite devices, collectively referred to as content servers, periodically read the ZENworks database to discover new bundles and policies. Each content server that does not have the bundle or policy content retrieves it from the content server where it resides.

There are a variety of settings you can use to control how content is replicated among content servers in your zone.

Content Replication settings can be inherited from the following locations:

- ♦ **(System):** The bundle is inheriting the setting established for the Management Zone (*Configuration* tab > *Management Zone Settings* > *Content* > *Content Replication*).
- ♦ **Folder:** The bundle is inheriting the setting established for one of its parent folders.
- ♦ **Device:** The bundle is not inheriting the setting, but the setting is configured directly on the bundle.
- ♦ **---**: The bundle is not inheriting the setting and the setting is not configured directly on the bundle. In other words, the setting is not configured at the system level, the folder level, or the bundle level.

If the settings are configured at the system or folder level, click *Override settings* to enable you to configure the setting at the bundle, policy, or folder level.

Content replication settings let you:

- ♦ Specify whether content is replicated to new content servers by default.
- ♦ Manually include content on or exclude content from content servers.
- ♦ Schedule how often replication occurs.
- ♦ Set a limit, or throttle, on the maximum amount of content that is replicated per second from one content server to another.

For information about performing these tasks, see the following sections:

- ♦ [Section 27.1, “Configuring Content Replication at the Management Zone Level,” on page 229](#)
- ♦ [Section 27.2, “Replicating Content to New Content Servers,” on page 231](#)
- ♦ [Section 27.3, “Including or Excluding Content,” on page 232](#)

27.1 Configuring Content Replication at the Management Zone Level

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 In the Management Zone Settings panel, click *Content* > *Content Replication*.
- 3 Fill in the fields:

Primary Server Recurring Content Replication Schedule: Use the *Days*, *Hours*, and *Minutes* fields to set the schedule.

You can use any combination of the fields. For example, to specify every 30 hours, you can enter 30 hours or 1 day, 6 hours.

NOTE: If a Satellite device is at the end of a very slow link (for example, a 128K WAN), you might want to disable the content replication schedule so that content can be manually replicated by using the `zac wake-cdp (cdp)` command. You could also use a `chron` job to run this command as needed, because the current content replication schedule does not allow specific days/dates or times to be set (for example, Saturday or Sunday). For more information about the `zac wake-cdp` command, see “[Content Distribution Commands](#) in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*”.

For Windows, create the following string value in the registry:

```
HKEY-LOCAL-  
MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Novell\Zenworks\DisableContentReplicationSchedule and set  
the value to "true."
```

For Linux, in the `/etc/opt/novell/zenworks/conf/xplatzmd.properties` file, add the following line:

```
DisableContentReplicationSchedule=true
```

Primary Server Output Throttling in KB/Sec: Select the throttling rate you want to use.

This rate applies to all ZENworks Servers in your zone. You cannot set individual throttling rates.

The content replication throttling rate determines the maximum amount of content (in kilobytes per second) that a ZENworks Server transfers when replicating content to other content servers or when distributing content to managed devices.

By default, no throttling rate is imposed, which means that a ZENworks Server uses all available bandwidth.

- 4 Click *Apply* or *OK* to save the changes.

27.1.1 Manually Configuring Advanced Content Replication Settings

You can manually configure the following advanced content replication settings on a Satellite device:

- ♦ “[Content Download Limit](#)” on page 230
- ♦ “[Web Service Timeout](#)” on page 231

Content Download Limit

By default, 50 pieces of content (MSIs, text files, etc.) are downloaded every five minutes. Depending on your circumstances, you can change the number of pieces of content downloaded per download session.

For example, you might want to create Satellite devices in your main office that you want to later deploy in the field. If you have a lot of content to replicate, you might want to increase the Content Download Limit because the connection to the ZENworks Primary Server is very fast. Or, if a

Satellite device is across a slow WAN link and your ZENworks Content Repository has many large MSI files to replicate, you might want to decrease the number of pieces of content to download per session. The minimum value you can use is 50, which is the default number.

To modify the Content Download Limit:

For Windows, create the following string value in the registry on the Satellite device:

`HKEY-LOCAL-MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Novell\Zenworks\CDPDownloadLimit` and set the value to the desired number.

For Linux, in the `/etc/opt/novell/zenworks/conf/xplatzmd.properties` properties file on the Satellite device, add the following line:

```
CDPDownloadLimit=xxx
```

where `xxx` is the number of pieces of content you want downloaded per download session.

Web Service Timeout

You can adjust the Web Service Timeout value to suit your needs. For example, if a Satellite device is across a slow WAN link and there is missing content, the default 30-second timeout value might not be long enough to make the Web service call.

To modify the Web Service Timeout on a Satellite device:

For Windows, create the following string value in the registry on the Satellite device:

`HKEY-LOCAL-MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Novell\Zenworks\CDPWebCallWaitTimeout` and set the value to the desired number of milliseconds.

For Linux, in the `/etc/opt/novell/zenworks/conf/xplatzmd.properties` file on the Satellite device, add the following line:

```
CDPWebCallWaitTimeout=xxx
```

where `xxx` is the desired timeout value in milliseconds.

27.2 Replicating Content to New Content Servers

By default, when a new content server (ZENworks Server or Satellite devices) is added to the zone, all bundle and policy content is replicated to that content server. You can, however, choose not to replicate a specific bundle or content policy.

For example, assume that you have a bundle for Microsoft* Office. You've included it on specific content servers and don't want it replicated to additional servers. To keep this from happening, you modify the Microsoft Office bundle's replication settings to exclude replication to new content servers.

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, go to the details page for the bundle or policy whose replication setting you want to modify.
- 2 Click the tab.

The *Primary Server Replication Settings* panel and the *Satellite Server Replication Settings* panel display whether new content servers are included (receive the content) or excluded (don't receive the content).

- 3 In the appropriate panel, click *Edit* to display the Include/Exclude New Servers dialog box.
- 4 Select *Included* to include new servers in replication of the content.
or
Select *Excluded* to exclude new servers.
- 5 Click *OK* to save the changes.

27.3 Including or Excluding Content

The default replication setting determines whether content is automatically replicated to new content servers (see [Section 27.2, “Replicating Content to New Content Servers,” on page 231](#)). You configure the setting for each bundle or policy. If you choose to include a bundle’s or policy’s content on new content servers, it is replicated to all new servers; likewise, if you choose to exclude the content, it is not replicated to any new servers.

In some cases, the default replication settings might not give you the desired replication scope for your content, or the scope might change. If this occurs, you can manually include content on or exclude it from specific content servers. There are three ways to do this:

- ♦ [Section 27.3.1, “Managing a Single Piece of Content on Multiple Content Servers,” on page 232](#)
- ♦ [Section 27.3.2, “Managing Multiple Pieces of Content on a Single Content Server,” on page 233](#)
- ♦ [Section 27.3.3, “Managing Multiple Pieces of Content on Multiple Content Servers,” on page 233](#)

27.3.1 Managing a Single Piece of Content on Multiple Content Servers

This section provides instructions for managing the replication of a single bundle’s or policy’s content to multiple content servers.

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, go to the details page for the bundle or policy whose content replication you want to manage.
- 2 Click the *Content Server* tab.

The *Primary Server Replication Status* panel and the *Satellite Server Replication Status* panel display all content servers in the zone. If the bundle or policy content is included on a content server, the *Included* column displays a ✓ icon.

- 3 To change the replication status for a content server, select the check box next to the server, then click *Include* to include the content on the server, or click *Exclude* to exclude the content from the server.

As you include or exclude content servers, be aware of the following replication rules:

- ♦ If a ZENworks Server is the parent server for one or more Satellite devices, you can’t exclude the content from the ZENworks Server without first excluding it from the Satellite devices.

- ♦ If you have only one ZENworks Server in your Management Zone, you can't exclude the content from it.
- ♦ You can't include a Satellite devices without first including the Satellite devices's parent ZENworks Server.

27.3.2 Managing Multiple Pieces of Content on a Single Content Server

This section provides instructions for managing the replication of the content for multiple bundles or policies to a single content servers.

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, go to the details page for the content server whose content replication you want to manage.
- 2 Click the *Content* tab.

The Replication Settings panel displays all bundles and policies in the zone. If the bundle or policy content is included on the content server, the *Included* column displays a ✓ icon.

- 3 To change the replication status for a bundle or policy, select the check box next to the bundle or policy, then click *Include* to include its content on the server, or click *Exclude* to exclude its content from the server.

As you include or exclude content from the server, be aware of the following replication rules:

- ♦ If a ZENworks Server is the parent server for one or more Satellite devices, you can't exclude the content from the ZENworks Server without first excluding it from the Satellite devices.
- ♦ If you have only one ZENworks Server in your Management Zone, you can't exclude the content from it.
- ♦ You can't include a Satellite devices without first including the Satellite devices's parent ZENworks Server.

27.3.3 Managing Multiple Pieces of Content on Multiple Content Servers

You can use the Specify Content Wizard to include or exclude multiple pieces of content on multiple content servers. For example, you might have four bundles that you want included on only two of your four content servers. Rather than managing the replication for the individual bundles (see [Section 27.3.1, “Managing a Single Piece of Content on Multiple Content Servers,” on page 232](#)) or the individual content servers (see [Section 27.3.2, “Managing Multiple Pieces of Content on a Single Content Server,” on page 233](#)), you can use the wizard to manage the replication for all four bundles and content servers at one time.

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Devices* tab, then click the *Servers* folder to open it.
- 2 In the *Server Tasks* list in the left navigation pane, click *Specify Content* to launch the wizard.
- 3 Follow the prompts to complete the wizard.

If you need more information about a wizard page, click the *Help* button or refer to the following table:

Wizard Page	Details
Include or Exclude Content Servers/Satellite devices	<p>Move the content servers on which you want to include the content to the <i>Included</i> list. Move the content servers on which you want to exclude the content to the <i>Excluded</i> list.</p> <p>As you include or exclude content servers, be aware of the following replication rules:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ If a ZENworks Server is the parent server for one or more Satellite devices, you can't exclude content from the ZENworks Server without also excluding it from the Satellite devices.♦ If you have only one ZENworks Server in your Management Zone, you can't exclude the content from it.♦ You can't include a Satellite devices without also including the Satellite devices's parent ZENworks Server.
New Servers Added to the System page	Select whether the content is included on or excluded from content servers added in the future.
Select Content to Update page	Identify the content you want affected by moving it from the <i>Available Content</i> list to the <i>Selected Content</i> list.

You can also launch the Specify Content Wizard from the following locations:

- ♦ Bundles page
- ♦ Policies page
- ♦ Configuration page > Server Hierarchy panel

Content delivery, or distribution, refers to the process of transferring bundle and policy content from a content server (ZENworks® Primary Server or Satellite with the Content role) to a managed device.

There are a variety of settings you can use to determine how content is delivered to managed devices, such as setting up Closest Server rules, setting delivery blackout dates for when content can't be downloaded, and setting how often you want managed devices to look for new content to download.

For information about performing these tasks, see the following sections:

- ♦ [Section 28.1, “Setting Up Closest Server Rules,” on page 235](#)
- ♦ [Section 28.2, “Scheduling Delivery Blackout Dates,” on page 235](#)
- ♦ [Section 28.3, “Setting the Device Refresh Schedule,” on page 236](#)

28.1 Setting Up Closest Server Rules

When you have multiple content servers, you can use the Closest Server rules to determine which content server a managed device uses to download content. The Closest Server rules let you map devices to content servers based on network addresses (DNS names and IP addresses).

For more information, see [Chapter 9, “Closest Server Rules,” on page 97](#).

28.2 Scheduling Delivery Blackout Dates

If there are times when you don't want managed devices to download content, you can create a content blackout schedule. Schedules can be defined at the following levels:

- ♦ **Management Zone:** The schedule is inherited by all devices.
- ♦ **Device Folder:** The schedule is inherited by all devices within the folder and its subfolders. It overrides the Management Zone blackout schedule.
- ♦ **Device:** The schedule applies only to the device for which it is defined. It overrides any schedules set at the Management Zone and folder levels.

A blackout schedule can include one or more time periods.

To create a content blackout schedule:

- 1 Launch ZENworks Control Center.
- 2 Do one of the following:
 - ♦ To create a content blackout schedule for your Management Zone, click the *Configuration* tab, then click *Content* (in the Management Zone Settings panel) > *Content Blackout Schedule*.

- ♦ To create a content blackout schedule for a device folder, open the folder's details page, then click *Settings > Content* (in the Settings panel) > *Content Blackout Schedule*.
- ♦ To create a content blackout schedule for a device, open the device's details page, click *Settings > Content* (in the Settings panel) > *Content Blackout Schedule*.

[Devices](#) > [Workstations](#) > [zendocwks1](#) > [Content Blackout Schedule](#)

zendocwks1

Content Blackout Schedule

Configuration of the blackout schedule for preventing content delivery to managed devices.

Current: /Devices/Workstations/zendocwks1

[Revert](#) the settings to: (Not Configured)

Content Blackout Schedule			
Add Remove			
<input type="checkbox"/> Start Date	Start Time	End Date	End Time
No items available.			

- 3 If you are creating content blackout schedules for a device or device folder, click *Override settings* to activate the Content Blackout Schedule panel.
- 4 Click *Add* to display the Specify Blackout Time Period dialog box, then fill in the following fields:

Start Date: Select the first date you want to include in the schedule.

End Date: Select the last date you want to include in the schedule. The blackout time period (specified by the start and end times) occurs on each day from the start date to the end date.

Start Time: Select the hour you want the blackout time period to start each day.

End Time: Select the hour you want the blackout time period to end each day. If you want the blackout time period to extend for 24 hours, select the same time as the start time.
- 5 Click *OK* to save the blackout period.
- 6 Repeat [Step 4](#) to create additional blackout periods.
- 7 When you are finished, click *OK* or *Apply* to save the schedule.

28.3 Setting the Device Refresh Schedule

At device startup, the ZENworks Adaptive Agent on a device contacts a ZENworks Server to refresh its information. If information changes after startup, the Adaptive Agent must refresh its information again before the changes can show up on the device.

If the refreshed information indicates that there is new content to be downloaded, the Adaptive Agent contacts its content server and begins the download process.

You can use the device refresh schedule to determine how often a device contacts a ZENworks Server to update bundle, policy, configuration, and registration information. Schedules can be defined at the following levels:

- ♦ **Management Zone:** The schedule is inherited by all devices.
- ♦ **Device Folder:** The schedule is inherited by all devices within the folder and its subfolders. It overrides the Management Zone schedule.
- ♦ **Device:** The schedule applies only to the device for which it is defined. It overrides any schedules set at the Management Zone and folder levels.

To create a device refresh schedule:

1 Launch ZENworks Control Center.

2 Do one of the following:

- ♦ To create a device refresh schedule for your Management Zone, click the *Configuration* tab, then click *Device Management* (in the Management Zone Settings panel) > *Device Refresh Schedule*.
- ♦ To create a device refresh schedule for a device folder, open the folder's details page, then click *Settings* > *Device Management* (in the Settings panel) > *Device Refresh Schedule*.
- ♦ To create a device refresh schedule for a device, open the device's details page, then click *Settings* > *Content* (in the Settings panel) > *Device Refresh Schedule*.

[Devices](#) > [Workstations](#) > [zendocwks1](#) > [Device Refresh Schedule](#)

Device Refresh Schedule

Configure the refresh interval for this device.
Current: /Devices/Workstations/zendocwks1
[Revert](#) the settings to: (System)

Device Refresh Schedule

☐ **Manual Refresh**
Device won't get refreshed until the user manually does so

☒ **Timed Refresh**

Full Refresh Schedule
Refresh everything: Policies, Bundles, Settings, Registration, etc.

0 Days 12 Hours 0 Minutes

☒ **Random Time to Wait**
Minimum: 300 Seconds Maximum: 360 Seconds

Partial Refresh Schedule
Only perform Policies, Settings, and Registration refresh

0 Days 2 Hours 0 Minutes

OK Apply Reset Cancel

3 If you are creating a device refresh schedule for a device or device folder, click *Override settings* to activate the Device Refresh Schedule panel, then choose from the following schedules:

Manual Refresh: If you want a device refreshed only when its user manually initiates the refresh, select *Manual Refresh*, then click *Apply*. Users can initiate a refresh by clicking the ZENworks icon located in the desktop's notification area (system tray).

Timed Refresh: Select *Timed Refresh* if you want to establish a refresh schedule. You can use a Full Refresh Schedule or a Partial Refresh Schedule:

- ♦ **Full Refresh Schedule:** Defines how often you want a device to update all of its information from the ZENworks Server, including bundle, policy, setting, and registration information. Use the following fields to create the full refresh schedule:
 - ♦ **Days, Hours, Minutes:** Specifies the amount of time between refreshes. For example, to set a refresh interval of 8.5 hours, you would specify 0 Days, 8 Hours, 30 Minutes. The default is 12 hours.
 - ♦ **Random Time to Wait:** Select this option to ensure that multiple devices with the same refresh schedule do not all initiate their refresh at the same time. For example, if you have 1000 devices with the same refresh schedule, you might overburden your

ZENworks Server. By selecting this option, the device waits a randomly generated amount of time before initiating its refresh. Use the *Minimum* and *Maximum* fields to specify the range (in seconds) for the randomly generated time.

- ♦ **Partial Refresh Schedule:** Defines how often you want a device to update its policy, configuration setting, and registration information from the ZENworks Server. Bundle information is not updated.

In the *Days*, *Hours*, and *Minutes* fields, specify the amount of time between refreshes. For example, to set a refresh interval of 3 hours, you would specify 0 Days, 3 Hours, 0 Minutes. The default is 2 hours.

The *Timed Refresh* setting is applicable to both the full and partial refreshes.

The refresh interval is not reset until the device refresh is complete. For example, assume you set a refresh interval of 8 hours. The device's first refresh occurs at 6:00 p.m. and takes 13 seconds to complete. The second refresh occurs at 2:00:13 a.m. (8 hours after the refresh was completed at 6:00:13). If the second refresh takes 15 seconds to complete, the third refresh occurs at 10:00:28 a.m.

- 4 When you are finished, click *OK* or *Apply* to save the schedule.

The following sections provide information about connecting your ZENworks® Management Zone to an authoritative user source (Microsoft Active Directory* or Novell® eDirectory™) and managing how users log in to the ZENworks Management Zone:

- ♦ [Chapter 29, “User Sources,” on page 241](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 30, “User Authentication,” on page 249](#)

Novell® ZENworks® 10 Configuration Management lets you assign content to users as well as devices. Device-assigned content is available whenever the device is running and connected to the network; user-assigned content is available only when the user is logged in to the Management Zone. For example, if you assign a bundle to a user, the bundle is available only after the user logs in.

Unlike devices, users are not defined in your Management Zone. Instead, you connect to the LDAP directory that you want to use as your authoritative user source. If necessary, you can connect to multiple directories.

NOTE: After you define a user source, the ZENworks Adaptive Agent automatically prompts device users to log in to the ZENworks Management Zone. If you do not want users to receive this prompt, you can uninstall or disable the User Management module at the ZENworks Adaptive Agent level. For more information, see [Section 14, “Configuring Adaptive Agent Settings after Deployment,” on page 135](#).

The following sections provide instructions to define user sources:

- ♦ [Section 29.1, “Prerequisites,” on page 241](#)
- ♦ [Section 29.2, “Managing User Sources,” on page 242](#)
- ♦ [Section 29.3, “Providing LDAP Load Balancing and Fault Tolerance,” on page 246](#)

29.1 Prerequisites

- ❑ **Minimum directory version:** Novell eDirectory™ 8.7.3 or Microsoft Active Directory on Windows 2000 SP4.
- ❑ **Minimum LDAP version:** LDAPv3
- ❑ **Minimum user account rights:** Read rights.

For Active Directory, you can use a basic user account. This provides sufficient read access to the directory.

For eDirectory, you need inheritable read rights to the following attributes: CN, O, OU, C, DC, GUID, WM:NAME DNS, and Object Class. You can assign the rights at the directory’s root context or at another context you designate as the ZENworks root context.

The username and password used to access the user source directory are stored in clear-text format on the ZENworks Linux Primary servers in the `/etc/CASA/authtoken/svc/iaRealms.xml` file. By default, the access to this file is limited because of security reasons.

- ❑ **DNS name resolution:** With Active Directory, your ZENworks Servers (in particular, the DNS clients on the ZENworks Server) must be able to resolve the DNS name of each Active Directory domain defined as a user source. Otherwise, users from the Active Directory domain cannot log in to the ZENworks Management Zone.

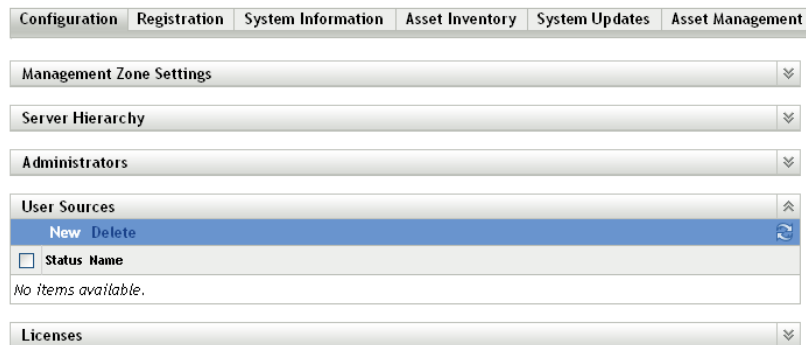
29.2 Managing User Sources

The following sections contain more information:

- ♦ [Section 29.2.1, “Adding User Sources,” on page 242](#)
- ♦ [Section 29.2.2, “Deleting User Sources,” on page 245](#)
- ♦ [Section 29.2.3, “Editing User Sources,” on page 245](#)
- ♦ [Section 29.2.4, “Adding a Container from a User Source,” on page 245](#)

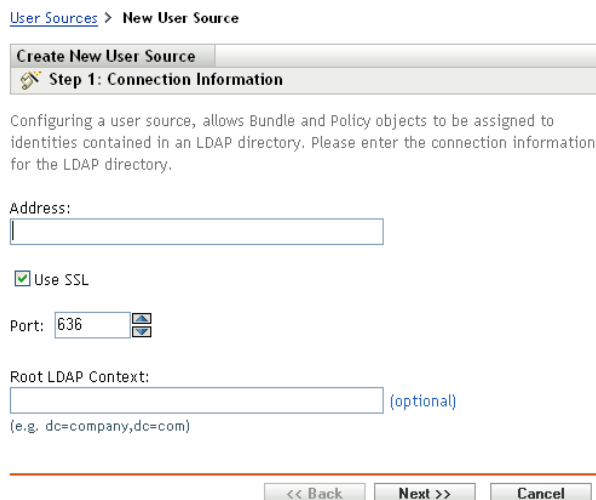
29.2.1 Adding User Sources

1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.



The screenshot shows the ZENworks Control Center interface with the **Configuration** tab selected. The left sidebar contains a tree view with the following items: **Management Zone Settings**, **Server Hierarchy**, **Administrators**, **User Sources**, and **Licenses**. The **User Sources** item is expanded, showing a sub-menu with **New** and **Delete** options. The main content area displays the **User Sources** panel, which includes a table with columns **Status** and **Name**. Below the table, it states "No items available."

2 In the User Sources panel, click *New* to launch the Create New User Source Wizard.




The screenshot shows the **Create New User Source** wizard, specifically **Step 1: Connection Information**. The wizard includes a description: "Configuring a user source, allows Bundle and Policy objects to be assigned to identities contained in an LDAP directory. Please enter the connection information for the LDAP directory." The form contains the following fields: **Address:** (text input), **Use SSL:** (checked checkbox), **Port:** (text input with value 636), and **Root LDAP Context:** (text input with value (optional) and example (e.g. dc=company,dc=com)). At the bottom, there are three buttons: **<< Back**, **Next >>**, and **Cancel**.

3 Follow the prompts to create the connection to the user source.

For information about each of the wizard pages, click the *Help* button or refer to the following table:

Wizard Page	Details
Connection Information page	<p>Specify the information required to create a connection to the LDAP directory:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ Address: Specify the IP address or DNS hostname of the server where the LDAP directory resides.♦ Use SSL: By default, this option is enabled. Disable the option if the LDAP server is not using the SSL (Secure Socket Layer) protocol.♦ Port: This field defaults to the standard SSL port (636) or non-SSL port (389) depending on whether the <i>Use SSL</i> option is enabled or disabled. If your LDAP server is listening on a different port, select that port number.♦ Root Context: The root context establishes the point in the directory where you can begin to browse for user containers. Specifying a root context can enable you to browse less of the directory, but it is optional. If you don't specify a root context, the directory's root container becomes the entry point.
Certificate Page	<p>(Conditional) If you selected Use SSL on the previous Wizard page (Connection Information), the Certificate page displays as the next step in the Wizard. Ensure that the Certificate is correct.</p>
Credentials page	<p>Specify a username and password for accessing the directory:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ Username: Specify the username for a user that has read-only access to the directory. The user can have more than read-only access, but read-only access is all that is required and recommended. For Novell eDirectory access, use standard LDAP notation. For example: <code>cn=admin_read_only,ou=users,o=mycompany</code> For Microsoft Active Directory, use standard domain notation. For example: <code>AdminReadOnly@mycompany.com</code>♦ Password: Specify the password for the user you specified in the <i>Username</i> field.

Wizard Page	Details
User Containers page	<p>After you connect to an LDAP directory as a user source, you can define the containers within the directory that you want exposed. The number of user containers you define is determined by how much of the directory you want to expose. Consider the following example:</p> <div> <pre> graph TD MyCompany --> EMEA MyCompany --> ASAPAC MyCompany --> AMERICAS EMEA --> Accounting EMEA --> Sales EMEA --> Servers EMEA --> Services EMEA --> Groups Accounting --> Users Accounting --> Groups Sales --> Users Sales --> Groups Servers --> Users Servers --> Groups Services --> Users Services --> Groups </pre> </div> <p>Assume that you want to enable all users in the Accounting and Sales containers to receive ZENworks content. In addition, you want to be able to access the user groups located in the Accounting, Sales, and Groups containers in order to distribute content based on those groups. To gain access to the users and groups, you have two options:</p> <p>Assume that you want to expose only the user and user groups in the Accounting, Sales, and Groups containers. To gain access to those users and groups, you have two options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ You can add MyCompany/EMEA as a user container, so all containers located below EMEA are visible in ZENworks Control Center, including the Servers and Services containers. Only users and user groups located in the EMEA containers are visible (servers and services are not), but the structure is still exposed. ♦ You can add MyCompany/EMEA/Accounting as one user container, MyCompany/EMEA/Sales as a second container, and MyCompany/EMEA/Groups as a third container. Only these containers become visible as folders beneath the MyCompany directory reference in ZENworks Control Center. <p>To add the containers where users reside:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click <i>Add</i> to display the Add User Container dialog box. 2. In the <i>Context</i> field, click  to browse for and select the desired container. 3. In the <i>Display Name</i> field, specify the name you want used for the user container when it is displayed in ZENworks Control Center. 4. Click <i>OK</i> to add the container to the list.

29.2.2 Deleting User Sources

When you delete a source, all assignments and messages for the source's users are removed. You cannot undo a source deletion.

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 In the User Sources panel, select the check box next to the user source, then click *Delete*.
- 3 Click *OK* to confirm the deletion.

29.2.3 Editing User Sources

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 In the User Sources panel, click the underlined link for a user source.
- 3 You can edit the following settings:

Username and Password: Click *Edit*, edit the fields, then click *OK*.

The ZENworks system uses the username to access the LDAP directory. The username must provide read-only access to the directory. You can specify a username that provides more than read-only access, but read-only access is all that is required and recommended.

For Novell eDirectory access, use standard LDAP notation when specifying the username. For example:

```
cn=admin_read_only,ou=users,o=mycompany
```

For Microsoft Active Directory, use standard domain notation. For example:

```
AdminReadOnly@mycompany.com
```

NOTE: If you edit the user source either to enable or disable the *Use SSL* option, you must restart the ZENworks services on the server or the authentication to the user source fails.

Root Context: Click *Edit*, specify the root context, then click *OK*.

The root context establishes the point in the directory where you can begin to browse for user containers. Specifying a root context can enable you to browse less of the directory, but it is completely optional. If you don't specify a root context, the directory's root container becomes the entry point. Click *Edit* to modify the root context.

Description: Click *Edit*, modify the optional information about the user source, then click *OK*.


User Containers: For more information, see [Section 29.2.4, "Adding a Container from a User Source,"](#) on page 245. You can also remove or rename a user container.

29.2.4 Adding a Container from a User Source

After you've defined a user source in your Management Zone, you can add containers from that source at any time.


- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 In the User Sources panel, click the user source.

[Configuration](#) > zen-ad-domain.zenworks.lab.novell.com

General	
Name:	zen-ad-domain.zenworks.lab.novell.com
Directory Type:	Active Directory
Communication Status:	
Username and Password: (Edit)	cn=ReadOnlyUser,cn=users,DC=zen-ad-domain,DC=zenworks,DC=lab,DC=novell,DC=com
Authentication Mechanisms: (Edit)	Kerberos
Use SSL:	Yes (No)
Root Context: (Edit)	DC=zen-ad-domain,DC=zenworks,DC=lab,DC=novell,DC=com
Description: (Edit)	

User Containers	
Add Replace Remove Rename	
<input type="checkbox"/> Context	Name
<input type="checkbox"/> /zen-ad-domain.zenworks.lab.novell.com/Users	Users

- 3 In the User Containers panel, click *Add* to display the Add User Container dialog box, then fill in the following fields:

Context: Click  to browse for and select the container you want to add.

Display Name: Specify the name you want used for the user container when it is displayed in ZENworks Control Center. The name cannot be the same as the name of any other user containers.

- 4 Click *OK* to add the user container.

The container, and its users and user groups, is now available on the *Users* page.

29.3 Providing LDAP Load Balancing and Fault Tolerance

If you have multiple LDAP servers for access to your user source (directory), you can configure your ZENworks Servers to know about each of the LDAP servers. This provides both load balancing and fault tolerance.

For example, if you have multiple ZENworks Servers, you can configure each one to access the user source through a different LDAP server. This distributes the workload more evenly among the LDAP servers.

Likewise, for each ZENworks Server, you can list multiple LDAP servers through which it can connect to the user source. If one of the LDAP servers becomes unavailable, the ZENworks Server uses another LDAP server.

To define additional LDAP servers for a ZENworks Server:

- 1 Copy the `alt-servers.properties.sample` file to a new file called `alt-servers.properties`. The file is located in the following directory on the ZENworks Server:
 - ♦ Windows: `c:\program files\novell\zenworks\conf\datamodel\authsource`
 - ♦ Linux: `/etc/opt/novell/zenworks/datamodel/authsource`
- 2 Change the `alt-servers.properties` file to include the user source name and list of LDAP servers that can be used to access it.

The file, shown below, contains instructions for formatting the entries.

```

# Sample alt-servers.properties file.
#
# The alt-servers.properties file allows you to configure how this server
will connect to a particular user source.
# When connecting to a LDAP user source, ZENworks will try to connect to
the servers in the order listed in this file.
# This allows for fail-over to other LDAP servers and for load
distribution, if different ZENworks Primary Servers are
# configured with the server addresses in a different order.
#
# * The [user-source-name] must exactly match how the user source name
appears on the configuration page in ZCC.
# * You must specify the LDAP port along with each server address.
# * SSL is configured for the entire user source, not for each individual
server. You must specify either the
#   SSL port or the clear text port for all servers, depending on how the
user source is configured in ZCC.
# * If the server-list.properties file contains an entry for a user source,
ZENworks will not try to connect to the
#   server address configured in ZCC. It only tries the addresses listed in
the properties file.
# * If you create or modify the server-list.properties file, you will need
to restart the Novell ZENworks Server and
#   Novell ZENworks Loader services for it to take effect.
# * Performance will be impacted if one or more of the servers at the top
of the list are down, as ZENworks attempts to
#   connect to the servers in order. This is particularly true of the CASA
authentication token service, which is
#   contacted when a user tries to log in to ZENworks on a workstation.
#
# Format:
#
# [user-source-name]=\
#   [host1]:[port] \
#   [host2]:[port] \
#   [host3]:[port]
#
# Example:
#
MY_EDIR_TREE=\
  edir1.novell.com:636 \
  edir2.novell.com:636 \
  edir3.novell.com:636 \
  edir4.novell.com:636

```

3 Restart the ZENworks Server.

- 4 Repeat [Step 1](#) through [Step 3](#) for each ZENworks Server for which you want to define additional LDAP servers.

The following sections provide information about authentication of users to a ZENworks® Management Zone.

- ♦ [Section 30.1, “User Source Authentication,” on page 249](#)
- ♦ [Section 30.2, “Credential Storage,” on page 250](#)
- ♦ [Section 30.3, “Disabling ZENworks User Authentication,” on page 250](#)
- ♦ [Section 30.4, “Troubleshooting User Authentication,” on page 251](#)

30.1 User Source Authentication

By default, a user is automatically authenticated to the Management Zone when he or she logs in to an LDAP directory (Novell® eDirectory™ or Microsoft Active Directory) that has been defined as a user source in the Management Zone. User authentication to ZENworks can occur only if the user's LDAP directory (or the user's LDAP directory context) is defined as a user source in ZENworks.

The ZENworks Adaptive Agent integrates with the Windows* Login or Novell Login client to provide a single login experience for users. When users enter their eDirectory or Active Directory credentials in the Windows or Novell client, they are logged in to the Management Zone if the credentials match the ones in a ZENworks user source. Otherwise, a separate ZENworks login screen prompts the user for the correct credentials.

For example, assume that a user has accounts in two eDirectory trees: Tree1 and Tree2. Tree1 is defined as a user source in the Management Zone, but Tree2 is not. If the user logs in to Tree1, he or she is automatically logged in to the Management Zone. However, if the user logs in to Tree2, the Adaptive Agent login screen appears and prompts the user for the Tree1 credentials.

If a user logs in for the first time in to a device that has more than one user source enabled, the user is prompted to select the user source and enter the user source credentials. During subsequent logins, the user is automatically logged in to the same user source selected during the first login. However, if you do not want the user to be prompted to select the user source during the first login, perform the following steps to enable seamless login on the device:

- 1 Open the Registry Editor.
- 2 Go to HKLM/Software/Novell/ZENworks/ZenLgn/.
- 3 Create a DWORD called EnableSeamlessLogin and set the value to 1.

If seamless login is enabled, a user's first login to a device might be slow. This is because all the existing user sources are searched and the user is logged in to the first user source that matches the user account. If many users use the same device, subsequent logins might also be slow because the user information might not be cached on the device.

To reduce the login time, specify the default user source to enable the user to seamlessly log in to the device:

- 1 Open the Registry Editor.
- 2 Go to HKLM/Software/Novell/ZENworks/ZenLgn/.

- 3 Create a String called DefaultRealm and set the value to desired user source.

For example, if all the users should log in to a user source named POLICY-TREE, create a String called DefaultRealm and set its value to POLICY-TREE.

If the login to the specified default user source fails, the other existing user sources are searched and the user is logged in to the user source that matches the user account.

On a Windows XP, Windows 2000, or Windows 2003 device, the user can choose to view the status of the login during the process of logging in to ZENworks.

To enable the status messages to be displayed on the screen:

- 1 Open the Registry Editor.
- 2 Go to HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\Novell\NWGINA.
- 3 Create a DWORD called EnableStatusMessages and set the value to 1.

You can enable status messages only in the English version of Updates for ZENworks 10 Configuration Management SP2 (10.2.x).

NOTE: Authentication using a biometric device or smart card is not supported.

30.2 Credential Storage

ZENworks uses Novell CASA (Common Authentication Services Adapter) to enable single sign-on. When the ZENworks Adaptive Agent authenticates a user to the Management Zone via the credentials entered in the Microsoft client, Novell client, or ZENworks login screen, the username and password is stored in the secure CASA vault on the user's device.

CASA is installed with the ZENworks Adaptive Agent. It includes the CASA Manager, which is an interface used to manage the credentials in the storage vault. The CASA Manager is available from the *Start > Program Files > Novell CASA* menu. Generally, you or the device's user should not need to use the CASA Manager. When a user's credentials change in the LDAP directory, they are updated in the CASA storage vault the next time the user logs in. If you do run the CASA Manager, you are prompted to install the GTK# Library. If you choose to install the library (which is necessary to run the CASA Manager), you are directed to a Novell Web site from which you can install it.

Do not remove CASA from the managed device. If you do not want the CASA Manager displayed to users, you can remove the Novell CASA folder from the *Start > Program Files* menu.

30.3 Disabling ZENworks User Authentication

By default, if a user source is defined in the ZENworks Management Zone, the ZENworks Adaptive Agent attempts to authenticate a user to the zone whenever he or she logs in through the Microsoft or Novell client.

If necessary, you can disable user authentication to the zone. For example, you might have some users that only receive device-assigned content, so you don't want the overhead of having them logged in to the zone.

To disable user authentication to the zone:

- 1 Locate the following key in the registry on the user's device:

HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Novell\ZENworks\ZenLgn

- 2** (Conditional) If you want to disable login, add the following DWORD value:

Value name: DisablePassiveModeLogin

Value data: Any non-zero value (for example, 1, 2, 3, 100)

With login disabled, no attempt is made to authenticate to the Management Zone when the user logs in through the Microsoft or Novell client.

- 3** (Conditional) If you want to disable the ZENworks login prompt that appears if login through the Microsoft client or Novell client fails, add the following DWORD value:

Value name: DisablePassiveModeLoginPrompt

Value data: Any non-zero value (for example, 1, 2, 3, 100)

Normally, the Adaptive Agent attempts to authenticate the user to the zone by using the credentials entered in the Microsoft or Novell client. If login fails, the ZENworks login prompt is displayed in order to give the user an opportunity to authenticate with different credentials. This value setting disables the ZENworks login prompt.

30.4 Troubleshooting User Authentication

This section contains explanation on some of the user authentication related problems. To troubleshoot other problems you might encounter during authentication, see TID 3273870 in the Novell Support Knowledgebase (http://support.novell.com/search/kb_index.jsp).

- ♦ “Incorrect username displayed in the ZENworks Login screen” on page 251
- ♦ “Unable to log in to the ZENworks Server” on page 252
- ♦ “Large number of concurrent client logins might result in login failures” on page 252
- ♦ “How do I enable debug logs on Windows 2003, Windows XP, and Windows Vista devices?” on page 253
- ♦ “How do I enable the CASA debug logs?” on page 253
- ♦ “Logging in to the user source on a ZENworks Server is slow” on page 253
- ♦ “Unable to log into the ZENworks Server when logging in to a Windows Vista device” on page 253
- ♦ “The settings assigned to an eDirectory user are not applied on the device where the user has logged in” on page 253

Incorrect username displayed in the ZENworks Login screen

Explanation: The *Username* option in the ZENworks Login screen displays the Windows local username by default.

Possible Cause: If you changed only the full name of the user (*My Computer > Manage > System Tools > Local Users and Groups > Full Name*), the ZENworks login screen displays the old username and not the new full name.

Action: To change the local user account details, you must change both the username and the full name of the user:

- 1** Click the desktop *Start* menu > *Run*.
- 2** In the Run window, specify *control userpasswords2*, then click *OK*.

- 3 Double-click the username and edit both the *User Name* and *Full Name* of the user.
- 4 Click *OK*.

Unable to log in to the ZENworks Server

Possible Cause: A user with an account in the eDirectory that is installed on an OES 2.0 server tries to log into a non-OES 2.0 ZENworks Server.

Action: To log in to a non-OES 2.0 ZENworks Server, the user must be a Linux User Management (LUM) user. For more information on LUM users, see the [Novell Linux User Management Technology Guide \(http://www.novell.com/documentation/oes2/acc_linux_svcs_lx/index.html?page=/documentation/oes2/acc_linux_svcs_lx/data/fbdecbed.html\)](http://www.novell.com/documentation/oes2/acc_linux_svcs_lx/index.html?page=/documentation/oes2/acc_linux_svcs_lx/data/fbdecbed.html)

Large number of concurrent client logins might result in login failures

Explanation: The maximum number of concurrent client connections that a server can support depends on the configured `Connector acceptCount`. If the number of concurrent client requests exceeds the value of `Connector acceptCount`, the client connect requests might fail because the server is not able to accept these connections.

Action: Increase the number of client connect requests that the server can support.

On a Windows server:

- 1 Log in as an administrator.
- 2 Open the `ZENworks_Install_path\share\ats\catalinabase\conf\server.xml` file.
- 3 In the `Define a SSL Coyote HTTP/1.1 Connector on port 2645` section, change the value of the `Connector acceptCount` to the desired value. A value of 300 is optimal.
- 4 Restart the Authentication Token Service:
 - 4a On the desktop, click *Start > Run*.
 - 4b In the Run window, specify `service.msc`, then click *OK*.
 - 4c Restart `CasaAuthTokenSvc`.

On a Linux server:

- 1 Log in as `root`.
- 2 Open the `/srv/www/casaats/conf/server.xml` file.
- 3 In the `Define a SSL Coyote HTTP/1.1 Connector on port 2645` section, change the value of the `Connector acceptCount` to the desired value. A value of 300 is optimal.
- 4 Restart the Authentication Token Service:
 - 4a At the server prompt, go to `/etc/init.d/`.
 - 4b Run the `casa_atstd restart` command.

How do I enable debug logs on Windows 2003, Windows XP, and Windows Vista devices?

Action: To enable the logs, see TID 3418069 in the [Novell Support Knowledgebase](http://support.novell.com/search/kb_index.jsp) (http://support.novell.com/search/kb_index.jsp).

How do I enable the CASA debug logs?

Action: To enable the logs, see TID 3418069 in the [Novell Support Knowledgebase](http://support.novell.com/search/kb_index.jsp) (http://support.novell.com/search/kb_index.jsp).

Logging in to the user source on a ZENworks Server is slow

Explanation: Logging in to the user source on a ZENworks Server from the managed device might take some time because the login process executes the device refresh synchronously.

Action: To speed up the login process, perform the following steps to change the login process to execute the device refresh asynchronously:

- 1 Open the Registry Editor.
- 2 Go to HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\Novell\ZENworks.
- 3 Create a String called ZENLoginUserRefreshAsync and set the value to TRUE.
- 4 Log in to the device again.

IMPORTANT: If you change the login process to execute the device refresh asynchronously, the latest policies might not be immediately available. With this setting, the choice is login performance over the accuracy of the policies.

Unable to log into the ZENworks Server when logging in to a Windows Vista device

Explanation: If you log into a Windows Vista* device that has Novell SecureLogin installed and Active Directory configured as the user source, you are not automatically logged in to the ZENworks server.

Action: Do the following:

- 1 Open the Registry Editor.
- 2 Go to HKLM\Software\Protocom\SecureLogin\.
- 3 Create a DWORD called ForceHKLMandNoDPAPI, and set the value to 1.
- 4 Restart the device.

The settings assigned to an eDirectory user are not applied on the device where the user has logged in

Possible Cause: Two or more eDirectory users with the same username and password might exist in different contexts of the eDirectory tree.

Explanation: When an eDirectory user specifies the username and password to log in to a device, a user with the same username and password but located in a different context of the eDirectory tree might be logged in to the device and the settings of this user are applied on the device. This is because the login GINA is contextless.

For example: Assume that user1 and user2 have the same username and password:

User1: CN = bob, OU = org1, O = Company1 (bob.org1.company1)

User2: CN = bob, OU = org2, O = Company1 (bob.org2.company1)

When user2 specifies the username and password to log in to a device, user1 is logged in to the device instead of user2 because user1 appears first in the search performed by Novell CASA. The settings assigned to user1 are applied on the device.

Action: No two eDirectory users should have the same username and password. Even if the usernames are same, ensure that the passwords are different.

ZENworks 10 Product Licensing

VIII

This section contains information about evaluating, activating, and deactivating ZENworks® products.

- ♦ [Chapter 31, “ZENworks 10 Product Licensing,” on page 257](#)

The ZENworks® 10 family of products include the following:

- ♦ ZENworks 10 Configuration Management
- ♦ ZENworks 10 Asset Management
- ♦ ZENworks 10 Patch Management
- ♦ Asset Inventory for UNIX/Linux

All of the products are installed by default. This enables you to activate products by providing a license key or evaluate products for which you have not purchased a license. You can also deactivate licensed or evaluation products if you no longer intend to use them.

The following sections provide information on managing the product licenses:

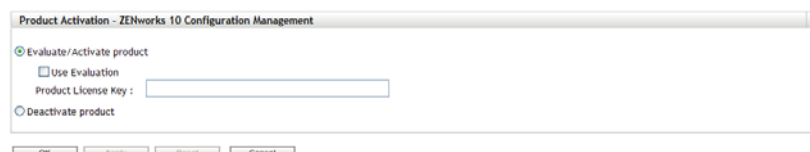
- ♦ [Section 31.1, “Evaluating a Product,” on page 257](#)
- ♦ [Section 31.2, “Extending the Evaluation Period of a Product,” on page 258](#)
- ♦ [Section 31.3, “Activating a Product,” on page 258](#)
- ♦ [Section 31.4, “Deactivating a Product,” on page 258](#)
- ♦ [Section 31.5, “Possible License State Changes,” on page 259](#)
- ♦ [Section 31.6, “Using ZENworks 10 Asset Management with ZENworks 7 Desktop Management,” on page 260](#)
- ♦ [Section 31.7, “Viewing the Predefined Reports,” on page 260](#)

For other actions that you can perform to view license information, see “[License Commands](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.

For information on renewing Patch Management subscription licenses, see “[Renewing a Patch Management License](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Administration Quick Start*.

31.1 Evaluating a Product

- 1 Log in to the ZENworks Control Center.
- 2 Click the *Configuration* tab.
- 3 In the Product Licensing panel, click the product you want to evaluate.
- 4 In the Product Activation panel, select the *Evaluate/Activate product* option.

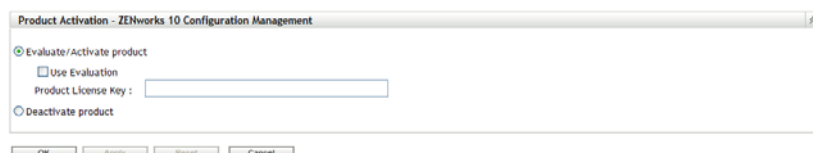


- 5 Select *Use Evaluation* option, then click *Apply*.
- 6 Click *OK*.

For more information on license state changes, see [Section 31.5, “Possible License State Changes,” on page 259](#).

31.2 Extending the Evaluation Period of a Product

- 1 Log in to the ZENworks Control Center.
- 2 Click the *Configuration* tab.
- 3 In the Product Licensing panel, click the product you want to evaluate.
- 4 In the Product Activation panel, select the *Evaluate/Activate product* option.

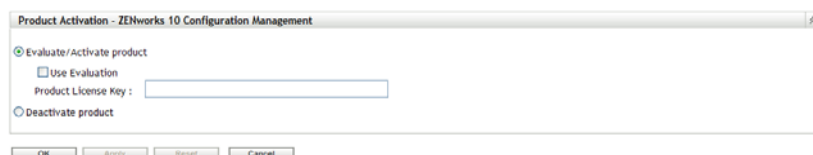


- 5 Specify the extended evaluation license key in *Product License Key*, then click *Apply*.
- 6 Click *OK*.

For more information on license state changes, see [Section 31.5, “Possible License State Changes,” on page 259](#).

31.3 Activating a Product

- 1 Log in to the ZENworks Control Center.
- 2 Click the *Configuration* tab.
- 3 In the Product Licensing panel, click the product you want to activate.
- 4 In the Product Activation panel, select the *Evaluate/Activate product* option.

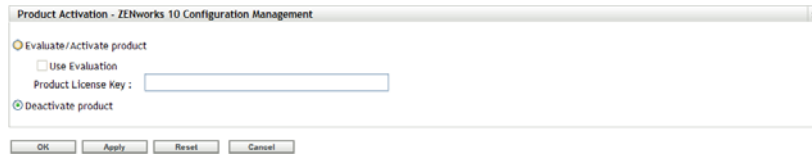


- 5 Specify the license key in *Product License Key*, click *Apply*.
- 6 Click *OK*.

For more information on license state changes, see [Section 31.5, “Possible License State Changes,” on page 259](#).

31.4 Deactivating a Product

- 1 Log in to the ZENworks Control Center.
- 2 Click the *Configuration* tab.
- 3 In the Product Licensing panel, click the product you want to deactivate.



- 4 In the Product Activation panel, select the *Deactivate product* option.
- 5 Click *Apply*.
- 6 Click *OK*.

For more information on possible license state changes, see [Section 31.5, “Possible License State Changes,” on page 259](#).

31.5 Possible License State Changes

The transition of a product to a new licence state depends on the current license state of the product and the license state of the product prior to the current license state. Accordingly, you can choose to evaluate, activate, or deactivate a product.

For example:

- ♦ A product that is currently deactivated can be moved to an evaluation, extended evaluation, or active state.
- ♦ A product that has been transitioned from an evaluation state to deactivated state can be now moved to an active, evaluation, or extended evaluation state.

NOTE: If you change the license state on a ZENworks Server, it might take up to 30 minutes for the license state change to be reflected on the managed device. To enable the license state change to be immediately reflected on the managed device, restart the zenserver services on the ZENworks Server.

Table 31-1 Possible License State Changes for ZENworks Products

Previous License State	Current License State	New License State	Additional Information
	Deactivated	Evaluation	You get 60 days to evaluate the product.
	Deactivated	Extended Evaluation	You get 120 days to evaluate the product.
	Deactivated	Active	
	Evaluation	Extended Evaluation	You get 60 days in addition to the remaining evaluation days.
	Evaluation	Active	
	Evaluation	Deactivated	
	Active	Deactivated	
Evaluation	Deactivated	Active	

Previous License State	Current License State	New License State	Additional Information
Evaluation	Deactivated	Evaluation	You get the remaining evaluation days. For example, if you use the product for 10 days of the evaluation period and deactivate it, then if you choose to evaluate the product again, you get 50 days of evaluation.
Evaluation	Deactivated	Extended Evaluation	You get 60 days in addition to the remaining evaluation days.
Extended Evaluation	Deactivated	Extended Evaluation	You get the remaining evaluation days.
Extended Evaluation	Deactivated	Active	
Active	Deactivated	Active	

31.6 Using ZENworks 10 Asset Management with ZENworks 7 Desktop Management

You can use ZENworks 10 Asset Management with ZENworks 7 Desktop Management installed in your environment.

If you enable ZENworks 10 Configuration Management or ZENworks Patch Management Agent features (in ZENworks Control Center, *Configuration* tab > *Device Management* > *ZENworks Agent*), you are prompted that the ZENworks 7 Desktop Management Agent will be uninstalled.

The ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Agent features include the following:

- ♦ Bundle Management
- ♦ Policy Management
- ♦ Image Management
- ♦ Patch Management
- ♦ Remote Management
- ♦ User Management

Do not enable these features if you want to continue using ZENworks 7 Desktop Management in your environment.

31.7 Viewing the Predefined Reports

You must have installed ZENworks Reporting Server to view the predefined reports. For more information on how to install ZENworks Reporting Server, see the [ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Reporting Server Installation Guide](#).

To view the predefined reports for Licensing:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Reports* tab.
- 2 In the ZENworks Reporting Server Reporting panel, click *ZENworks Reporting Server InfoView* to launch the ZENworks Reporting Server InfoView.

3 Navigate to *Novell ZENworks Reports > Predefined Reports > ZENworks System*.

4 The following predefined report is included for Licensing:

ZENworks License Information: Displays the licensing details for the Asset Inventory for UNIX/Linux, ZENworks Configuration Management, and ZENworks Asset Management products installed on all the devices in your Management Zone. You can view information such as the license status for the products, the expiration date of the licenses, number of managed devices and inventory devices that are connected to the server holding the license, and the number of managed users.

For more information on creating and managing reports, see the [ZENworks Configuration Management System Reporting Reference](#) documentation.

Database Management



Novell® ZENworks® 10 Configuration Management allows you to back up and restore the embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere database by using the zman command line utility. To back up and restore Oracle* or Microsoft SQL Server* databases, refer to their documentation.

IMPORTANT: If you plan to back up the ZENworks Server that hosts the ZENworks database, you must ensure that the ZENworks database is backed up at least once before backing up the ZENworks Server (which only needs to be done one time). You can also back up the ZENworks database on a regular basis. However, you can back up the server and the database in any order.

When restoring the ZENworks Server and the database, you must first restore the ZENworks Server, then restore the latest backed-up ZENworks database. For more information about backing up and restoring the ZENworks Server, see [Chapter 10, “Backing Up and Restoring the ZENworks Server and Certificate Authority,” on page 111](#).

ZENworks 10 Configuration Management also allows you to migrate the data from the Sybase SQL Anywhere database to an Oracle database.

Review the following sections for detailed information:

- ♦ [Chapter 32, “Embedded Database Maintenance,” on page 265](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 33, “External Database Maintenance,” on page 285](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 34, “Database Best Practices and Tips,” on page 303](#)

- ♦ Section 32.1, “Retrieving and Storing the Credentials of the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database,” on page 265
- ♦ Section 32.2, “Changing the Ports Used by the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database,” on page 265
- ♦ Section 32.3, “Backing Up the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database,” on page 267
- ♦ Section 32.4, “Restoring the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database,” on page 273
- ♦ Section 32.5, “Moving the Data from an Embedded Sybase Database to an External Sybase Database,” on page 274
- ♦ Section 32.6, “Migrating the Data from an Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere to an External Oracle Database,” on page 276

32.1 Retrieving and Storing the Credentials of the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database

If you have installed ZENworks® 10 Configuration Management with the embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere database that is bundled with ZENworks, we recommend that you store the credentials of the database for future use.

- 1 Retrieve the credentials of the embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere database by entering one of the following commands at the server prompt:

```
zman database-get-credentials
```

or

```
zman dgc
```

The credentials are displayed on the console.

For more information about `zman`, view the `zman` man page (`man zman`) on the server or see “[zman\(1\)](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.

- 2 Copy the credentials and save them in a file.

To retrieve and store the credentials of Remote Sybase SQL Anywhere, Oracle, or Microsoft SQL Server databases, refer to their documentation.

32.2 Changing the Ports Used by the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database

Sybase SQL Anywhere uses port 2638 by default. You can change the port on which the database runs.

- 1 In the `zenworks_database.conf` file, specify the new port number on which the server listens to.

The `zenworks_database.conf` file is located in `%ZENWORKS_HOME%\conf` on Windows and in `/etc/opt/novell/zenworks` on Linux.

- 2** In the `zdm.xml` file on all the Primary Servers, specify the new port number in the following entry:

```
<entry key="Port">2638</entry>
```

By default, the entry lists the default port number, 2638.

The `zdm.xml` file is located in `%ZENWORKS_HOME%\conf\datamodel` on Windows and in `/etc/opt/novell/zenworks/datamodel` on Linux.

- 3** (Conditional) If the ZENworks Reporting Server is installed on the Primary Server, add the new port number to the ODBC data information:
- ♦ **On a Windows server:** Do the following:
 1. From the desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings*, click *Control Panel*, then double-click *ODBC Data Source*.
The ODBC Data Source Administrator window is displayed.
 2. Click the *System DSN* tab.
 3. Double-click *ZENworks Datastore*.
The ODBC Configuration window is displayed.
 4. Click the *Networks* tab.
 5. In the *Select the Network Protocols and Options* panel, change the value of the TCP/IP port number (by default, it is 2638) to the port number specified in `zenworks_database.conf` (the new number you specified in [Step 1](#)).
 - ♦ **On a Linux server:** In the `/opt/novell/zenworks/share/boe/bobje/odbc.ini` file, change the value of TCP/IP to the port number specified in `zenworks_database.conf` (the new number you specified in [Step 1](#)).
- 4** Restart the database service, ZENServer, and ZENLoader services on all Primary servers:
- ♦ **On Windows:** Do the following:
 1. From the Windows desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings > Control Panel*.
 2. Double-click *Administrative Tools > Services*.
 3. Restart the following services: *Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore*, *Novell ZENworks Loader Service*, and *Novell ZENworks Server*.
 - ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter the following commands in the order given:
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/novell-zenmntr stop`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/novell-zenserver stop`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/novell-zenloader stop`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/sybase-asa restart`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/novell-zenserver start`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/novell-zenloader start`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/novell-zenmntr start`

Even though the TCP and UDP ports are changed from 2638, the database server also listens on UDP port 2638. For more information, see the [Sybase database documentation \(http://www.ianywhere.com/developer/product_manuals/sqlanywhere/1001/en/html/dbdaen10/daserverport-network-conparm.html\)](http://www.ianywhere.com/developer/product_manuals/sqlanywhere/1001/en/html/dbdaen10/daserverport-network-conparm.html).

32.3 Backing Up the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database

The embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere database can be backed up to a directory on the local machine or to a network location.

- ♦ [Section 32.3.1, “Backing Up the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database on a Windows or Linux Server,” on page 267](#)
- ♦ [Section 32.3.2, “Backing up the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database Running on a Windows Server to a Network Location on a Remote Windows Machine,” on page 269](#)
- ♦ [Section 32.3.3, “Backing up the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database Running on a Linux Server to a Network Location on a Remote Linux Machine,” on page 271](#)

32.3.1 Backing Up the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database on a Windows or Linux Server

- 1 Store the ZENworks administrator name and password by entering the following command at the command prompt:

```
zman admin-store-credential administrator
```

If you do not store the credentials, you must enter the ZENworks administrator name and password for each zman command.

You can immediately back up the embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere database or schedule the backup to run at a specific time. To back up the embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere database immediately, continue with [Step 2](#). To schedule the backup to run at a specific time, skip to [Step 3](#).

- 2 (Conditional) To immediately back up the embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere database to a directory on the database server, enter the following command at the command prompt:

```
zman database-backup  
complete_path_of_the_backup_directory_on_database_server
```

For example, to back up the database to the `c:\dbbackup` directory on a Windows database server, execute `zman database-backup c:\dbbackup`. To back up the database to the `/root/dbBackup` directory on a Linux database server, execute `zman database-backup /root/dbBackup`.

- 3 (Conditional) To schedule the backup to run at a specific time every day or on specific days of a month, you need to create a schedule file and run it.

- 3a Create a schedule file with the Create event, `backupschedule.sql`, with the following contents:

```
CREATE EVENT backup_schedule_name  
SCHEDULE  
specify_the_schedule
```

A sample schedule file to back up the database at a 11 p.m. every day is as follows:

```
CREATE EVENT ZENDBBackup  
SCHEDULE  
START TIME '11:00 PM' EVERY 24 HOURS
```

A sample schedule file to back up the database at 1:00 a.m. on the first, second, third, and fourth day of the month is as follows:

```
CREATE EVENT ZENDBBackup1
SCHEDULE
START TIME '1:00 AM'
ON (1,2,3,4)
```

Sample schedule files are available in the

ZENworks_Installation_directory:\Novell\Zenworks\share\zman\samples\database directory on a Windows server, and in the /opt/novell/zenworks/share/zman/samples/database directory on a Linux server.

3b Enter the following command at the command prompt:

```
zman database-backup complete_path_of_the_backup_directory
complete_path_of_backUpSchedule.sql -d SQL_function_call
```

For example, to back up the database to the c:\dbbackup\day_of_the_week directory on a Windows server as per the schedule in the c:\backupschedule.sql file, enter the following command:

```
zman database-backup c:\dbbackup c:\backUpSchedule.sql -d
"DAYNAME(now())"
```

For more information about this command, view the zman man page (man zman) on the device, or see [zman\(1\)](#) in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.

4 Clear the credentials stored in [Step 1](#) by entering the following command at the command prompt:

```
zman admin-clear-credential
```

According to the backup schedule, the zenworks_zone_name.db database file and the zenworks_zone_name.log transaction log file are created in the database backup directory.

In ZENworks 10 Configuration Management (10.1) and Update for ZENworks 10 Configuration Management (10.1.1), the old transaction log is not deleted after the database is backed up. The log file is renamed with the time stamp when it was last backed up. The time stamp is the format YYMMDD. For example, if the transaction log was last backed up on September 23, 2008, the log file is renamed to 080923*.log. However, the log file is not required and can be manually deleted from the %ZENWORKS_HOME%\database directory on Windows or the /var/opt/novell/zenworks/database directory on Linux to recover disk space. The log file is automatically deleted in Update for ZENworks 10 Configuration Management (10.1.2) or later.

If you want to change the database backup location or the backup schedule at a later time, review the following sections:

- ♦ [“Changing the Backup Location of the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database Subsequent to the Initial Backup”](#) on page 308
- ♦ [“Changing the Backup Schedule of the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database Subsequent to the Initial Backup”](#) on page 308

32.3.2 Backing up the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database Running on a Windows Server to a Network Location on a Remote Windows Machine

To back up an embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere database that is installed and running on a Windows server to a network location on another Windows machine, you need a local machine and a remote machine. The local machine is a Windows server with the ZENworks server components and the embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere database installed. The remote machine is a Windows machine that has the network location to which you want to back up the database.

1 Perform the following steps on the local machine:

1a Create an administrative user and specify a password.

For example, you could specify the administrative username as `Administrator` and the password as `novell`.

1b From the desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings*, click *Control Panel*, double-click *Administrative Tools*, then double-click *Services*.

1c Right-click the *Novell ZENworks Datastore* service, then click *Properties*.

1d Click the *Log On* tab.

1e Select *This account*, then specify the name and the password of the administrative user created in [Step 1a](#).

For example, specify the user as `Administrator` and the password as `novell`.

1f Click *OK*.

2 Perform the following steps on the remote machine that has the network location where you want to save the backup:

2a Create an account with the same credentials as the user you created in [Step 1a](#).

For example, specify user as `Administrator` and password as `novell`.

2b Provide Read/Write permission on the network location to the user.

To immediately back up the database, continue with [Step 3](#). To schedule the backup to run at a specific time every day or on specific days of a month, skip to [Step 4](#).

3 (Conditional) To immediately back up the database to the network location on the remote machine, enter the following command at the command prompt:

```
zman database-backup
\\IP_address_of_the_remote_machine\backup_directory\custom_directory
```

Where `\\IP_address_of_the_remote_machine\backup_directory` is the network location on the remote machine and `custom_directory_name` is a name that you specify for a directory to be newly created by `zman` and into which the database files are to be backed up.

4 (Conditional) To schedule the backup:

4a Create a schedule file, `backupschedule.sql`, with the following contents:

```
CREATE EVENT backup_schedule_name
SCHEDULE
specify_the_schedule
```

A sample schedule file to back up the database at a 11 p.m. every day is as follows:

```
CREATE EVENT ZENDBBackup
```

```
SCHEDULE
START TIME '11:00 PM' EVERY 24 HOURS
```

A sample schedule file to back up the database at 1:00 a.m on the first, second, third, and fourth day of the month is as follows:

```
CREATE EVENT ZENDBBackup1
SCHEDULE
START TIME '1:00 AM'
ON (1,2,3,4)
```

Sample schedule files are available in the

ZENworks_Installation_directory\Novell\Zenworks\
share\zman\samples\database directory.

4b Execute the following command at the command prompt:

```
zman database-backup
\\IP_address_of_the_remote_machine\backup_directory\custom_directory
c:\backUpSchedule.sql -d SQL_function_call
```

Where *\\IP_address_of_the_remote_machine\backup_directory* is the network location on the remote machine and *custom_directory_name* is a name that you specify for a directory to be newly created by zman and into which the database files are to be backed up.

For more information about the command, view the zman man page (man zman) on the device, or see [zman\(1\)](#) in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.

According to the backup schedule, *zenworks_zone_name.db* and *zenworks_zone_name.log* are created in the network location on the remote machine. The backed-up database is stored in *zenworks_zone_name.db*. The result of the database backup is logged in *zenworks_zone_name.log*.

If you want to change the database backup location or the backup schedule at a later time, review the following sections:

- ♦ “Changing the Backup Location of the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database Subsequent to the Initial Backup” on page 308
- ♦ “Changing the Backup Schedule of the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database Subsequent to the Initial Backup” on page 308

32.3.3 Backing up the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database Running on a Linux Server to a Network Location on a Remote Linux Machine

To back up the embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere database that is installed and running on a Linux server to a network location on a Linux machine, you need a local machine and a remote machine. The local machine is a Linux server with the ZENworks server components and the embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere database installed. The remote machine is a Linux machine that has the network location to which you want to back up the database.

You can back up the database on a Linux machine by using any Linux share such as Samba share or NFS share.

To back up the embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere database that is installed and running on a Linux server to a network location on a Linux machine by using Samba share:

- 1** Create a Samba share on the remote machine:
 - 1a** Create a user by entering the `useradd user_name` command at the command prompt.
 - 1b** Log in to the remote machine with the username created in [Step 1a](#), and set the password by using the `passwd specify_the_password` command.
 - 1c** Create a directory to save the database backup.
For example, create a directory with the name `backup`.
 - 1d** Open the Samba server settings by running the `yast2 samba-server` command.
 - 1e** Click the *Shares* tab, then click *Add* to specify the share name and the path to the backup directory created in [Step 1c](#).
For example, specify the sharename as `dbbackup`.
 - 1f** Select the `dbbackup` share, click *Edit*, then add the following attributes:
 - ♦ `create mask = 0640`
 - ♦ `force user = user_name_created_in_Step 1a`
 - ♦ `guest ok = yes`
 - ♦ `public = yes`
 - ♦ `wide links = no`
 - ♦ `writable = yes`

- 2** Create a directory on the local machine.

For example, create a directory with the name `zenworks_dbbackup` in `/root`.

- 3** Mount the Samba share on the `zenworks_dbbackup` directory on the local machine by entering the following command at the command prompt:

```
mount -t smbfs //IP_address of the remote_machine/share_name -o
username=user_name_specified_in_Step1a,password=password_
specified_in_Step_1b
local_directory_name_with_complete_path_created_in_Step2
```

For example:

```
mount -t smbfs //IP_address of the remote_machine/dbbackup -o
username=user_name_specified_in_Step1a,password=password_
specified_in_Step_1b /root/zenworks_dbbackup
```

To immediately back up the database, continue with [Step 4](#). To schedule the backup to run at a specific time every day or on specific days of a month, skip to [Step 5](#).

- 4** (Conditional) To immediately back up the database to the network location on the remote machine, enter the following command at the command prompt:

```
zman database-backup database_backup_directory
```

For example:

```
zman database-backup /root/zenworks_dbbackup
```

- 5** (Conditional) To schedule the backup:

- 5a** Create a schedule file, `backupschedule.sql`, with the following contents:

```
CREATE EVENT backup_schedule_name
SCHEDULE
specify_the_schedule
```

A sample schedule file to back up the database at a 11 p.m. every day is as follows:

```
CREATE EVENT ZENDBBackup
SCHEDULE
START TIME '11:00 PM' EVERY 24 HOURS
```

A sample schedule file to back up the database at 1:00 a.m. on the first, second, third, and fourth days of the month is as follows:

```
CREATE EVENT ZENDBBackup1
SCHEDULE
START TIME '1:00 AM'
ON (1,2,3,4)
```

Sample schedule files are available in the

`ZENworks_Installation_directory:\Novell\Zenworks\share\zman\samples\database` directory.

- 5b** Enter the following command at the command prompt:

```
zman database-backup database_backup_directory c:\backUpSchedule.sql -d SQL_function_call
```

For example:

```
zman database-backup /root/zenworks_dbbackup c:\backUpSchedule.sql -d SQL_function_call
```

For more information about this command, view the `zman` man page (`man zman`) on the device, or see [zman\(1\)](#) in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.

According to the backup schedule, `zenworks_zone_name.db` and `zenworks_zone_name.log` are created in the network location on the remote machine (`/root/zenworks_dbbackup`). The backed-up database is stored in `zenworks_zone_name.db`. The result of the database backup is logged in `zenworks_zone_name.log`.

If you want to change the database backup location or the backup schedule at a later time, review the following sections:

- ♦ [“Changing the Backup Location of the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database Subsequent to the Initial Backup” on page 308](#)
- ♦ [“Changing the Backup Schedule of the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database Subsequent to the Initial Backup” on page 308](#)

32.4 Restoring the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database

The following sections provide information on restoring the backed-up embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere database:

- ♦ [Section 32.4.1, “Restoring the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database on a Windows Server,” on page 273](#)
- ♦ [Section 32.4.2, “Restoring the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database on a Linux Server,” on page 274](#)

IMPORTANT: If the database is located on a ZENworks Server, you must first restore the ZENworks Server, then restore the ZENworks database. Ensure that you have backed up the ZENworks Server and the database (at least once). You can also back up the ZENworks database on a regular basis. However, you can back up the server and the database in any order. For more information about backing up and restoring the ZENworks Server, see [Chapter 10, “Backing Up and Restoring the ZENworks Server and Certificate Authority,” on page 111](#).

32.4.1 Restoring the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database on a Windows Server

- 1 At the Windows server prompt, go to

`ZENworks_Installation_directory:\novell\zenworks\bin`, and enter the following command:

```
ZenworksWindowsDBRestore.bat
```

```
ZENworks_Installation_directory:\Novell\Zenworks\Database
```

```
c:\dbBackup\zenworks_zone_name.db c:\dbBackup\zenworks_zone_name.log
```

- 2 Press any key when the following message is displayed:

```
Before proceeding, make sure you have backed up any files in:<Installation
directory>:\Novell\ZENworks\database Press any key to continue.
```

- 3 Enter Y when the following message is displayed:

```
The following services are dependent on the Novell ZENworks Datastore
service. Stopping the Novell ZENworks Datastore service will also stop
these services: Novell ZENworks Loader, Novell ZENworks Agent Service,
Novell ZENworks Server. Do you want to continue this operation? (Y/N) [N]:
```

- 4 Press any key when the following message is displayed:

```
The Novell ZENworks Datastore service was stopped successfully. Press any
key to continue...
```

- 5 Enter Yes when the following message is displayed:

```
Overwrite <installation
directory>:\Novell\ZENworks\database\zenworks_<zone_name>.db? (Yes/No/
All)
```

- 6** Enter Yes when the following message is displayed:

```
Overwrite <installation
directory>:\Novell\ZENworks\database\zenworks_<zone_name>.log? (Yes/No/
All):
```

The backupFile and the backupLogFile are copied to
ZENworks_Installation_directory:\Novell\ZENworks\database, and the database is
restored.

- 7** (Conditional) If you restore the database to a location other than the one mentioned in the
zenworks_installation_directory\novell\zenworks\database\conf\zenworks_da
tabase.conf file, manually edit *zenworks_database.conf* to specify the new location of
the database.

32.4.2 Restoring the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database on a Linux Server

- 1** Log in to the ZENworks server as root.

- 2** Change to /opt/novell/zenworks/bin, and enter the following command:

```
./ZenworksLinuxDBRestore.sh -F "/root/dbBackup/zenworks_zone_name.db"
```

- 3** Enter Y when the following message is displayed:

```
The backup database file will OVERWRITE the existing database. Is that OK?
[y/n]
```

- 4** Enter Y when the following message is displayed:

```
The novell-zenloader needs to be stopped for the database restore to be
performed. Would you like to proceed [y/n]?
```

The backup file is copied to /var/opt/novell/zenworks/database, and the restore log file
to /var/opt/novell/log/zenworks/dbrestore.log. The database is restored.

32.5 Moving the Data from an Embedded Sybase Database to an External Sybase Database

ZENworks 10 Configuration Management allows you move the data from a Sybase SQL Anywhere
database (embedded Sybase database) to an OEM Sybase database (external Sybase database).

- ♦ [Section 32.5.1, “Preparing to Move the Data,” on page 275](#)
- ♦ [Section 32.5.2, “Moving the Data from the Internal Sybase to the External Sybase,” on page 275](#)

32.5.1 Preparing to Move the Data

Before moving the data from an internal Sybase database to an external Sybase database, do the following:


- ♦ Make sure that ZENworks 10 Configuration Management is installed with an internal Sybase database on a Windows or Linux device.
- ♦ Install the external Sybase database. For more information on how to install an external Sybase database, see “[Installing an External ZENworks Database](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Installation Guide*.

32.5.2 Moving the Data from the Internal Sybase to the External Sybase

- 1 On the device that has the external Sybase database installed, stop the Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore service.
 - ♦ **On Windows:** Do the following:
 1. From the Windows desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings > Control Panel*.
 2. Double-click *Administrative Tools > Services*.
 3. Right-click the *Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore* service, then click *Stop*, or select the *Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore* service, then click ■ on the toolbar.
 - ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter `/etc/init.d/.sybase-asa stop`.
- 2 From the device that has the internal Sybase database installed, copy `zenworks_database.conf` and all files within the `database` directory to the appropriate directories on the device that has the external Sybase database.

The `zenworks_database.conf` is located in the `ZENworks_installation_path\conf\` directory on Windows and in the `/etc/opt/novell/zenworks/` directory on Linux.

The `database` directory is located in `ZENworks_installation_path` on Windows and in the `/var/opt/novell/zenworks/` directory on Linux.
- 3 On the device that has the external Sybase database installed, open `zenworks_database.conf` and make sure that it contains the correct path of the database file.
- 4 On the device that has the internal Sybase database installed, edit `zdm.xml` (located in `ZENworks_installation_path\conf\datamodel` on Windows and in `/etc/opt/novell/zenworks/datamodel` on Linux):
 - ♦ Change the value of the `Embedded` entry key to `false`. By default, it is `true`.
 - ♦ Set the value of the `Server` entry key to the IP address of the device that has the external Sybase database installed.
 - ♦ Make sure that the value of the `Port` entry key is the port number on which the external Sybase database is running.
- 5 On the device that has the external Sybase database installed, start the Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore service.
 - ♦ **On Windows:** Do the following:
 1. From the Windows desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings > Control Panel*.

2. Double-click *Administrative Tools > Services*.
 3. Right-click the *Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore* service, then click *Start*, or select the *Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore* service, then click  on the toolbar.
- ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter `/etc/init.d/.sybase-asa start`.
- 6 On the device that has the internal Sybase database installed, restart the ZENworks services:
- ♦ **On Windows:** Do the following:
 1. From the Windows desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings > Control Panel*.
 2. Double-click *Administrative Tools > Services*.
 3. Start the following services: *Novell ZENworks Server*, *Novell ZENworks Services Monitor*, and *Novell ZENworks Agent Service*.
 - ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter the following commands:
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/.novell-zenmntr restart`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/.novell-zenserver restart`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/.novell-zenloader restart`

The ZENworks Server now points to new database.

32.6 Migrating the Data from an Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere to an External Oracle Database

ZENworks 10 Configuration Management allows you migrate the data from an internal Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere database or an external Sybase SQL Anywhere database running on a ZENworks Primary Server to an Oracle database installed on a device that does not have the ZENworks 10 Configuration Management installed.

IMPORTANT: If the ZENworks Reporting Server is installed on the device, the Reporting Server does not work after migrating the database. For the Reporting Server to work, you must again install the ZENworks Reporting Server on a Primary Server on which you have installed the Oracle client after migrating the database. For more information, see [Section 32.6.3, “Post-Migration Tasks,” on page 280](#).

Review the following to migrate the database:

- ♦ [Section 32.6.1, “Preparing to Move the Data,” on page 277](#)
- ♦ [Section 32.6.2, “Migrating the Data from the Sybase SQL Anywhere Database to an Oracle Database,” on page 278](#)
- ♦ [Section 32.6.3, “Post-Migration Tasks,” on page 280](#)
- ♦ [Section 32.6.4, “Troubleshooting Database Migration,” on page 281](#)
- ♦ [Section 32.6.5, “Reverting to the Sybase Database,” on page 283](#)

32.6.1 Preparing to Move the Data

Before migrating the data from the Sybase database to Oracle database, do the following:

- ♦ Make sure that the license state of ZENworks 10 Configuration Management is Active. The product must be installed and running either in the licensed version or the evaluation version.
- ♦ Save all the reports, `rights.xml`, and `ownership.xml` by using the `report-save (rpsv) (destination folder)` command. The XML files contain rights and ownership details of all the reports.
- ♦ Make sure that the Primary Server on which the Sybase database is configured has been upgraded to ZENworks 10 Configuration Management.
- ♦ Make sure that the ZENworks Primary Server has an internal or external Sybase database installed.
- ♦ Make sure that the Oracle database is installed on a device that does not have ZENworks 10 Configuration Management installed.
- ♦ Make sure that the USERS tablespace has sufficient space to create and store the ZENworks database schema. The tablespace requires a minimum of 100 MB to create ZENworks database schema without any data in it and an appropriate additional space depending upon the size of the database to be migrated. The database migration utility uses only the USERS tablespace by default. You cannot manually specify any other tablespace during the migration.
- ♦ Make sure that the `NLS_CHARACTERSET` parameter is set to `AL32UTF8` and the `NLS_NCHAR_CHARACTERSET` parameter to `AL16UTF16` by running the following query at the database prompt:

```
select parameter, value from nls_database_parameters where parameter like '%CHARACTERSET%';
```

- ♦ (Conditional) If you want to migrate the database by creating a new user schema, ensure that the following additional requirements are met:
 - ♦ You must be aware of the database administrator credentials.
 - ♦ A tablespace must already exist for associating to the Oracle access user
- ♦ You can choose to migrate the database by using an existing user schema that resides on a server in your network in the following scenarios:
 - ♦ The database administrator creates a user schema with the necessary rights and you get the credentials for that user schema from the database administrator. In this case, the database administrator credentials are not required to migrate the database.
 - ♦ You create a user schema in the Oracle database and choose to use it during the database migration.

If you want to migrate the database by using an existing user schema, ensure that the following additional requirements are met:

- ♦ Make sure that the user schema has the following rights to create the database.

```
CREATE_SESSION
CREATE_TABLE
CREATE_VIEW
CREATE_PROCEDURE
CREATE_SEQUENCE
```

CREATE_TRIGGER

- ♦ Make sure that the quota for the user schema is set to Unlimited on the USERS tablespace.
- ♦ Manually stop the ZENworks services running on all the servers in the Management Zone.

To stop the services:

- ♦ **On Windows:** Do the following:
 1. From the Windows desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings > Control Panel*.
 2. Double-click *Administrative Tools > Services*.
 3. Stop the following services: *Novell ZENworks Server*, *Novell ZENworks Services Monitor*, and *Novell ZENworks Agent Service*.
- ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter the following commands:
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/.novell-zenmntr stop`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/.novell-zenserver stop`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/.novell-zenloader stop`
- ♦ Make sure that the Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore service on the Primary Server is running.
 - ♦ **On Windows:** Do the following:
 1. From the Windows desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings > Control Panel*.
 2. Double-click *Administrative Tools > Services*.
 3. The status of the *Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore* service must be *Started*.
 - ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter `/etc/init.d/.sybase-asa status`.
- ♦ (Optional) The status of database migration is logged into the `novell-zenworks-configure.log` file. By default, only the messages of the type Info and Severe are logged. If you want other message types (such as Finer, Finest, and Warning) to also be logged into the file, do the following in the `novell-zenworks-configure.properties` file:
 1. Set the value of `Logger.logLevel` to the appropriate message type.
For example, if you want messages of the type Finest to be logged:

```
#Logger.logLevel = FINEST
```
 2. Uncomment the line by removing the “#” as follows:

```
Logger.logLevel = FINEST
```The `novell-zenworks-configure.properties` file is located in `%ZENWORKS_HOME%\conf\` on Windows and in `/etc/opt/novell/zenworks/` on Linux.

32.6.2 Migrating the Data from the Sybase SQL Anywhere Database to an Oracle Database

- ♦ [“Migrating the Data from the Sybase SQL Anywhere Database to an Oracle Database” on page 279](#)
- ♦ [“Resuming the Database Migration” on page 279](#)

Migrating the Data from the Sybase SQL Anywhere Database to an Oracle Database

- 1 Make sure that all the tasks listed in [Section 32.6.1, “Preparing to Move the Data,”](#) on page 277 are completed.
- 2 Run the database migration utility.
 - ♦ **On Windows:** At the command prompt, go to `ZENworks_installation_path\bin\novell-zenworks-configure.bat` file and enter the following command:

```
novell-zenworks-configure.bat -c DBMigrateConfigureAction
```
 - ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, go to `/opt/novell/zenworks/bin` and enter the following command:

```
novell-zenworks-configure -c DBMigrateConfigureAction
```
- 3 Enter the target database type as Oracle.
- 4 Enter the IP address or host name of the Oracle database server.
- 5 Enter the port used by the Oracle database server.
- 6 Enter the fully qualified net service name for the Oracle database.
- 7 You can choose to create a new user schema or use an existing user schema.
If you choose to create a new schema, continue with [Step 8](#).
If you choose to use an existing user schema, skip to [Step 9](#).
- 8 Enter the database server administrator's username and password.
- 9 Enter the schema name when prompted for the database username.
- 10 Enter the database schema password when prompted for the database user's password.
The database migration starts.
- 11 When the database migration is complete, you can check the `novell-zenworks-configure.log` file to see if the migration was successful. The log file is located in `%ZENWORKS_HOME%\log\` on Windows and in `/var/opt/novell/log/zenworks/` on Linux.
- 12 After the database is successfully migrated, continue with [Section 32.6.3, “Post-Migration Tasks,”](#) on page 280.

Resuming the Database Migration

If the migration of the database is stopped for any reason, the ZENworks migration utility allows you to resume the migration if the `dbmigration.xml` file has been created. The file is located in the `ZENworks_installation_path\bin` directory on Windows, and in the `/opt/novell/zenworks/bin` directory on Linux.

- 1 Run the database migration utility.
 - ♦ **On Windows:** At the command prompt, go to `ZENworks_installation_path\bin\novell-zenworks-configure.bat` file and enter the following command:

```
novell-zenworks-configure.bat -c DBMigrateConfigureAction
```
 - ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, go to `/opt/novell/zenworks/bin` and enter the following command:

```
novell-zenworks-configure -c DBMigrateConfigureAction
```

- 2 Enter the target database type as Oracle.
- 3 Enter the IP address or host name of the Oracle database server.
You must specify the IP address or host name of the Oracle database server used while migrating the database. For example, if you had specified the IP address of the database server while migrating the database, then you must specify the same IP address while resuming the database migration. You cannot specify the host name of the database server.
- 4 Enter the port used by the Oracle database server.
- 5 Enter the fully qualified net service name for the Oracle database.
- 6 Choose to use an existing schema.
- 7 Enter the schema name when prompted for the database username specified before stopping the database migration.
- 8 Enter the database schema password when prompted for the database user's password specified before stopping the database migration.
- 9 Choose to resume the database migration.
The database migration starts.
- 10 After the database is successfully migrated, continue with [Section 32.6.3, “Post-Migration Tasks,” on page 280](#).

32.6.3 Post-Migration Tasks

If there is only one server in the Management Zone, all ZENworks services are automatically started after the data is successfully migrated to an Oracle database.

If there are multiple servers in the Management Zone:

- 1 On the device where you ran the migration utility, copy the following files to the appropriate directory on all the servers:

```
zdm.xml
dmaccounts.properties
dmmappings.properties
```

The files are located in the `ZENworks_installation_path\conf\datamodel` directory on Windows and in the `/etc/opt/novell/zenworks/datamodel` directory on Linux.

- 2 Restart the ZENworks services.
 - ♦ **On Windows:** Do the following:
 1. From the Windows desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings > Control Panel*.
 2. Double-click *Administrative Tools > Services*.
 3. Start the following services: *Novell ZENworks Server*, *Novell ZENworks Services Monitor*, and *Novell ZENworks Agent Service*.
 - ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter the following commands:
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/./novell-zenmntr restart`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/./novell-zenserver restart`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/./novell-zenloader restart`

- 3** Migrate the ZENworks Reports from the Sybase SQL Anywhere database to an Oracle database:
 - 3a** Install the Oracle client on a Primary Server that does not have an instance of the ZENworks Reporting Server.
 - 3b** Install a new instance of the ZENworks Reporting Server on the device on which you have installed the Oracle client.
 - 3c** Copy the reports to the device where the new instance of the Reporting Server is running. These are the ZENworks Reports that you saved before migrating them. For more information, see [Section 32.6.1, “Preparing to Move the Data,” on page 277](#).
 - 3d** Publish the reports and restore the reporting rights and the ownership details of the reports by using the following command:


```
zman rpld path_of_directory_containing_rights.xml_and_ownership.xml
```
 - 3e** Uninstall the ZENworks Reporting Server instance that was installed prior to migrating the database.

The ZENworks Server now points to the new database.

For the Oracle 10g database, any administrator name is case sensitive, including login names from user sources. The default ZENworks administrator account automatically created during installation uses an initial capital, so in order to log in to ZENworks Control Center, you must enter Administrator.

32.6.4 Troubleshooting Database Migration

- ♦ [“Troubleshooting a Java Heap Space Exception” on page 281](#)
- ♦ [“Troubleshooting an Oracle Database Crash” on page 282](#)
- ♦ [“Troubleshooting an Oracle Tablespace Issue” on page 282](#)
- ♦ [“Troubleshooting the Database Migration Failure Issue” on page 283](#)
- ♦ [“Troubleshooting the Database Migration by Using An Existing User Schema” on page 283](#)

Troubleshooting a Java Heap Space Exception

If you encounter a Java Heap Space exception during the database migration because of low memory:

- 1** Edit the `ZENworks_installation_path\bin\novell-zenworks-configure.bat` file on Windows or `/opt/novell/zenworks/bin/novell-zenworks-configure` on Linux to change the heap space value in the following line, depending upon the RAM of the device where the migration utility is running:

```
"%JAVA_HOME%\bin\java" -Djava.library.path=%ZENLIB% -cp "%MYCP%"
%DEBUG_OPTS% %JAVA_OPTS% -Xmx128m
com.novell.zenworks.configure.ConfigureLoader %CONFIG_OPTS%
```

The heap space value is represented in megabytes (MB) within `-Xmx128m`. By default, it is 128.

For example, if the RAM of the device is 512 MB, then the line in the `novell-zenworks-configure.bat` file can be updated as follows:

```
"%JAVA_HOME%\bin\java" -Djava.library.path=%ZENLIB% -cp "%MYCP%"
%DEBUG_OPTS% %JAVA_OPTS% -Xmx512m
com.novell.zenworks.configure.ConfigureLoader %CONFIG_OPTS%
```

IMPORTANT: The heap space value must be either equivalent to or less than the RAM of the device.

- 2 At the console prompt, run the `ZENworks_installation_path\bin\novell-zenworks-configure.bat` file on Windows or `/opt/novell/zenworks/bin/novell-zenworks-configure` on Linux.

- 3 Follow the prompts.

When you are prompted to enter the location of the file required for resuming the migration, enter the the complete path of `DBMigration.xml`. The file is located in the `ZENworks_installtion_path\bin` directory on Windows, and in the `/opt/novell/zenworks/bin` directory on Linux.

The XML file contains a list of tables and a flag indicating whether the table was successfully migrated or not. When the database migration resumes, only the tables with flag value set to False are migrated.

Troubleshooting an Oracle Database Crash

If the Oracle database crashes during the database migration:

- 1 At the console prompt, run the `ZENworks_installation_path\bin\novell-zenworks-configure.bat` file on Windows or `/opt/novell/zenworks/bin/novell-zenworks-configure` on Linux.

- 2 Follow the prompts.

When you are prompted to enter the location of the file required for resuming the migration, enter the the complete path of `DBMigration.xml`. The file is located in the `ZENworks_installtion_path\bin` directory on Windows, and in the `/opt/novell/zenworks/bin` directory on Linux.

The XML file contains a list of tables and a flag indicating whether the table was successfully migrated or not. When the database migration resumes, only the tables with flag value set to False are migrated.

IMPORTANT: Do not edit the contents of `DBMigration.xml`.

Troubleshooting an Oracle Tablespace Issue

If the Oracle USERS tablespace does not have sufficient space to create and store the ZENworks database schema, the database migration fails with the following error messages while trying to create the tables:

```
SEVERE: Terminating the database migration...
SEVERE: An error has occurred while migrating the database.
```

To resolve this issue, the Oracle database administrator must increase the size of the USERS tablespace. Ensure that the tablespace has a minimum of 100 MB to create ZENworks database schema without any data in it and an appropriate additional space depending upon the size of the database to be migrated.

Troubleshooting the Database Migration Failure Issue

If the NLS_CHARACTERSET parameter is not set to AL32UTF8 and the NLS_NCHAR_CHARACTERSET parameter is not set to AL16UTF16, the database migration fails with the following error messages:

```
Failed to run the sql script: localization-updater.sql,
message:Failed to execute the SQL command: insert into
zLocalizedMessage(messageid,lang,messagestr)
values('POLICYHANDLERS.EPE.INVALID_VALUE_FORMAT','fr','La strat gie {0} n'a
pas pu  tre appliqu e du fait que la valeur de la variable "{1}" n'est pas
dans un format valide. '),
message:ORA-00600: internal error code, arguments: [ktfbsearch-7], [8], [],
[], [], [], [], []
```

To resolve this issue, set the NLS_CHARACTERSET parameter to AL32UTF8 and the NLS_NCHAR_CHARACTERSET parameter to AL16UTF16. To ensure that the character set parameters are configured with the recommended values, run the following query at the database prompt:

```
select parameter, value from nls_database_parameters where parameter like
'%CHARACTERSET%';
```

Troubleshooting the Database Migration by Using An Existing User Schema

If you choose to migrate the database by using an existing user schema, the database migration utility creates the ZENworks database but it might fail to migrate the data.

To resolve this issue:

- 1 Make sure that the ZENworks tables, views, and user sequence are deleted from the newly created ZENworks database by the database administrator. Later on, clear the user_recyclebin database table.
- 2 Start the database migration again by using the same user schema. For more information, see [“Migrating the Data from the Sybase SQL Anywhere Database to an Oracle Database” on page 279](#).

32.6.5 Reverting to the Sybase Database

If you want to return to using the Sybase database:

- 1 On the device where you run the migration utility, rename the following files:

```
zdm.xml.bak to zdm.xml
dmaccounts.properties.bak to dmaccounts.properties
dmmappings.properties.bak to dmmappings.properties
```

The files are located in the `ZENworks_installation_path\conf\datamodel` directory on Windows and in the `/etc/opt/novell/zenworks/datamodel` directory on Linux.

- 2 Restart all the ZENworks Services:

- ♦ **On Windows:** Do the following:

1. From the Windows desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings > Control Panel*.

2. Double-click *Administrative Tools > Services*.
 3. Start the following services: *Novell ZENworks Server*, *Novell ZENworks Services Monitor*, and *Novell ZENworks Agent Service*.
- ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter the following commands:
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/./novell-zenmntr restart`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/./novell-zenserver restart`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/./novell-zenloader restart`

- ♦ [Section 33.1, “Backing Up the External Sybase Database,” on page 285](#)
- ♦ [Section 33.2, “Restoring the External Sybase Database,” on page 294](#)
- ♦ [Section 33.3, “Moving the Data from One External Sybase Database to another External Sybase Database,” on page 295](#)
- ♦ [Section 33.4, “Moving the Data from an External OEM Sybase Database to an Embedded Sybase Database,” on page 297](#)
- ♦ [Section 33.5, “Configuring the ZENworks Server to Point to the New MS SQL Database Containing Data Moved from Another MS SQL Database,” on page 299](#)
- ♦ [Section 33.6, “Configuring the ZENworks Server to Point to the New Oracle Database Containing Data Moved from Another Oracle Database,” on page 300](#)

33.1 Backing Up the External Sybase Database

When an external Sybase database (Remote OEM Sybase or Remote Sybase SQL Anywhere) has been installed by using the ZENworks 10 Configuration Management installation media, you can back it up to a directory on the local machine or to a network location.

- ♦ [Section 33.1.1, “Backing Up the External Sybase Database on a Windows or Linux Server,” on page 285](#)
- ♦ [Section 33.1.2, “Backing up the External Sybase Database Running on a Windows Server to a Network Location on a Remote Windows Machine,” on page 288](#)
- ♦ [Section 33.1.3, “Backing up the External Sybase Database Running on a Linux Server to a Network Location on a Remote Linux Machine,” on page 291](#)

33.1.1 Backing Up the External Sybase Database on a Windows or Linux Server

Perform the following steps on the Windows or Linux server that has the external Sybase database installed and running:

- 1** Launch the DBISQL utility:
 - 1a** At the command prompt, go to the `%ZENWORKS_HOME%\sybase\ASA\win32` directory on Windows or to the `/opt/novell/zenworks/share/sybase/bin32s` directory on Linux.
 - 1b** Enter the `dbisql` command.
 - 1c** In the *Identification* tab, specify the database credentials.
 - 1d** Click the *Database* tab, then specify the name of database service that is currently running.
 - 1e** Click *OK*.

- 2** Decide whether you want to immediately back up the external Sybase database or to schedule the backup to run at a specific time. To immediately back up the database, continue with [Step 2a](#). To schedule the backup to run at a specific time, skip to [Step 3](#).

- 2a** To immediately back up the embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere database to a directory on the database server, specify the following query in the *SQL Statements* section:

```
BACKUP DATABASE DIRECTORY
'complete_path_of_the_backup_directory_on_database_server' TRANSACTION
LOG TRUNCATE
```

If you want to back up the database to a directory on Windows, you must use \\ (double backslash) as the delimiter while specifying the database backup directory path.

Examples:

- ♦ **On Windows:** To back up the database to the `c:\dbbackup` directory, execute the following query:

```
BACKUP DATABASE DIRECTORY 'c:\\dbbackup' TRANSACTION LOG TRUNCATE
```

- ♦ **On Linux:** To back up the database to the `/root/dbBackup` directory, execute the following query:

```
BACKUP DATABASE DIRECTORY '/root/dbBackup' TRANSACTION LOG
TRUNCATE
```

You must manually archive the complete path of the database backup location that you specify in the query because you need to specify it when you want to change the database backup location at a later time.

- 2b** Click *Execute SQL Statement(s)*.

- 3** To schedule the backup to run at a specific time every day or on specific days of a month:

1. Execute the following query by specifying it in the *SQL Statements* section

```
CREATE EVENT backup_schedule_name
SCHEDULE
START TIME specify_the_schedule
HANDLER
BEGIN
BACKUP DATABASE DIRECTORY
'complete_path_of_the_backup_directory_on_database_server'
TRANSACTION LOG TRUNCATE
END;
```

2. Click *Execute SQL Statement(s)*.

While creating a database backup event, use the following guidelines:

- ♦ The backup schedule name must be unique.
- ♦ If you want to back up the database to a directory on Windows, you must use \\ (double backslash) as the delimiter while specifying the database backup directory path. For example, `c:\\dbbackup`.
- ♦ You must manually archive the backup schedule that you specify in the query because you need to specify it when you want to change the database schedule at a later time.

Examples:

- ♦ To back up the database at a 1:00 a.m. every day to the `/var/` directory on Linux, execute the following query:

```
CREATE EVENT ZENDBbackup
SCHEDULE
START TIME '1:00 AM' EVERY 24 HOURS
HANDLER
BEGIN
BACKUP DATABASE DIRECTORY '/var/'
TRANSACTION LOG TRUNCATE
END;
```

- ♦ To back up the database at a 1:00 a.m. on the first, second, third, and fourth day of the month to the `c:\dbbackup` directory on Windows, execute the following query:

```
CREATE EVENT ZENDBbackup
SCHEDULE
START TIME '1:00 AM' EVERY 24 HOURS ON (1,2,3,4)
HANDLER
BEGIN
BACKUP DATABASE DIRECTORY 'c:\dbbackup'
TRANSACTION LOG TRUNCATE
END;
```

- ♦ To back up the database to the `/var/day_of_the_week` directory on Linux, execute the following query:

```
CREATE EVENT ZENDBbackup
SCHEDULE
START TIME '1:00 AM' EVERY 24 HOURS
HANDLER
BEGIN
DECLARE backupDir varchar(256);
DECLARE backup_stmt varchar(512);
SET backupDir = DAYNAME(now());
SET backup_stmt = 'BACKUP DATABASE DIRECTORY ' || '/var/' || backupDir || ' TRANSACTION LOG TRUNCATE';
EXECUTE IMMEDIATE backup_stmt;
END;
```

According to the backup schedule, the `zenworks_zone_name.db` database file and the `zenworks_zone_name.log` transaction log file are created in the database backup directory.

If you want to change the database backup location or the backup schedule at a later time, see [Section 34.2.2, “Changing the Backup Schedule and Location of the External Sybase Database Subsequent to the Initial Backup,”](#) on page 309.

33.1.2 Backing up the External Sybase Database Running on a Windows Server to a Network Location on a Remote Windows Machine

To back up an external Sybase database that is installed and running on a Windows server to a network location on another Windows machine, you need a local machine and a remote machine. The local machine is a Windows server with the external Sybase database installed. The remote machine is a Windows machine that has the network location to which you want to back up the database.

- 1** Perform the following steps on the local machine:
 - 1a** Create an administrative user and specify a password.
For example, you could specify the administrative username as `Administrator` and the password as `novell`.
 - 1b** From the desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings*, click *Control Panel*, double-click *Administrative Tools*, then double-click *Services*.
 - 1c** Right-click the *Novell ZENworks Datastore* service, then click *Properties*.
 - 1d** Click the *Log On* tab.
 - 1e** Select *This account*, then specify the name and the password of the administrative user you created in [Step 1a](#).
For example, specify the user as `Administrator` and the password as `novell`.
 - 1f** Click *OK*.
- 2** Perform the following steps on the remote machine that has the network location where you want to save the backup:
 - 2a** Create an account with the same credentials as the user you created in [Step 1a](#).
For example, specify user as `Administrator` and password as `novell`.
 - 2b** Provide Read/Write permission on the network location to the user.
- 3** Launch the DBISQL utility on the local machine:
 - 3a** At the command prompt, go to the `%ZENWORKS_HOME%\sybase\ASA\win32` directory on Windows or to the `/opt/novell/zenworks/share/sybase/bin32s` directory on Linux.
 - 3b** Enter the `dbisql` command.
 - 3c** In the *Identification* tab, specify the database credentials.
 - 3d** Click the *Database* tab, then specify the name of database service that is currently running.
 - 3e** Click *OK*.
- 4** Decide whether you want to immediately back up the external Sybase database or to schedule the backup to run at a specific time. To back up the database immediately, continue with [Step 4a](#). To schedule the backup to run at a specific time, skip to [Step 5](#).
 - 4a** To immediately back up the embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere database to the network location on the remote machine, specify the following query in the *SQL Statements* section:


```
BACKUP DATABASE DIRECTORY
'\\IP_address_of_remote_machine\backup_directory\custom_directory
' TRANSACTION LOG TRUNCATE
```

In the query, `\\IP_address_of_the_remote_machine\backup_directory` is the shared network location on the remote machine and `custom_directory_name` is a name that you specify for a directory to be newly created and into which the database files are to be backed up.

For example, execute the following query to back up the database to the `dbbackup` directory:

```
BACKUP DATABASE DIRECTORY
'\\shared_network_location_on_remote_machine\dbbackup' TRANSACTION
LOG TRUNCATE
```

You must manually archive the complete path of the database backup location that you specify in the query because you need to specify it if you want to change the database backup location at a later time.

4b Click *Execute SQL Statement(s)*.

5 To schedule the backup to run at a specific time every day or on specific days of a month:

1. Execute the following query by specifying it in the *SQL Statements* section:

```
CREATE EVENT backup_schedule_name
SCHEDULE
START TIME specify_the_schedule
HANDLER
BEGIN
BACKUP DATABASE DIRECTORY
'\\IP_address_of_remote_machine\backup_directory\custom_directory
',
TRANSACTION LOG TRUNCATE
END;
```

In the query, `\\IP_address_of_the_remote_machine\backup_directory` is the shared network location on the remote machine and `custom_directory_name` is a name that you specify for a directory to be newly created and into which the database files are to be backed up.

While creating a database backup event, use the following guidelines:

- ♦ The backup schedule name must be unique.
- ♦ You must manually archive the backup schedule that you specify in the query because you need to specify it if you want to change the database schedule at a later time.

2. Click *Execute SQL Statement(s)*.

Examples:

- ♦ To back up the database at a 1:00 a.m. every day to the `dbbackup` directory on Windows, execute the following query:

```
CREATE EVENT ZENDBbackup
SCHEDULE
START TIME '1:00 AM' EVERY 24 HOURS
```

```
HANDLER
BEGIN
BACKUP DATABASE DIRECTORY
'\\\\\\shared_network_location_on_remote_machine\\dbbackup'
TRANSACTION LOG TRUNCATE
END;
```

- ♦ To back up the database at a 1:00 a.m. on the first, second, third, and fourth day of the month to the dbbackup directory on a Windows server, execute the following query:

```
CREATE EVENT ZENDBbackup
SCHEDULE
START TIME '1:00 AM' EVERY 24 HOURS ON (1,2,3,4)
HANDLER
BEGIN
BACKUP DATABASE DIRECTORY
'\\\\\\shared_network_location_on_remote_machine\\dbbackup'
TRANSACTION LOG TRUNCATE
END;
```

- ♦ To back up the database to the \\dbbackup\\day_of_the_week directory on a Windows server, execute the following query:

```
CREATE EVENT ZENDBbackup
SCHEDULE
START TIME '1:00 AM' EVERY 24 HOURS
HANDLER
BEGIN
DECLARE backupDir varchar(256);
DECLARE backup_stmt varchar(512);
SET backupDir = DAYNAME(now());
SET backup_stmt = 'BACKUP DATABASE DIRECTORY ' ||
'''\\\\\\shared_network_location_on_remote_machine\\dbbackup/' ||
backupDir || ''' || 'TRANSACTION LOG TRUNCATE';
EXECUTE IMMEDIATE backup_stmt;
END;
```

According to the backup schedule, zenworks_zone_name.db and zenworks_zone_name.log are created in the network location on the remote machine. The backed-up database is stored in zenworks_zone_name.db. The result of the database backup is logged in zenworks_zone_name.log.

If you want to change the database backup location or the backup schedule at a later time, see [Section 34.2.2, “Changing the Backup Schedule and Location of the External Sybase Database Subsequent to the Initial Backup,” on page 309.](#)

33.1.3 Backing up the External Sybase Database Running on a Linux Server to a Network Location on a Remote Linux Machine

To back up the external Sybase database that is installed and running on a Linux server to a network location on a Linux machine, you need a local machine and a remote machine. The local machine is a Linux server with the external Sybase database installed. The remote machine is a Linux machine that has the network location to which you want to back up the database.

You can back up the database on a Linux machine by using any Linux share such as Samba share or an NFS share.

To back up the external Sybase database that is installed and running on a Linux server to a network location on a Linux machine by using Samba share:

1 Create a Samba share on the remote machine:

1a Create a user by entering the `useradd user_name` command at the command prompt.

1b Log in to the remote machine with the username you created in [Step 1a](#), and set the password by using the `passwd specify_the_password` command.

1c Create a directory to save the database backup.

For example, create a directory with the name `backup`.

1d Open the Samba server settings by running the `yast2 samba-server` command.

1e Click the *Shares* tab, then click *Add* to specify the share name and the path to the backup directory you created in [Step 1c](#).

For example, specify the share name as `dbbackup`.

1f Select the `dbbackup` share, click *Edit*, then add the following attributes:

- ♦ `create mask = 0640`
- ♦ `force user = user_name_created_in_Step 1a`
- ♦ `guest ok = yes`
- ♦ `public = yes`
- ♦ `wide links = no`
- ♦ `writable = yes`

2 Create a directory on the local machine.

For example, create a directory with the name `zenworks_dbbackup` in `/root`.

3 Mount the Samba share on the `zenworks_dbbackup` directory on the local machine by entering the following command at the command prompt:

```
mount -t smbfs //IP_address of the remote_machine/share_name -o
username=user_name_specified_in_Step1a,password=password_
specified_in_Step_1b
local_directory_name_with_complete_path_created_in_Step2
```

For example:

```
mount -t smbfs //IP_address of the remote_machine/dbbackup -o
username=user_name_specified_in_Step1a,password=password_
specified_in_Step_1b /root/zenworks_dbbackup
```

- 4 Launch the DBISQL utility on the local machine:
 - 4a At the command prompt, go to the %ZENWORKS_HOME%\sybase\ASA\win32 directory on Windows or to the /opt/novell/zenworks/share/sybase/bin32s directory on Linux.
 - 4b Enter the dbisql command.
 - 4c In the *Identification* tab, specify the database credentials.
 - 4d Click the *Database* tab, then specify the name of database service that is currently running.
 - 4e Click *OK*.
- 5 Decide whether you want to immediately back up the external Sybase database or to schedule the backup to run at a specific time. To back up the database immediately, continue with this step. To schedule the backup to run at a specific time, skip to [Step 5](#).

- 5a To immediately back up the external Sybase database to the network location on the remote machine, specify the following query in the *SQL Statements* section:

```
BACKUP DATABASE DIRECTORY
'complete_path_of_the_backup_directory_on_database_server' TRANSACTION
LOG TRUNCATE
```

For example, execute the following query to back up the database to the /root/zenworks_dbbackup directory:

```
BACKUP DATABASE DIRECTORY '/root/zenworks_dbbackup/' TRANSACTION LOG
TRUNCATE
```

You must manually archive the complete path of the database backup location that you specify in the query because you need to specify it if you want to change the database backup location at a later time.

- 5b Click *Execute SQL Statement(s)*.
- 6 To schedule the backup to run at a specific time every day or on specific days of a month:
 1. Execute the following query by specifying it in the *SQL Statements* section:

```
CREATE EVENT backup_schedule_name
SCHEDULE
START TIME specify_the_schedule
HANDLER
BEGIN
BACKUP DATABASE DIRECTORY
'complete_path_of_the_backup_directory_on_database_server'
TRANSACTION LOG TRUNCATE
END;
```

While creating a database backup event, use the following guidelines:

- ♦ The backup schedule name that you specify must be unique.
- ♦ You must manually archive the backup schedule that you specify in the query because you need to specify it if you want to change the database schedule at a later time.

2. Click *Execute SQL Statement(s)*.

Examples:

- ♦ To back up the database at a 1:00 a.m. every day to the `/root/zenworks_dbbackup` directory on Linux, execute the following query:

```
CREATE EVENT ZENDBbackup
SCHEDULE
START TIME '1:00 AM' EVERY 24 HOURS
HANDLER
BEGIN
BACKUP DATABASE DIRECTORY '/root/zenworks_dbbackup/'
TRANSACTION LOG TRUNCATE
END;
```

- ♦ To back up the database at a 1:00 a.m. on the first, second, third, and fourth day of the month to the `/root/zenworks_dbbackup` directory on Linux, execute the following query:

```
CREATE EVENT ZENDBbackup
SCHEDULE
START TIME '1:00 AM' EVERY 24 HOURS ON (1,2,3,4)
HANDLER
BEGIN
BACKUP DATABASE DIRECTORY '/root/zenworks_dbbackup/'
TRANSACTION LOG TRUNCATE
END;
```

- ♦ To back up the database to the `/root/zenworks_dbbackup/day_of_the_week` directory on Linux, execute the following query:

```
CREATE EVENT ZENDBbackup
SCHEDULE
START TIME '1:00 AM' EVERY 24 HOURS
HANDLER
BEGIN
DECLARE backupDir varchar(256);
DECLARE backup_stmt varchar(512);
SET backupDir = DAYNAME(now());
SET backup_stmt = 'BACKUP DATABASE DIRECTORY ' || '''/root/
zenworks_dbbackup/' || backupDir || '''' || ' TRANSACTION LOG
TRUNCATE';
EXECUTE IMMEDIATE backup_stmt;
END;
```

According to the backup schedule, `zenworks_zone_name.db` and `zenworks_zone_name.log` are created in the network location on the remote machine (`/root/zenworks_dbbackup`). The backed-up database is stored in `zenworks_zone_name.db`. The result of the database backup is logged in `zenworks_zone_name.log`.

If you want to change the database backup location or the backup schedule at a later time, see [Section 34.2.2, “Changing the Backup Schedule and Location of the External Sybase Database Subsequent to the Initial Backup,”](#) on page 309.

33.2 Restoring the External Sybase Database

IMPORTANT: If the database is located on a ZENworks Server, you must first restore the ZENworks Server, then restore the ZENworks database. Ensure that you have backed up the ZENworks Server and the database (at least once). You can also back up the ZENworks database on a regular basis. However, you can back up the server and the database in any order. For more information about backing up and restoring the ZENworks Server, see [Chapter 10, “Backing Up and Restoring the ZENworks Server and Certificate Authority,”](#) on page 111.



You can choose to restore the backed-up external Sybase database (Remote OEM Sybase or Remote Sybase SQL Anywhere) on the same device that has database server installed or to a different device.

To restore the backed-up external Sybase database:

- 1 Stop the Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore service on the database server on which you want to restore the backed-up database. If you choose to restore the backed-up database on a different device, you must stop the service on that device as well as on the database server.
 - ♦ **On Windows:** Do the following:
 1. From the Windows desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings > Control Panel*.
 2. Double-click *Administrative Tools > Services*.
 3. Right-click the *Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore* service, then click *Stop*, or select the *Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore* service, then click ■ on the toolbar.
 - ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter `/etc/init.d/.sybase-asa stop`.
- 2 Stop the ZENworks Server service on the Primary Server to which the database is registered.
 - ♦ **On Windows:** Do the following:
 1. From the Windows desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings > Control Panel*.
 2. Double-click *Administrative Tools > Services*.
 3. Right-click the *Novell ZENworks Server* service, then click *Stop*, or select the *Novell ZENworks Server* service, then click ■ on the toolbar.
 - ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter `/etc/init.d/.novell-zenserver stop`.
- 3 Copy the following files from the device where the external Sybase database is backed up to the device on which you want to restore the external Sybase database:
 - ♦ `zenworks_zone_name.db`
 - ♦ `zenworks_zone_name.log`

By default, the files must be copied to the

`ZENworks_Installation_directory:\Novell\Zenworks\Database` on a Windows Sybase database server, and to the `/var/opt/novell/zenworks/database/` on a Linux Sybase database server.

- 4 Start the Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore service on the database server on which you restored the backed-up database. If you have restored the backed-up database to a different device, you must start the service on that device as well as on the database server.
 - ♦ **On Windows:** Do the following:
 1. From the Windows desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings > Control Panel*.
 2. Double-click *Administrative Tools > Services*.
 3. Right-click the *Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore* service, then click *Start*, or select the *Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore* service, then click  on the toolbar.
 - ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter `/etc/init.d/./sybase-asa stop`.
- 5 On the Primary Server to which the database is registered, start the ZENworks Server service.
 - ♦ **On Windows:** Do the following:
 1. From the Windows desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings > Control Panel*.
 2. Double-click *Administrative Tools > Services*.
 3. Right-click the Novell ZENworks Server service, then click *Start*, or select the *Novell ZENworks Server* service, then click  on the toolbar.
 - ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter the following commands:

```
/etc/init.d/./novell-zenserver restart
```
- 6 (Conditional) If you restore the database to a location other than the one given in the `zenworks_database.conf` file, you must manually edit the file to specify the new location of the database. The `zenworks_database.conf` file is located by default in the `zenworks_installation_directory\novell\zenworks\database\conf\` directory on Windows and in the `/etc/opt/novell/zenworks/` directory on Linux.

33.3 Moving the Data from One External Sybase Database to another External Sybase Database

ZENworks 10 Configuration Management allows you move the data from one OEM Sybase database (external Sybase database) to another external Sybase database.

- ♦ [Section 33.3.1, “Preparing to Move the Data,” on page 295](#)
- ♦ [Section 33.3.2, “Moving the Data from One External Sybase to Another External Sybase,” on page 296](#)

33.3.1 Preparing to Move the Data

Before moving the data from one external Sybase database to another external Sybase database, do the following:

- ♦ Make sure that ZENworks 10 Configuration Management is installed with an external Sybase database on a Windows or Linux device. The data is moved from this database to another external database.
- ♦ Make sure that you have another Windows or Linux device with an external Sybase database installed. For more information on how to install an external Sybase database, see [“Installing an External ZENworks Database”](#) in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Installation Guide*.

33.3.2 Moving the Data from One External Sybase to Another External Sybase

In the following procedure, assume that the device you are moving the data from is EDB1 and the device you are moving the data to is EDB2.

- 1 On the EDB1 device from which you want to move the data, stop the Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore service.
 - ♦ **On Windows:** Do the following:
 1. From the Windows desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings > Control Panel*.
 2. Double-click *Administrative Tools > Services*.
 3. Right-click the *Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore* service, then click *Stop*, or select the *Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore* service, then click ■ on the toolbar.
 - ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter `/etc/init.d/./sybase-asa stop`.
- 2 From the EDB1 device, copy `zenworks_database.conf` and all files within the database directory to the appropriate directories on the EDB2 device.

The `zenworks_database.conf` is located in the `ZENworks_installation_path\conf\` directory on Windows and in the `/etc/opt/novell/zenworks/` directory on Linux.

The database directory is located in `ZENworks_installation_path` by default on Windows and in the `/var/opt/novell/zenworks/` directory on Linux.
- 3 On the EDB2 device, open `zenworks_database.conf` and make sure that it contains the correct path of the database file.
- 4 On the EDB1 device, edit `zdm.xml` (located in `ZENworks_installation_path\conf\datamodel` on Windows and in `/etc/opt/novell/zenworks/datamodel` on Linux):
 - ♦ Set the value of the `Server` entry key to the IP address of the EDB2 device.
 - ♦ Make sure that the value of the `Port` entry key is the port number on which the EDB2 device is running.
- 5 On the EDB2 device, start the Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore service:
 - ♦ **On Windows:** Do the following:
 1. From the Windows desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings > Control Panel*.
 2. Double-click *Administrative Tools > Services*.
 3. Right-click the *Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore* service, then click *Start*, or select the *Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore* service, then click ■ on the toolbar.
 - ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter `/etc/init.d/./sybase-asa start`.
- 6 On the EDB1 device, restart the ZENworks services:
 - ♦ **On Windows:** Do the following:
 1. From the Windows desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings > Control Panel*.
 2. Double-click *Administrative Tools > Services*.
 3. Start the following services: *Novell ZENworks Server*, *Novell ZENworks Services Monitor*, and *Novell ZENworks Agent Service*.

- ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter the following commands:

- ♦ `/etc/init.d/./novell-zenmntr restart`
- ♦ `/etc/init.d/./novell-zenserver restart`
- ♦ `/etc/init.d/./novell-zenloader restart`

The ZENworks Server now points to new database (EDB2).

33.4 Moving the Data from an External OEM Sybase Database to an Embedded Sybase Database

ZENworks 10 Configuration Management allows you move the data from an OEM Sybase database (external Sybase database) to a Embedded OEM Sybase SQL Anywhere database (embedded Sybase database) that is installed on the ZENworks Server.

- ♦ [Section 33.4.1, “Preparing to Move the Data,” on page 297](#)
- ♦ [Section 33.4.2, “Moving the Data from the External Sybase to the Embedded Sybase,” on page 297](#)

33.4.1 Preparing to Move the Data

Before moving the data from an external Sybase database to an embedded Sybase database, do the following:

- ♦ Make sure that ZENworks 10 Configuration Management is installed with an external OEM Sybase database on a Windows or Linux device.
- ♦ Install the Embedded OEM Sybase database on the ZENworks Server. For more information on how to install the database, see “[Installing an External ZENworks Database](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Installation Guide*.

During the installation of the embedded Sybase database, you must consider the following points while configuring the Sybase Access Configuration page:

- ♦ The database name can be same as that of the external Sybase database or can be a unique name.
- ♦ Make sure that the username and password are same as that of the external Sybase database.
- ♦ Make sure that the database server name is unique.

33.4.2 Moving the Data from the External Sybase to the Embedded Sybase

- 1 On the ZENworks Server that has the embedded Sybase database installed, do the following:

- 1a Stop the Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore service.

- ♦ **On Windows:** Do the following:

1. From the Windows desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings > Control Panel*.

2. Double-click *Administrative Tools > Services*.
 3. Right-click the *Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore* service, then click *Stop*, or select the *Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore* service, then click ■ on the toolbar.
 - ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter `/etc/init.d/.sybase-asa stop`.
- 1b** Delete the contents of the database directory.
- The database directory is located in `ZENworks_installation_path` on Windows and in the `/opt/novell/zenworks/` directory on Linux.
- 2 On the device that has the external Sybase database installed, stop the Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore service.
 - ♦ **On Windows:** Do the following:
 1. From the Windows desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings > Control Panel*.
 2. Double-click *Administrative Tools > Services*.
 3. Right-click the *Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore* service, then click *Stop*, or select the *Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore* service, then click ■ on the toolbar.
 - ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter `/etc/init.d/.sybase-asa stop`.
 - 3 From the device that has the external Sybase database installed, copy all files within the database directory to the appropriate directories on the ZENworks Server that has the embedded Sybase database.

The database directory is located in `ZENworks_installation_path` on Windows and in the `/opt/novell/zenworks/` directory on Linux.
 - 4 On the ZENworks Server that has the embedded Sybase database installed, open `zenworks_database.conf` and make sure that it contains the correct path of the database file.
 - 5 On the ZENworks Server that has the embedded Sybase database installed, edit `zdm.xml` (located in `ZENworks_installation_path\conf\datamodel` on Windows and in `/etc/opt/novell/zenworks/datamodel` on Linux):
 - ♦ Add the following entry:


```
<entry key="Embedded">true</entry>
```
 - ♦ Set the value of the `Server` entry key to 127.0.0.1 (the IP address of the ZENworks Server that has the embedded Sybase database installed).
 - ♦ Make sure that the value of the `Port` entry key is the port number on which the embedded Sybase database is running.
 - ♦ Set the value of the `Engine` entry key to the database server name specified during the installation of the embedded Sybase database.
 - ♦ (Optional) If you've specified a unique database name during the installation of the embedded Sybase database, set the value of the `Database` entry key to the unique database name.
 - 6 On the ZENworks Server that has the embedded Sybase database installed, restart the ZENworks services:
 - ♦ **On Windows:** Do the following:
 1. From the Windows desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings > Control Panel*.

2. Double-click *Administrative Tools > Services*.
 3. Start the following services: *Novell ZENworks Server*, *Novell ZENworks Services Monitor*, *Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore*, and *Novell ZENworks Agent Service*.
- ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter the following commands:
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/./novell-zenmntr restart`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/./novell-zenserver restart`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/./novell-zenloader restart`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/./sybase-asa restart`

The ZENworks Server now points to new database.

33.5 Configuring the ZENworks Server to Point to the New MS SQL Database Containing Data Moved from Another MS SQL Database

If you move the data from one MS SQL database to another MS SQL database, the ZENworks Server must be configured to point to the new MS SQL database.

The following sections provide detailed information:

- ♦ [Section 33.5.1, “Preparing to Move the Data,” on page 299](#)
- ♦ [Section 33.5.2, “Configuring the ZENworks Server to Point to the New MS SQL Database,” on page 300](#)

33.5.1 Preparing to Move the Data

Before configuring the server to point the new MS SQL database, do the following:

- ♦ Make sure that ZENworks 10 Configuration Management is installed (on Windows or Linux) with an MS SQL database. The data is migrated from this database to another MS SQL database. Assume that this device is called MSDB1.
- ♦ Make sure that you have another Windows device with an MS SQL database installed. Assume that this device is called MSDB2. For more information on how to install an MS SQL database, see [“Installing an External ZENworks Database”](#) in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Installation Guide*.
- ♦ Move the data from MSDB1 to MSDB2. For more information about moving the data, see the MS SQL database documentation.

33.5.2 Configuring the ZENworks Server to Point to the New MS SQL Database

To configure the ZENworks Server to point to the new database (MSDB2):

- 1 On the MSDB1 device, edit `zdm.xml` (located in `ZENworks_installation_path\conf\datamodel` on Windows and in `/etc/opt/novell/zenworks/datamodel` on Linux) to do the following:
 - ♦ Make sure that the value of the `Port` entry key is the port number on which the MS SQL database is running.
 - ♦ Set the value of the `Server` entry key to the IP address of the MSDB2 device.
 - ♦ Set the value of the `Database` entry key to path of the database directory of the MSDB2 device.
- 2 On the MSDB1 device, restart the ZENworks services.
 - ♦ **On Windows:** Do the following:
 1. From the Windows desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings > Control Panel*.
 2. Double-click *Administrative Tools > Services*.
 3. Start the following services: *Novell ZENworks Server*, *Novell ZENworks Services Monitor*, and *Novell ZENworks Agent Service*.
 - ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter the following commands:
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/.novell-zenmntr restart`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/.novell-zenserver restart`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/.novell-zenloader restart`

33.6 Configuring the ZENworks Server to Point to the New Oracle Database Containing Data Moved from Another Oracle Database

If you move the data from one Oracle database to another Oracle database, the ZENworks Server must be configured to point to the new Oracle database.

The following sections provide detailed information:

- ♦ [Section 33.6.1, “Preparing to Move the Data,” on page 300](#)
- ♦ [Section 33.6.2, “Configuring the ZENworks Server to Point to the New Oracle Database,” on page 301](#)

33.6.1 Preparing to Move the Data

Before configuring the server to point the new Oracle database, do the following:

- ♦ Make sure that ZENworks 10 Configuration Management is installed (on Windows or Linux) with an Oracle database. The data is migrated from this database to another Oracle database. Assume that this device is called ORDB1.

- ♦ Make sure that you have another Windows device with an Oracle database installed with the same database credentials as the ORDB1. Assume that this device is called ORDB2. For more information on how to install an Oracle database, see “[Installing an External ZENworks Database](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Installation Guide*.
- ♦ Move the data from ORDB1 to ORDB2. For more information about moving the data, see the Oracle database documentation.

33.6.2 Configuring the ZENworks Server to Point to the New Oracle Database

To configure the ZENworks Server to point to the new Oracle database (ORDB2):

- 1 On the ORDB1 device, edit `zdm.xml` (located in `ZENworks_installation_path\conf\datamodel` on Windows and in `/etc/opt/novell/zenworks/datamodel` on Linux) to do the following:
 - ♦ Make sure that the value of the `Port` entry key is the port number on which the Oracle database is running.
 - ♦ Set the value of the `Server` entry key to the IP address of the ORDB2 device.
 - ♦ Set the value of the `Database` entry key to net service name of the Oracle database installed on the ORDB2 device.
- 2 On the ORDB1 device, restart the ZENworks services.
 - ♦ **On Windows:** Do the following:
 1. From the Windows desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings > Control Panel*.
 2. Double-click *Administrative Tools > Services*.
 3. Start the following services: *Novell ZENworks Server*, *Novell ZENworks Services Monitor*, and *Novell ZENworks Agent Service*.
 - ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter the following commands:
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/./novell-zenmntr restart`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/./novell-zenserver restart`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/./novell-zenloader restart`

This sections includes some tips and best practices for Sybase database:

- ♦ [Section 34.1, “Database Best Practices,” on page 303](#)
- ♦ [Section 34.2, “Database Tips,” on page 307](#)

34.1 Database Best Practices

- ♦ [Section 34.1.1, “Updating the Embedded or External Sybase Database Packages,” on page 303](#)

34.1.1 Updating the Embedded or External Sybase Database Packages

If you have an embedded or external Sybase database installed, you should have the latest Sybase packages installed.

- ♦ [“Updating the Sybase Packages” on page 303](#)
- ♦ [“Reloading the Sybase Database” on page 305](#)

Updating the Sybase Packages

- 1 Make sure that you have archived your database credentials.

To archive the credentials of an external Sybase database, contact your database administrator.

To archive the credentials of an embedded or external OEM Sybase database, perform the following tasks on the database server:

- 1a Make sure the database service is running.

On Windows: In the Windows Services, make sure that the status of *Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore* is *Started*.

On Linux: At the console prompt, enter `/etc/init.d/sybase-asa status` to verify the status of the database. If the database is not running, enter `/etc/init.d/./sybase-asa start`.

- 1b Obtain the Sybase connection information by running the `zman dgc` command.

- 1c Provide the credentials of the ZENworks administrator when prompted.

- 1d Copy and save the database username and password in to a text file.

- 2 Stop the Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore service.

- ♦ **On Windows:** Do the following:
 1. From the Windows desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings > Control Panel*.
 2. Double-click *Administrative Tools > Services*.
 3. Right-click the *Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore* service, then click *Stop*, or select the *Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore* service, then click ■ on the toolbar.
- ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter `/etc/init.d/./sybase-asa stop`.

- 3 Depending upon the platform on which the Sybase database is installed, download the following Sybase SQL Anywhere EBF packages from the [Novell Downloads Web site \(http://download.novell.com/\)](http://download.novell.com/) to a temporary location on the database server:

♦ `sybase-asa-10.0.1.ebf_version.msi` or `sybase-asa-10.0.1.ebf_version.rpm`

For example, `sybase-asa-10.0.1.3960.msi` (3960 indicates the Sybase EBF version)

♦ `novell-zenworks-sybase-libs-10.0.1.ebf_version.msi` or `novell-zenworks-sybase-libs-10.0.1.ebf_version.rpm`

For example, `novell-zenworks-sybase-libs-10.0.1.3960.msi` (3960 indicates the Sybase EBF version)

TIP: For more information about what an EBF (Express Bug Fix) is, see the [Sybase documentation \(http://www.sybase.com/detail?id=1019567#EBF\)](http://www.sybase.com/detail?id=1019567#EBF).

In the following steps, assume that the MSI files are downloaded to the `c:\sybase` directory on Windows, and the RPM files are downloaded to the `/tmp/sybase` directory on Linux.

- 4 Install the downloaded MSI or RPM files on the database server.
- ♦ To install the MSI or RPM files for the embedded Sybase database, which resides on the Primary Server:

On Windows:

- ♦ Install `sybase-asa-10.0.1.ebf_version.msi` by running the following command:

```
msiexec /i c:\sybase\sybase-asa-10.0.1.ebf_version.msi  
TARGETDIR="%ZENWORKS_HOME%\share" ALLUSERS=2
```

Replace `c:\sybase` with the complete path of the directory where you downloaded the Sybase EBF packages in [Step 3](#). `%ZENWORKS_HOME%` is the complete path of the ZENworks installation directory.

- ♦ (Conditional) If the server has Update for ZENworks 10 Configuration Management SP2 (10.2.2) or later installed, you must install `novell-zenworks-sybase-libs-10.0.1.ebf_version.msi` by running the following command:

```
msiexec /i c:\sybase\novell-zenworks-sybase-libs-  
10.0.1.ebf_version.msi  
TARGETDIR="<Parent_of_the_Novell\ZENworks_directory_structure>"  
ALLUSERS=2 REBOOT=ReallySuppress
```

On Linux:

- ♦ Install `sybase-asa-10.0.1-ebf_version.rpm` by running the following command:

```
rpm -Uvh /tmp/sybase/sybase-asa-10.0.1-ebf_version.rpm
```

Replace `/tmp/sybase/` with the complete path of the directory where you downloaded the Sybase EBF packages in [Step 3](#).

- ♦ (Conditional) If the server has Update for ZENworks 10 Configuration Management SP2 (10.2.2) or later installed, you must install `novell-zenworks-sybase-libs-10.0.1-ebf_version.rpm` by running the following command:

```
rpm -Uvh /tmp/sybase/novell-zenworks-sybase-libs-10.0.1-ebf  
version.rpm
```


- ♦ To install the MSI or RPM file for the external Sybase database, run the following command:

On Windows: Install `sybase-asa-10.0.1.ebf_version.msi` by running the following command:

```
msiexec /i c:\sybase\sybase-asa-10.0.1.ebf_version.msi
TARGETDIR="{Path to Sybase /share directory}" ALLUSERS=2
```

Replace `c:\sybase` with the complete path of the directory where you downloaded the Sybase EBF packages in [Step 3](#).

On Linux: Install `sybase-asa-10.0.1.ebf_version.rpm` by running the following command:

```
rpm -Uvh /tmp/sybase/sybase-asa-10.0.1-ebf_version.rpm
```

Replace `/tmp/sybase/` with the complete path of the directory where you downloaded the Sybase EBF packages in [Step 3](#).

- 5 From the console prompt, go to Sybase installation directory. By default, it is the `%ZENWORKS_HOME%\share\ASA\win32` directory on Windows and the `/opt/novell/zenworks/share/sybase/bin32s` directory on Linux.
- 6 Verify that the version of the EBF is same as the one you updated in [Step 4](#) by running the following command:

```
dblocate
```

- 7 Reload the database.

For more information, see [“Reloading the Sybase Database” on page 305](#).

Reloading the Sybase Database

- 1 Make sure that you have archived your database credentials.
For more information on how to archive the database credentials, see [Step 1 on page 303](#).
- 2 Stop the Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore service, if it is running.
 - ♦ **On Windows:** Do the following:
 1. From the Windows desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings > Control Panel*.
 2. Double-click *Administrative Tools > Services*.
 3. Right-click the *Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore* service, then click *Stop*, or select the *Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore* service, then click ■ on the toolbar.
 - ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter `/etc/init.d/sybase-asa stop`.
- 3 At the console prompt, go to the Sybase database directory. By default, it is `%ZENWORKS_HOME%\database` on Windows, and `/var/opt/novell/zenworks/database` on Linux.
- 4 Take a reliable backup of the `zenworks_zone_name.db` and `zenworks_zone_name.log` files.
- 5 Start the Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore service.
 - ♦ **On Windows:** Do the following:
 1. From the Windows desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings > Control Panel*.
 2. Double-click *Administrative Tools > Services*.
 3. Right-click the *Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore* service, then click *Start*, or select the *Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore* service, then click ► on the toolbar.

- ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter `/etc/init.d/./sybase-asa start`.
- 6** (Conditional) If your database is installed on Linux, run the following script file:
- ```
source /opt/novell/zenworks/share/sybase/bin32/sa_config.sh
```
- 7** (Conditional) If you have a Sybase SQL Anywhere EBF version prior to SQL Anywhere 10.0.1 EBF 3960, launch the DBISQL utility and set up the database authentication.
- 7a** Launch the DBISQL utility.
- 7a1** At the command prompt, go to the `%ZENWORKS_HOME%\sybase\ASA\win32` directory on Windows or to the `/opt/novell/zenworks/share/sybase/bin32s` directory on Linux.
- 7a2** Enter the `dbisql` command.
- 7a3** In the *Identification* tab, specify the database credentials.
- 7a4** Click the *Database* tab, then specify the name of database service that is currently running.
- 7a5** Click *OK*.
- 7b** In the *SQL Statements* section, specify the following query:
- ```
select setting
from sysoptions
where "option" like 'database%' >># output_filename
```
- 7c** Click *Execute SQL Statement(s)*.
- The results of the query are written to the output file that you specify in the query.
- 7d** Copy the result of the query from the output file, and paste it as the value of the `database_authentication` attribute in the `%zenworks_home%\share\asa\scripts\saopts.sql` file.
- The `database_authentication` attribute is located in the following entry in the `saopts.sql` file:
- ```
if not exists(select * from SYS.SYSOPTION
where ucase("option") = ucase('database_authentication')) then
set option PUBLIC.database_authentication =
<output_of_the_query_run_in_step_7b>;
end if
go
```
- 8** Stop the Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore service.
- ♦ **For the Embedded Database:** Stop all the ZENworks services, including the Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore service:
    1. At the console prompt, run the `novell-zenworks-configure -c Start` command.
    2. Type the option number corresponding to Stop.
    3. Press Enter twice.
  - ♦ **For the External Database:** Stop the Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore Service by stopping the Windows Services manager on Windows, or by running the `/etc/init.d/sybase-asa stop` command on Linux.
- 9** At the console prompt of the database server, run the following command to start the database service:

**On Windows:** dbeng10 %ZENWORKS\_HOME%\database\zenworks\_ZONE\_NAME.db -n rebuild

**On Linux:** dbeng10 /var/opt/novell/zenworks/database/zenworks\_ZONE\_NAME.db -n rebuild

- 10** Create a temporary directory with the name as unload within c:\dbreload\ on Windows or within /tmp/dbreload/ on Linux.

- 11** Run the unload command.

**On Windows:** dbunload -c "UID=zenadmin;PWD=database\_password;ENG=rebuild" -an c:\dbreload\unload\zenworks\_<management\_zone\_name>.db

**On Linux:** dbunload -c "UID=zenadmin;PWD=database\_password;ENG=rebuild" -an /tmp/dbreload/unload/zenworks\_<management\_zone\_name>.db

- 12** After the database rebuild has been successfully completed, take a reliable backup of the newly built database.

If you encounter any issues during the rebuild process, contact [Novell Support \(http://www.novell.com/support\)](http://www.novell.com/support).

- 13** Stop the Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore service by using the dbeng10 command:

- ♦ **On Windows:** Right-click the *Rebuild* icon located in Windows taskbar, then click *Shutdown*.
- ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter q.

- 14** Overwrite the database and applicable log file in the database directory with the new ones located in the unload directory (zenworks\_management\_zone\_name.\*).

The unload directory is located in c:\dbreload\ on Windows or in /tmp/dbreload/ on Linux.

- 15** Start the Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore service.

- ♦ **For the Embedded Database:** Start all the ZENworks services, including the Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore service:
  1. At the console prompt, run the novell-zenworks-configure -c Start command.
  2. Type the option number corresponding to Start.
  3. Press Enter twice.
- ♦ **For the External Database:** Start the Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore service in the Services window on Windows, or run the /etc/init.d/sybase-asa start command on Linux.

- 16** Take a backup of the newly created database on a regular basis (daily or weekly).

## 34.2 Database Tips

- ♦ [Section 34.2.1, “Changing the Backup Location and Schedule of the Embedded Sybase Database Subsequent to the Initial Backup,” on page 308](#)
- ♦ [Section 34.2.2, “Changing the Backup Schedule and Location of the External Sybase Database Subsequent to the Initial Backup,” on page 309](#)

## 34.2.1 Changing the Backup Location and Schedule of the Embedded Sybase Database Subsequent to the Initial Backup

Review the following sections:

- ♦ “Changing the Backup Location of the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database Subsequent to the Initial Backup” on page 308
- ♦ “Changing the Backup Schedule of the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database Subsequent to the Initial Backup” on page 308

### Changing the Backup Location of the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database Subsequent to the Initial Backup

To change the backup location of the embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere database subsequent to its initial backup:

- 1 Delete the existing database backup schedule by executing the following command at the Primary Server command prompt:

```
zman db current_database_backup_location DropSchedule.sql
```

Dropschedule.sql is located by default in the  
ZENworks\_Installation\_directory:\Novell\Zenworks\share\zman\samples\datab  
ase directory on a Windows server, and in the /opt/novell/zenworks/share/zman/  
samples/database directory on a Linux server.

- 2 Enter the following command to back up the database to a new location:

```
zman database-backup
complete_path_of_the_new_database_backup_directory
complete_path_of_the_database_backup_schedule_file -d
SQL_function_call
```

For example, to back up the database to the c:\dbbackup\newdbbackups directory on a Windows server according to the database backup schedule specified in the c:\backUpschedule.sql, enter the following command:

```
zman database-backup c:\dbbackup\newdbbackups c:\backUpSchedule.sql -d
SQL_function_call
```

For more information about this command, view the zman man page (man zman) on the device, or see [zman\(1\)](#) in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.

### Changing the Backup Schedule of the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database Subsequent to the Initial Backup

To change the backup schedule of the embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere database subsequent to its initial backup:

- 1 Create a schedule file with the Alter Event content:

```
ALTER EVENT backup_schedule_name
SCHEDULE
START TIME specify_the_schedule
```

For example, you could use the `Alterschedule.sql` file to back up the database at a 11:00 p.m. on Monday, Tuesday, and Wednesday of every week as follows:

```
ALTER EVENT ZENDBBackup
SCHEDULE
START TIME '11:00 PM'
ON ('Monday', 'Tuesday', 'Wednesday')
```

A sample `Alterschedule.sql` file is available in the `ZENworks_Installation_directory:\Novell\Zenworks\share\zman\samples\database directory` on a Windows server, and in the `/opt/novell/zenworks/share/zman/samples/database directory` on a Linux server.

- 2 Enter the following command to back up the database according to the new schedule:

```
zman database-backup complete_path_of_the_database_backup_directory
complete_path_of_the_modified_database_backup_schedule_file -d
SQL_function_call
```

For example, to back up the database to the `c:\dbbackup\` directory on a Windows server according to the database backup schedule specified in the `c:\AlterSchedule.sql`, enter the following command:

```
zman database-backup c:\dbbackup\ c:\AlterSchedule.sql -d
SQL_function_call
```

For more information about this command, view the `zman` man page (`man zman`) on the device, or see [zman\(1\)](#) in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.

## 34.2.2 Changing the Backup Schedule and Location of the External Sybase Database Subsequent to the Initial Backup

To change the backup location and the backup schedule of the external Sybase database subsequent to its initial backup, perform the following tasks on the device that has the external Sybase database installed and running:

- 1 Launch the DBISQL utility:
  - 1a At the command prompt, go to the `%ZENWORKS_HOME%\sybase\ASA\win32` directory on Windows or to the `/opt/novell/zenworks/share/sybase/bin32s` directory on Linux.
  - 1b Enter the `dbisql` command.
  - 1c In the *Identification* tab, specify the database credentials.
  - 1d Click the *Database* tab, then specify the name of database service that is currently running.
  - 1e Click *OK*.
- 2 Change the database backup schedule and the backup location as desired.

You can use the same SQL query to change the database backup schedule and the backup location. You can change the backup schedule and the location at the same time or at a different time.

```
ALTER EVENT
name_of_the_existing_backup_schedule_event_containing_the_database_backup
_schedule_or_location_that_you_want_to_change
```

```

SCHEDULE
new_database_backup_schedule or existing_backup_schedule
HANDLER
BEGIN
BACKUP DATABASE DIRECTORY
'complete_path_of_the_existing_database_backup_location or
complete_path_of new_database_backup_location'
TRANSACTION LOG TRUNCATE
END;

```

If you want to back up the database to a directory on Windows, you must use \\ (double backslash) as the delimiter while specifying the database backup directory path

For example, assume that you have database backup event, zendbbackup, that locally backs up the database to c:\dbbackup at 1:00 a.m. every day. If you want to change the database backup schedule or location, review the following:

- ♦ If you want to back up the database at 11:00 p.m. on Monday, Wednesday, and Friday of every week, change the database backup schedule in the zendbbackup event by executing the following query in the DBISQL utility:

```

ALTER EVENT zendbbackup
SCHEDULE
'11:00 PM' ON ('Monday', 'Wednesday', 'Friday')
HANDLER
BEGIN
BACKUP DATABASE DIRECTORY 'c:\\dbbackup'
TRANSACTION LOG TRUNCATE
END;

```

- ♦ If you want to back up the database to a new location, such as e:\zendb\dbbackup, change the database backup location in the zendbbackup event by executing the following query in the DBISQL utility:

```

ALTER EVENT zendbbackup
SCHEDULE
'1:00 AM' EVERY 24 HOURS
HANDLER
BEGIN
BACKUP DATABASE DIRECTORY 'e:\\zendb\\dbbackup'
TRANSACTION LOG TRUNCATE
END;

```

- ♦ If you want to back up the database at 2:00 a.m. on the first, second, and third day on the month to a new location, e:\zendb\dbbackup, change the database backup schedule and location in the zendbbackup event by executing the following query in the DBISQL utility:

```

ALTER EVENT zendbbackup
SCHEDULE
'2:00 AM' EVERY 24 HOURS ON (1,2,3)
HANDLER

```

```
BEGIN
BACKUP DATABASE DIRECTORY 'e:\\zendb\\dbbackup'
TRANSACTION LOG TRUNCATE
END;
```





# Message Logging



This section includes information about Message Logger features and procedures to help you configure and maintain your Novell® ZENworks® system.

- ♦ [Chapter 35, “Overview,” on page 315](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 36, “Configuring Message Logger Settings,” on page 317](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 37, “Managing Messages,” on page 323](#)



The Message Logger component of Novell® ZENworks® 10 Configuration Management lets the other ZENworks components such as zenloader, webservices, ZENworks Management Daemon (ZMD), Remote Management, and Policy Enforcers log messages to different output targets. The output targets includes the system log, local log, database, SMTP, SNMP trap, and UDP.

The following sections provide additional information on the Message Logger component:

- ♦ [Section 35.1, “Functionalities of Message Logger,” on page 315](#)
- ♦ [Section 35.2, “Message Severity,” on page 315](#)
- ♦ [Section 35.3, “Message Format,” on page 316](#)

## 35.1 Functionalities of Message Logger

Message Logger performs the following functions:

- ♦ Writes messages to local log files.
- ♦ Writes messages to a system log or event log.
- ♦ Writes messages to the Management console.
- ♦ Sends messages to the Management server.
- ♦ Sends messages as SMTP mail to SMTP servers from the Primary Server.
- ♦ Sends messages as SNMP traps to remote or local machines from the Primary Server.
- ♦ Sends messages as UDP packets to UDP destinations.
- ♦ Writes messages to the ZENworks database.
- ♦ Automatically purges database entries from the ZENworks database.
- ♦ Automatically acknowledges the messages in the ZENworks database.

## 35.2 Message Severity

A message is an event that is generated by different components and modules. These events can be exceptions such as errors, warnings, information to a user, or a debug statement to debug a module.

Messages are classified based on the following severity levels:

**Error:** Indicates that an action cannot be completed because of a user or system error. These messages are critical and require immediate attention from an administrator.

**Warning:** Indicates an exception condition. These messages might not be an error but can cause problems if not resolved. These messages do not require immediate attention from an administrator.

**Information:** Provides feedback about something that happened in the product or system that is important and informative for an administrator.

**Debug:** Provides debug information to troubleshoot and solve problems that might occur. The debug messages are stored only in the local file.

## 35.3 Message Format

Messages are logged in different formats depending on the output targets. For more information on message formats see, [Section 37.1, “Understanding Message Formats,” on page 323](#).

# Configuring Message Logger Settings

# 36

The following sections provide information on configuring the settings of the Message Logger component of Novell® ZENworks® 10 Configuration Management.

- ♦ [Section 36.1, “Configuring the Message Logger Settings at the Zone Level,” on page 317](#)
- ♦ [Section 36.2, “Configuring the Message Logger Settings at the Folder Level,” on page 321](#)
- ♦ [Section 36.3, “Configuring the Message Logger Settings at the Device Level,” on page 321](#)
- ♦ [Section 36.4, “Turning on the Debug Messages,” on page 321](#)

## 36.1 Configuring the Message Logger Settings at the Zone Level


The following sections contain information to help you configure the settings in the Management Zone to enable message logging:

- ♦ [Section 36.1.1, “Local Device Logging,” on page 317](#)
- ♦ [Section 36.1.2, “Centralized Message Logging,” on page 318](#)

### 36.1.1 Local Device Logging

In ZENworks Control Center, the Local Device Logging page lets you configure the message logging to a local drive and the system log file of the managed device.

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration*.
- 2 In the Management Zone Settings panel, click *Device Management*, then click *Local Device Logging*.
- 3 Configure the following options in the Local File panel:  
**Log Message to a Local File if Severity Is:** Choose from one of the following:
  - ♦ **Error:** Stores messages with a severity of Error.
  - ♦ **Warning and Above:** Stores messages with a severity of Warning and Error.
  - ♦ **Information and Above:** Stores messages with a severity of Information, Warning, and Error.
  - ♦ **Debug and Above:** Stores messages with a severity of Debug, Information, Warning, and Error.

If you need to troubleshoot a ZENworks Adaptive Agent issue on an individual device, you can change the severity setting so that additional information is logged. On the device, double-click the  icon in the notification area, click *Logging* in the left navigation pane, then select an option from the *Log Messages if Severity Is* drop-down list.

**Rolling Based on Size:** Closes the current log file and starts a new file based on the file size:

- ♦ **Limit File Size to:** Specify the maximum size of the log file, in either kilobytes (KB) or megabytes (MB). The log file is closed after the size of the file reaches the specified limit and a new file is started.
- ♦ **Number of Backup Files:** Specify the number of closed files to be backed up. The maximum number of backup files is 13.

**Rolling Based on Date:** Closes the current log file and starts a new file based on the following schedules:

- ♦ **Daily Pattern:** Starts a new file daily.
- ♦ **Monthly Pattern:** Starts a new file monthly.

On a Windows managed device, the local files include the following:

- ♦ `zmd-messages.log` located in `\novell\zenworks\logs\localstore`
- ♦ `loader-messages.log` located in `\novell\zenworks\logs`
- ♦ `services-messages.log` located in `\novell\zenworks\logs`

On a Linux managed device, the local files include the following:

- ♦ `loader-messages.log` located in `/var/opt/novell/log/zenworks`
- ♦ `services-messages.log` located in `/var/opt/novell/log/zenworks`

#### 4 Configure the following options in the System Log panel.

**Send Message to Local System Log if Severity Is:** Choose from one of the following:

- ♦ **Error:** Stores messages with severity of Error.
- ♦ **Warning and Above:** Stores messages with a severity of Warning and Error.
- ♦ **Information and Above:** Stores messages with a severity of Information, Warning, and Error.

This setting lets you determine the message types that are added to the local system log. The local system log is the `\var\log\messages` directory on Linux devices and the `zenworks/logs/centralstore` directory on Windows devices.

Messages added to this system log directory are sent to the ZENworks Server for viewing in ZENworks Control Center on the *Configuration > System Information* page or by viewing the Summary page for the server or workstation.

## 36.1.2 Centralized Message Logging

In ZENworks Control Center, the Centralized Message Logging page lets you configure the settings related to message logging performed by the Primary Server.

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration*.
- 2 In the Management Zone Settings panel, click *Event and Messaging*, then click *Centralized Message Logging*.
- 3 In the Automatic Message Cleanup panel, configure the settings to automatically acknowledge or remove the logged messages from the ZENworks server:

**Preferred Maintenance Server:** Specify the IP address of the preferred server on which the Message Cleanup actions runs to acknowledge or delete the logged messages from database.

**Information:** Allows you to configure the following settings for the informational messages:

- ♦ **Auto acknowledge when older than [ ] days:** Allows you to automatically acknowledge the logged informational messages that are older than the number of days you specify. For example, if you specify 30 days, then all the informational messages logged before 30 days from the current date are acknowledged when the Message Cleanup activity is scheduled to run. If you specify zero, then the informational messages dated until today are acknowledged. By default, all the informational messages older than 60 days are automatically acknowledged.
- ♦ **Auto delete when older than [ ] days:** Allows you to automatically delete the logged informational messages that are older than the number of days you specify. For example, if you specify 30 days, then all the informational messages logged before 30 days from the current date are deleted when the Message Cleanup activity is scheduled to run. If you specify zero, then the informational messages dated until today are deleted. By default, all the informational messages older than 60 days are automatically deleted.

If you want to specify both the auto-acknowledge and auto-delete days, then the number of auto-acknowledge days should always be less than the number for auto-delete days.

**Warnings:** Allows you to configure the following settings for the warning messages:

- ♦ **Auto acknowledge when older than [ ] days:** Allows you to automatically acknowledge the logged warning messages that are older than the number of days you specify. For example, if you specify 30 days, then all the warning messages logged before 30 days from the current date are acknowledged when the Message Cleanup activity is scheduled to run. If you specify zero, then the warning messages dated until today are acknowledged. By default, all the warning messages older than 60 days are automatically acknowledged.
- ♦ **Auto delete when older than [ ] days:** Allows you to automatically delete the logged warning messages that are older than the number of days you specify. For example, if you specify 30 days, then all the warning messages logged before 30 days from the current date are deleted when the Message Cleanup activity is scheduled to run. If you specify zero, then the warning messages dated until today are deleted. By default, all the warning messages older than 60 days are automatically deleted.

If you want to specify both the auto-acknowledge and auto-delete days, then the number of auto-acknowledge days should always be less than the number for auto-delete days.

**Errors:** Allows you to configure the following settings for the error messages:

- ♦ **Auto acknowledge when older than [ ] days:** Allows you to automatically acknowledge the logged error messages that are older than the number of days you specify. For example, if you specify 30 days, then all the error messages logged before 30 days from the current date are acknowledged when the Message Cleanup activity is scheduled to run. If you specify zero, then the error messages dated until today are acknowledged. By default, all the error messages older than 60 days are automatically acknowledged.
- ♦ **Auto delete when older than [ ] days:** Allows you to automatically delete the logged error messages that are older than the number of days you specify. For example, if you specify 30 days, then all the error messages logged before 30 days from the current date are deleted when the Message Cleanup activity is scheduled to run. If you specify zero, then error messages dated until today are deleted. By default, all the error messages older than 60 days are automatically deleted.

If you want to specify both the auto-acknowledge and auto-delete days, then the number of auto-acknowledge days should always be less than the number for auto-delete days.

**Select the Days of the Week and the Time to Perform the Message Cleanup:** Allows you to specify the time and the days of the week to run the Message Cleanup action. The administrator can set a daily schedule for Message Cleanup action.

**Use Coordinated Universal Time:** Allows you to convert the specified time to UTC (GMT) time. By default, this option is selected.

- 4 In the E-mail Notification panel, configure the settings to send the error messages to the administrators through e-mail:

**Send Log Message via E-mail if Severity Is:** Allows you to select the severity of the message to trigger sending the log messages through e-mail.

**From:** Specify the sender's e-mail address.

**To:** Specify the e-mail address of the recipients. You can specify more than one e-mail address by separating them with commas.

**Subject:** Specify the subject to be included while sending the e-mail from the Primary Server. You can customize the *Subject* field with macro values. For more information on customizing the subject field, see [Section 37.1.2, “E-Mail Format,” on page 324](#).

- 5 In the SNMP Traps panel, configure the SNMP traps on the ZENworks Server to send log messages:

**Send as SNMP Trap if Severity Is:** Sends an SNMP trap if the logged message's severity is Error.

**Trap Target:** Specify the IP address or DNS name of the SNMP server.

**Port:** Specify the port number of the SNMP server configured for this operation. By default, the port number is 162.

**Community String:** Specify the community string of the SNMP trap that is to be sent.

- 6 In the UDP Forwarder panel, configure the settings to send logged messages through the UDP services. The following table contains information on the options available:

**Send Message via UDP:** Sends messages to the UDP destinations if the logged message's severity is Error.

**UDP Destinations:** You can perform the following tasks with the *Add*, *Edit*, and *Remove* options:

♦ **Add a Server**

1. Click *Add* to display the Add UDP Destination Address dialog box.
2. Specify the server name and the UDP port number configured for this operation.
3. Click *OK*.

♦ **Remove a Server**

1. Select the check box next to the server (or servers).
2. Click *Remove*.

♦ **Edit Server Details**

1. Select the check box next to the server.
2. Click *Edit* to display the Edit UDP Destination dialog box.
3. Modify the settings as desired, then click *OK*.



## 36.2 Configuring the Message Logger Settings at the Folder Level

By default, the Message Logger settings configured at the zone level are applied to all the managed devices. However, you can modify the Local Device Logging settings for all the devices within a folder:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Devices*.
  - 2 Click the *Folder (Details)* option for which you want to configure the Message Logger settings.
  - 3 Click *Settings*, then click *Device Management > Local Device Logging*.
  - 4 Click *Override*.
  - 5 Edit the logging settings as required.
  - 6 To apply the changes, click *Apply*.
- or
- To revert to the Local Device Logging settings configured at the zone level, click *Revert*.
- 7 Click *OK*.

## 36.3 Configuring the Message Logger Settings at the Device Level

By default, the Message Logger settings configured at the zone level are applied to all the managed devices. However, you can modify the Local Device Logging settings for the managed device:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Devices*.
  - 2 Click *Servers* or *Workstations* to display the list of managed devices.
  - 3 Click the device for which you want to configure the Message Logger settings.
  - 4 Click *Settings*, then click *Device Management > Local Device Logging*.
  - 5 Click *Override*.
  - 6 Edit the logging settings as required.
  - 7 To apply the changes click *Apply*.
- or
- To revert to the Local Device Logging settings configured at the zone level, click *Revert*.
- 8 Click *OK*.

## 36.4 Turning on the Debug Messages

To turn on the logging of debug messages for all components:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration*.
- 2 In the Management Zone Settings panel, click *Device Management*, then click *Local Device Logging*.
- 3 In the local file panel, select the *Log message to a local file if severity is* option, then select the severity as *Debug and above*.
- 4 Click *Apply*, then click *OK*.



The Message Logger component lets you manage the messages logged by the other components of Novell® ZENworks® 10 Configuration Management.

- ♦ [Section 37.1, “Understanding Message Formats,” on page 323](#)
- ♦ [Section 37.2, “Viewing the Message Status,” on page 326](#)
- ♦ [Section 37.3, “Viewing the Messages,” on page 327](#)
- ♦ [Section 37.4, “Acknowledging Messages,” on page 329](#)
- ♦ [Section 37.5, “Deleting Messages,” on page 331](#)
- ♦ [Section 37.6, “Viewing the Predefined Reports,” on page 332](#)

## 37.1 Understanding Message Formats

- ♦ [Section 37.1.1, “Local Log File Format,” on page 323](#)
- ♦ [Section 37.1.2, “E-Mail Format,” on page 324](#)
- ♦ [Section 37.1.3, “SNMP Message Format,” on page 324](#)
- ♦ [Section 37.1.4, “UDP Payload Format,” on page 325](#)

Messages are logged in different formats depending on the output targets such as local log, e-mail notification, SNMP traps, and UDP notification.

All error messages log the component name on which the error is generated. To troubleshoot the error, refer to the component’s Reference Guide.

**Example 1:** Error related to Policy Management.

```
[DEBUG] [7/22/2007 3:42:45 PM] [] [PolicyManager] [] [Name = RM_dev, Guid = 271414163524d000190dbc6fa94272aa, Type = remote management policy, Version = 2] [] [].
```

To troubleshoot this error, see the [ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Policy Management Reference](#).

**Example 2:** Error related to Remote Management.

```
[ERROR] [15-07-2007 12:44:16] [] [Remote Management] [RemoteManagement.VNCEVENT_CANNOT_OPEN_EVENT] [Unable to open the <ZRMUserLoginEvent> event] [] [].
```

To troubleshoot this error, see the [ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Remote Management Reference](#).

### 37.1.1 Local Log File Format

Messages are logged on the managed device and ZENworks Server in the following format:

```
[severity] [loggingTime] [userGUID] [componentName] [MessageID]
[MessageString] [additionalInfo] [RelatedGUID].
```

For example, [DEBUG] [1/22/2007 12:09:15 PM] [] [ZMD] [] [refreshing  
QuickTaskRefresh(GeneralRefresh)] [] [].

## 37.1.2 E-Mail Format

An e-mail message consists of the message header and the message body:

- ♦ [“Message Header” on page 324](#)
- ♦ [“Message Body” on page 324](#)

### Message Header

The subject field in the e-mail can be customized as required by using keyword substitution macros:

Macro	Value
%s	Severity of the message.
%c	Name of the component.
%d	ID of the device at which the message is generated.
%t	Time of the message generation.
%a	Alias name of the device where the message is generated.

For example, if you want the subject line to display as “ERROR occurred on device Testifies at 4/1/07 5:31:01 PM”, then specify “%s occurred on device %a at %t” in the *Subject* field.

### Message Body

The message body consists of the following fields:

- ♦ **Device Alias:** Name of the device where the message is generated.
- ♦ **Device IP Address:** IP Address of the device where the message is generated.
- ♦ **Error:** [Date] Component name Message ID localized message string.
- ♦ **Additional Information:** (Optional) Any additional information.

## 37.1.3 SNMP Message Format

The SNMP messages consists of the following two parts:

- ♦ [“SNMP Message Header” on page 324](#)
- ♦ [“Protocol Data Unit \(PDU\)” on page 325](#)

### SNMP Message Header

The following fields are contained in the header:

**Version Number:** Specifies the version of SNMP used. ZENworks 10 Configuration Management uses SNMPv1.

**Community String:** Defines an access environment for a group of network-management systems (NMS).

### Protocol Data Unit (PDU)

The following fields are contained in the PDU:

**Enterprise:** Identifies the type of managed object generating the trap. ZENworks 10 Configuration Management uses 1.3.6.1.4.1.23.2.80.100.

**Agent Address:** Provides the IP address of the machine where the trap was generated.

**Generic Trap Type:** Contains the integer value 6. Type 6 is an enterprise-specific trap type, which has no standard interpretation in SNMP. The interpretation of the trap depends upon the value in the specific trap type field, which is defined by the Message Logger MIB.

**Specific Trap Code:** For enterprise-specific traps generated by ZENworks 10 Configuration Management, the values in the specific trap type fields are as follows:

- ♦ For a severity level of MessageLogger.ERROR, the specific trap is 1.
- ♦ For a severity level of MessageLogger.WARN, the specific trap is 2.
- ♦ For a severity level of MessageLogger.INFO, the specific trap is 3.

**Time Stamp:** The time stamp indicating when the trap occurred.

**Variable Bindings:** Provides additional information pertaining to the trap. This field consists of the following name/value pairs:

- ♦ For trap ID 1.3.6.1.4.1.23.2.80.100.0.1, the value is the device GUID.
- ♦ For trap ID 1.3.6.1.4.1.23.2.80.100.0.2, the value is the device name.
- ♦ For trap ID 1.3.6.1.4.1.23.2.80.100.0.3, the value is the component name.
- ♦ For trap ID 1.3.6.1.4.1.23.2.80.100.0.4, the value is the time when the message was logged.
- ♦ For trap ID 1.3.6.1.4.1.23.2.80.100.0.5, the value is the message ID.
- ♦ For trap ID 1.3.6.1.4.1.23.2.80.100.0.6, the value is the probable cause.

## 37.1.4 UDP Payload Format

The payload is a byte array with null-terminated delimiters such as \0 or 0 x 00 (hexadecimal) for each element. Each element's data is presented as UTF-8 encoded strings and is explained below:

- ♦ The first element is the ZENworks version information. For example, 10.
- ♦ The second element is the value of severity of the message. The severity values are 4 for Informational, 6 for Warning, and 8 for Debug messages.
- ♦ The third element is the message date. The date is not locally specific and is represented as a UTF-8 string. For example, 09-Mar-2008 14:15:44.
- ♦ The fourth element is the user ID.
- ♦ The fifth element is the component name.

- ♦ The sixth element is the non-localized message ID.
- ♦ The seventh element is the localized message string.
- ♦ The eighth element is the additional information.
- ♦ The ninth element is the probable cause URL.
- ♦ The tenth element is the related GUID objects separated by commas.

---

**NOTE:** If the element does not have any data, it is represented as \0\0.

---

## 37.2 Viewing the Message Status

In ZENworks Control Center, you can view the status of the logged messages in the following panels on the home page.

- ♦ [Section 37.2.1, “Message Summary,” on page 326](#)
- ♦ [Section 37.2.2, “Device Hot List,” on page 327](#)




### 37.2.1 Message Summary

The Message Summary panel displays the number of critical, warning, and normal messages generated on the main objects in the Management Zone.




**Figure 37-1** *Message Summary*

Message Summary				
				Total
 <a href="#">Servers</a>	<a href="#">3</a>	<a href="#">0</a>	<a href="#">5</a>	<a href="#">8</a>
 <a href="#">Workstations</a>	<a href="#">9</a>	<a href="#">1</a>	<a href="#">1</a>	<a href="#">11</a>
 <a href="#">Policies</a>	<a href="#">3</a>	<a href="#">0</a>	<a href="#">17</a>	<a href="#">20</a>
 <a href="#">Bundles</a>	<a href="#">2</a>	<a href="#">0</a>	<a href="#">5</a>	<a href="#">7</a>

In the Message Summary panel, you can do the following:

- ♦ Click an object type to display its root folder. For example, click *Servers* to display the Servers root folder.
- ♦ For any object type, click the number in one of its status columns (  ) to display a listing of all the objects that currently have that status. For example, to see the list of servers that have a normal status, click the number in the column of the *Servers*.
- ♦ For any object type, click the number in the *Total* column to display all of the objects of that type having critical, warning, or normal messages. For example, click the Total count for *Servers* to display a list of all servers having messages logged.

## 37.2.2 Device Hot List

The Device Hot List displays a list of the devices that have a noncompliant  status or have generated critical  or warning  messages. The device remains in the hot list until you resolve the compliancy problem and acknowledge the messages. You can use this list as a summary of problems that need attention on the device.




To view the Device Hot List:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Home* tab.



Device Hot List				
			Type	Item
3	45	22		<a href="#">blr-nrm-r6a</a>
2	28	27		<a href="#">blr-nrm-r9a</a>
2	25	23		<a href="#">blr-nrm-r5v2</a>
2	0	0		<a href="#">blr-nrm-r3f</a>
1	52	1		<a href="#">blr-nrm-r11d</a>

1 - 5 of 15      show 5 items

- ◆  This column indicates the number of bundles or policies that could not be applied to the device because an error occurred. You must review the error and warning messages to discover the compliance problem.
- ◆  This column indicates the number of unacknowledged error messages generated for the device. An error is any action that fails so the ZENworks Adaptive Agent cannot complete the action on the device.
- ◆  This column indicates the number of unacknowledged warning messages generated for the device. A warning is any action that encounters a problem; the problem might or might not result in the ZENworks Adaptive Agent completing the action on the device.

- 2 Click the device to display its message log.

## 37.3 Viewing the Messages

In the ZENworks Control Center, you can view the logged messages as follows:

- ◆ [Section 37.3.1, “Message Log,” on page 327](#)
- ◆ [Section 37.3.2, “System Message Log,” on page 328](#)

### 37.3.1 Message Log

The Message Log displays all unacknowledged messages generated for the object.






To view the message logs:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Device Hot List* on the home page, then click the device to view its message log.




You can also use the *Devices* menu to view the logs:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Devices*.
- 2 Click *Servers* or *Workstations* to display the list of managed devices.

- Click the name of a device, then click the *Summary* tab to display:

Message Log		Advanced
Status	Message	Date
	<a href="#">The action local file rights policy (ID:local file rights policy</a>	3:20 AM
	<a href="#">The drive "d:" is not a local fixed drive. Files/folders on this</a>	3:20 AM
	<a href="#">The action local file rights policy (ID:local file rights policy</a>	3:14 AM
	<a href="#">The drive "d:" is not a local fixed drive. Files/folders on this</a>	3:14 AM
	<a href="#">The action grouppolicy (ID:grouppolicy) failed, but the action s</a>	3:11 AM
1 - 5 of 91		show 5 ▼ items

**Status:** Displays an icon indicating the type of message:

-  Critical Message
-  Warning
-  Normal

**Message:** Displays a brief description of the event that occurred.

**Date:** Displays the date and time the event occurred.











- To view the log messages in the advanced view, click *Advanced* on the right corner of the Memory Log panel.

You can acknowledge or delete messages from the message log. For more information on acknowledging messages, see [Section 37.4, “Acknowledging Messages,” on page 329](#), and for information on deleting messages, see [Section 37.5, “Deleting Messages,” on page 331](#).




## 37.3.2 System Message Log

The System Message Log panel displays the unacknowledged messages generated by the ZENworks Servers and managed devices in the Management Zone.

- In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration*.
- Click *System Information* to display the System Message Log.

System Message Log				Advanced	
Status	Message	Date	Source		
	<a href="#">POLICYHANDLERS.PrinterPolicy.LocalPrinterAddSuccess(http://164.9</a>	10:24 AM	 blr-nrm-r5v2		
	<a href="#">POLICYHANDLERS.PrinterPolicy.LocalPrinterAddSuccess(printerlocal)</a>	10:23 AM	 blr-nrm-r5v2		
	<a href="#">Printer \\164.99.154.214\share already exists for user , hence n</a>	10:23 AM	 blr-nrm-r5v2		
	<a href="#">The action printer policy (ID:printer policy) failed, but the ac</a>	10:23 AM	 blr-nrm-r5v2		
	<a href="#">IPrint client is already installed in the device, not reinstalli</a>	10:23 AM	 blr-nrm-r5v2		
1 - 5 of 820		show 5 items			

**Status:** Displays an icon indicating the type of message:

-  Critical Message
-  Warning
-  Normal

**Message:** Displays a brief description of the event that occurred.



**Date:** Displays the date and time the event occurred.

- 3 To view the log messages in the advanced view, click *Advanced* on the right corner of the System Memory Log panel.

You can acknowledge or delete messages from the system message log. For more information on acknowledging messages, see [Section 37.4, “Acknowledging Messages,” on page 329](#), for information on deleting messages, see [Section 37.5, “Deleting Messages,” on page 331](#).

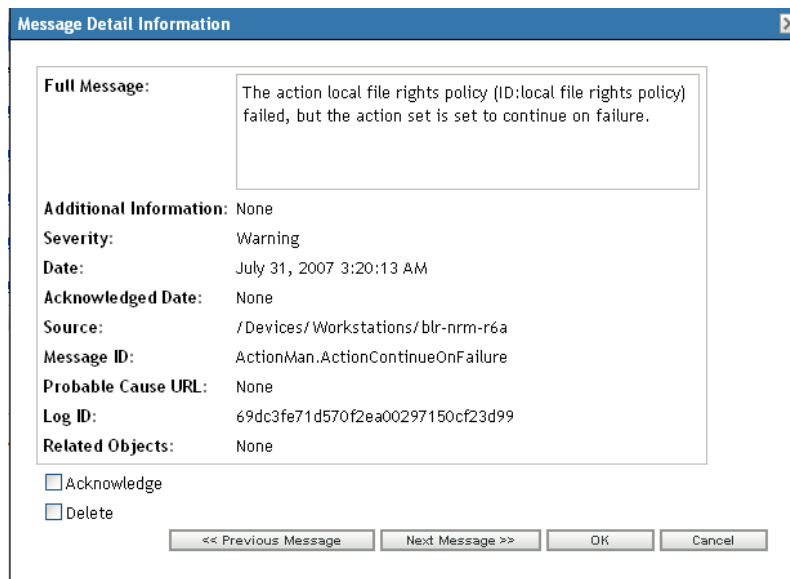
## 37.4 Acknowledging Messages

An acknowledged message is one that you have reviewed and marked as acknowledged (✓).

- [Section 37.4.1, “Acknowledging a Message,” on page 329](#)
- [Section 37.4.2, “Acknowledging Multiple Messages,” on page 329](#)
- [Section 37.4.3, “Acknowledging Messages Logged During a Specified Time,” on page 330](#)

### 37.4.1 Acknowledging a Message

- 1 In the Message Log panel or the System Message Log panel, click the message you want to acknowledge.
- 2 In the Message Detail Information dialog box, select the *Acknowledge* option, then click *OK*:




The acknowledged messages are removed from the Message Log panel or the System Message Log panel, depending on which panel you selected in [Step 1](#).

The acknowledged messages continue to be listed in the Advanced view of these logs, marked with a check mark (✓).

### 37.4.2 Acknowledging Multiple Messages

- 1 In the Message Log panel or the System Message Log panel, click *Advanced* on the right corner of the panel.

- 2 Select the messages to acknowledge, then click *Acknowledge*:

Acknowledge Delete			
<input type="checkbox"/> Status	Message	Date ▾	✓
<input type="checkbox"/>	 <a href="#">The action local file rights policy (ID:local file rights policy</a>	7/31/07 5:20:32 AM	✓
<input type="checkbox"/>	 <a href="#">The drive "d:" is not a local fixed drive. Files/folders on this</a>	7/31/07 5:20:31 AM	✓
<input type="checkbox"/>	 <a href="#">The action local file rights policy (ID:local file rights policy</a>	7/31/07 3:20:13 AM	
<input type="checkbox"/>	 <a href="#">The drive "d:" is not a local fixed drive. Files/folders on this</a>	7/31/07 3:20:12 AM	
<input type="checkbox"/>	 <a href="#">The action local file rights policy (ID:local file rights policy</a>	7/31/07 3:14:39 AM	
1 - 5 of 93		show 5 items	

The acknowledged messages are marked with a check mark (✓).

### 37.4.3 Acknowledging Messages Logged During a Specified Time

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration*.
- 2 In the *Configuration Tasks*, click *Message Cleanup* to display:

Message Cleanup

This dialog allows you to acknowledge, clear, or permanently delete all messages in the message log between two dates.

Action:

☒ Acknowledge  
☐ Permanently delete

Date Range:

Beginning Date: 8/1/07  
Ending Date: 8/1/07

Filter:

☒ None  
☐ Device:

OK

Cancel

- 3 In the Message Cleanup dialog box, select *Acknowledge*.
- 4 In the *Date Range* option, select the *Beginning Date* and the *Ending Date*.
- 5 Select the *Filter* option:  
**None:** Cleans up the messages in selected date range from all the devices.  
**Device:** Cleans up the messages in selected date range from the selected device.
- 6 Click *OK*.

A message cleanup action is initiated and a system message is logged after the cleanup action is completed. For more information on viewing system logs, see [Section 37.3.2, “System Message Log,” on page 328](#).

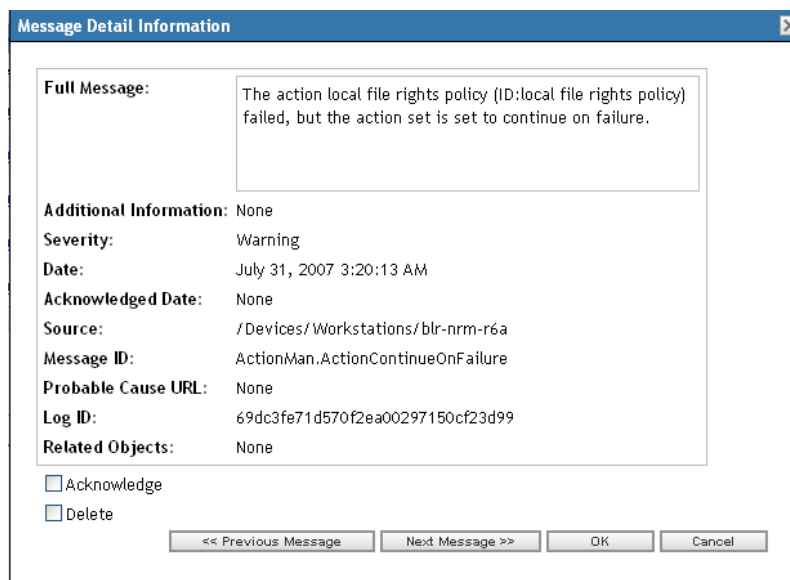
## 37.5 Deleting Messages

Deleting a message completely removes the message from your ZENworks system.

- ♦ [Section 37.5.1, “Deleting a Message,” on page 331](#)
- ♦ [Section 37.5.2, “Deleting Multiple Messages,” on page 331](#)
- ♦ [Section 37.5.3, “Deleting Messages Logged During a Specified Time,” on page 332](#)






### 37.5.1 Deleting a Message

- 1 In the Message Log panel or the System Message Log panel, click the message you want to delete.
- 2 In the Message Detail Information dialog box, select the *Delete* option, then click *OK*:



### 37.5.2 Deleting Multiple Messages

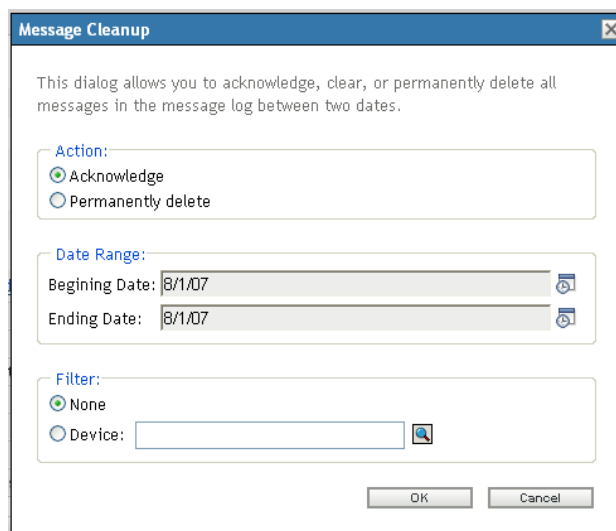
- 1 In the Message Log panel or the System Message Log panel, click *Advanced* on the right corner of the panel.

Acknowledge		Delete	
<input type="checkbox"/> Status	Message	Date	✓
<input type="checkbox"/>	 <a href="#">The action local file rights policy (ID:local file rights policy)</a>	7/31/07 5:20:32 AM	✓
<input type="checkbox"/>	 <a href="#">The drive "d:" is not a local fixed drive. Files/folders on this</a>	7/31/07 5:20:31 AM	✓
<input type="checkbox"/>	 <a href="#">The action local file rights policy (ID:local file rights policy)</a>	7/31/07 3:20:13 AM	
<input type="checkbox"/>	 <a href="#">The drive "d:" is not a local fixed drive. Files/folders on this</a>	7/31/07 3:20:12 AM	
<input type="checkbox"/>	 <a href="#">The action local file rights policy (ID:local file rights policy)</a>	7/31/07 3:14:39 AM	
1 - 5 of 93		show 5 items	

- 2 Select the messages to delete, then click *Delete*.

### 37.5.3 Deleting Messages Logged During a Specified Time

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration*.
- 2 In the *Configuration Tasks*, click *Message Cleanup*.



- 3 In the Message Cleanup dialog box, select *Permanently Delete*.
- 4 In the *Date Range* option, select the *Beginning Date* and the *Ending Date*.
- 5 Select the *Filter* option:
  - None:** Cleans up the messages in selected date range from all the devices.
  - Device:** Cleans up the messages in selected date range from the selected device.
- 6 Click *OK*.
- 7 In the Confirm Delete Dialog box, click *OK* to delete the message.

A system message is logged after the cleanup action is completed. For more information on viewing the system log see, [Section 37.3.2, “System Message Log,” on page 328](#).

## 37.6 Viewing the Predefined Reports

You must have installed ZENworks Reporting Server to view the predefined reports. For more information on how to install ZENworks Reporting Server, see the [ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Reporting Server Installation Guide](#).

To view the predefined reports for messages:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Reports* tab.
- 2 In the ZENworks Reporting Server Reporting panel, click *ZENworks Reporting Server InfoView* to launch the ZENworks Reporting Server InfoView.
- 3 Navigate to the *Novell ZENworks Reports* folder > *Predefined Reports* > *ZENworks System* folder.
- 4 The following predefined report is included for Messages:

**ZENworks Messages:** Displays message details such as the log time and description for all the ZENworks System messages.

For more information on creating and managing reports, see the [ZENworks Configuration Management System Reporting Reference](#) documentation.



# Naming Conventions in ZENworks Control Center



When you name an object in the ZENworks® Control Center (folders, bundles, policies, groups, registration keys, and so forth), ensure that the name adheres to the following conventions:

- The name must be unique in the folder.
- Depending on the database being used for the ZENworks database, uppercase and lowercase letters might not create uniqueness for the same name. The embedded database included with ZENworks 10 Configuration Management is case insensitive, so Folder 1 and FOLDER 1 are the same name and cannot be used in the same folder. If you use an external database that is case-sensitive, Folder 1 and FOLDER 1 are unique.
- If you use spaces, you must enclose the name in quotes when entering it on the command line. For example, you must enclose reg key 1 in quotes (“reg key 1”) when entering it in the zman utility.
- The following characters are invalid and cannot be used: / \ \* ? : " ' < > | ` % ~





# Schedule Types

# B

The following schedules are available:

- ♦ [Section B.1, “Date Specific,” on page 337](#)
- ♦ [Section B.2, “Event,” on page 338](#)
- ♦ [Section B.3, “Now,” on page 339](#)
- ♦ [Section B.4, “Recurring,” on page 339](#)

## B.1 Date Specific

The Date Specific scheduling option lets you specify one or more dates on which to run the event.

**Figure B-1** *Date Specific Schedule*

The screenshot shows a configuration window for a 'Date Specific' schedule. At the top, 'Schedule Type:' is set to 'Date Specific'. Below this is a 'Start Date(s):' field with a calendar icon. Two checkboxes are present: 'Run event every year' and 'Process immediately if device unable to execute on schedule'. Under 'Select when schedule execution should start:', 'Start immediately at Start Time' is selected. Below this are 'Start Time' and 'End Time' fields, both set to 1:00 am. A checkbox for 'Use Coordinated Universal Time (Current UTC 11:46 PM)' is also shown. At the bottom, there are three checkboxes: 'Wake on Lan (Applies to Devices only)', 'Install Immediately after Distribution', and 'Launch Immediately after Installation'. Navigation buttons '<< Back', 'Next >>', and 'Cancel' are at the bottom right.

**Start Dates:** Click to display a calendar you can use to select a date for the event. You can add multiple dates one at a time.

**Run Event Every Year:** Select this option to run the event every year on the dates shown in the *Start Date(s)* list.

**Select When Schedule Execution Should Start:** Select one of the following options:

- ♦ **Start Immediately at Start Time:** Starts the event at the time you specify in the *Start Time* field.
- ♦ **Start at a Random Time between Start Time and End Time:** Starts the event at a randomly selected time between the time you specify in the *Start Time* and *End Time* fields. You can use this option to avoid possible network overload from concurrently scheduled events.

**Use Coordinated Universal Time (UTC):** The Start Time is converted to Universal Coordinated Time (UTC). Select this option to indicate that the Start Time you entered is already in Coordinated Universal Time and should not be converted. For example, suppose you are in the Eastern time zone. If you enter 10:00 a.m. and select this option, the Start Time is scheduled for 10:00 UTC. If you don't select this option, the Start Time is scheduled for 14:00 UTC because Eastern time is UTC - 4 hours.

## B.2 Event

This scheduling option lets you specify the event you want to trigger the scheduled action.

**Figure B-2** Event Schedule

Schedule Type:  
Event

Select the event that this schedule should be triggered on:

- ☐ User Login
- ☐ User Logout
- ☐ Device Boot
- ☐ On Device Lock
- ☐ On Device Unlock
- ☐ ZENworks - Login
- ☐ ZENworks - Logout
- ☐ Device Connecting to Network (Windows Only)

☐ Wake on Lan (Applies to Devices only)  
☐ Install Immediately after Distribution  
☐ Launch Immediately after Installation

<< Back   Next >>   Cancel

Select from the following triggers:

**User Login:** A user logs in to the device's operating system.

**User Logout:** A user logs out of the device's operating system.

**Device Boot:** The device powers on.

**Device Shutdown:** The device powers off.

**On Device Lock:** The device's operating system is locked.

**On Device Unlock:** The device's operating system is unlocked.

**ZENworks Login:** A user logs in to the ZENworks® Management Zone.

**ZENworks Logout:** A user logs in out of the ZENworks Management Zone.

**Device Connecting to Network (Windows Only):** The disconnected device detects a new wired or wireless network connection.

---

**NOTE:** At device startup, the ZENworks® Adaptive Agent contacts a ZENworks Server according to the device's refresh schedule to refresh its bundle, policy, configuration, and registration information. If information changes, the Adaptive Agent must refresh its information before the

changes can show up on the device, even if one of the event triggers occur. By default, devices refresh randomly between 300 and 360 seconds after device startup with a full refresh every 12 hours.

For example, if you create a bundle and schedule it to launch when the device connects to the network, the device must be manually refreshed or refreshed according to schedule before the Adaptive Agent can upload or launch the bundle, even if the device connects to the network.

## B.3 Now

Select this scheduling option to run the event immediately.

## B.4 Recurring

The Recurring scheduling option lets you repeat the event at a specified interval.

**NOTE:** The following sections describe all of the Recurring schedule options. Depending on the event or action you are scheduling, some options might not be available.

**Figure B-3** Recurring Schedule


Schedule Type:  
Recurring


☒ When a device is refreshed  
☐ Delay execution after refresh: 0 Days 0 Hours 0 Minutes

☐ Days of the week  

Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

  
Start Time: 1 : 00 am  
[More Options](#)

☐ Monthly  
☒ Day of the month: 1  
☐ Last day of the month  
☐ First Sunday   
Start Time: 1 : 00 am  
[More Options](#)

☐ Fixed Interval  
0 Months 0 Weeks 0 Days 0 Hours 0 Minutes  
Start Date: 7/12/07  Start Time: 1 : 00 am  
[More Options](#)

☐ Wake on Lan (Applies to Devices only)  
☐ Install Immediately after Distribution  
☐ Launch Immediately after Installation

<< Back Next >> Cancel

**When a Device Is Refreshed:** This schedule causes the event to occur each time the ZENworks Adaptive Agent performs a refresh on the device. If you want to delay the event so that it does not happen immediately upon refresh, select the *Delay execution after refresh* option and specify the number of days, hours, or minutes you want to delay the event.


**Days of the Week:** This schedule lets you specify the days during the week that you want the event to run. The event is run on these same days each week.

Select *Days of the Week*, then fill in the following fields:

- ♦ **Sun... Sat:** Specifies the days of the week you want to run the event.
- ♦ **Start Time:** Specifies the time you want to run the event.
- ♦ **Process Immediately if Device Unable to Execute on Schedule:** The event is run immediately if, for some reason, the schedule you configured results in the event not being able to run.
- ♦ **Use Coordinated Universal Time:** The Start Time is converted to Universal Coordinated Time (UTC). Select this option to indicate that the Start Time you entered is already in Coordinated Universal Time and should not be converted. For example, suppose you are in the Eastern time zone. If you enter 10:00 a.m. and select this option, the Start Time is scheduled for 10:00 UTC. If you don't select this option, the Start Time is scheduled for 14:00 UTC because Eastern time is UTC - 4 hours.
- ♦ **Start at a Random Time between Start Time and End Time:** Starts the event at a randomly selected time between the time you specify in the *Start Time* and *End Time* fields. You can use this option to avoid possible network overload from concurrently scheduled events.
- ♦ **Restrict Schedule Execution to the Following Date Range:** Limits running the event to the time period specified by the starting and ending dates.

**Monthly:** This schedule lets you specify one or more days during the month to run the event.

Select *Monthly*, then fill in the following fields:.

- ♦ **Day of the Month:** Specifies the day of the month to run the event. Valid entries are 1 through 31. If you specify 29, 30, or 31 and a month does not have those days, the event is not run that month.
- ♦ **Last Day of the Month:** Runs the event on the last day of the month, regardless of its date (28, 30, or 31).
- ♦ **First Sunday:** Specifies a specific day of a week. For example, the first Monday or the third Tuesday. Click  to add multiple days.
- ♦ **Start Time:** Specifies the time you want to run the event.
- ♦ **Process Immediately if Device Unable to Execute on Schedule:** The event is run immediately if, for some reason, the schedule you configured results in the event not being able to run.
- ♦ **Use Coordinated Universal Time:** The Start Time is converted to Universal Coordinated Time (UTC). Select this option to indicate that the Start Time you entered is already in Coordinated Universal Time and should not be converted. For example, suppose you are in the Eastern time zone. If you enter 10:00 a.m. and select this option, the Start Time is scheduled for 10:00 UTC. If you don't select this option, the Start Time is scheduled for 14:00 UTC because Eastern time is UTC - 4 hours.

- ♦ **Start at a Random Time between Start Time and End Time:** Starts the event at a randomly selected time between the time you specify in the Start Time and End Time boxes. You can use this option to avoid possible network overload from concurrently scheduled events.
- ♦ **Restrict Schedule Execution to the Following Date Range:** Limits running of the event to the time period specified by the starting and ending dates.

**Fixed Interval:** This schedule lets you specify an interval between days to run the event. For example, you can run the event every 14 days.

Select *Fixed Interval*, then fill in the following fields:

- ♦ **Months, Weeks, Days, Hours, Minutes:** Specifies the interval between times when the event is run. You can use any combination of months, weeks, days, hours, and minutes. For example, both *7 days, 8 hours* and *1 week, 8 hours* provide the same schedule.
- ♦ **Start Date:** Specifies the initial start date for the interval.
- ♦ **Start Time:** Specifies the initial start time for the interval.
- ♦ **Process Immediately if Device Unable to Execute on Schedule:** The event is run immediately if, for some reason, the schedule you configured results in the event not being able to run.
- ♦ **Use Coordinated Universal Time:** The Start Time is converted to Universal Coordinated Time (UTC). Select this option to indicate that the Start Time you entered is already in Coordinated Universal Time and should not be converted. For example, suppose you are in the Eastern time zone. If you enter 10:00 a.m. and select this option, the Start Time is scheduled for 10:00 UTC. If you don't select this option, the Start Time is scheduled for 14:00 UTC because Eastern time is UTC - 4 hours.
- ♦ **Restrict Schedule Execution to the Following Date Range:** Limits running of the event to the time period specified by the start date, end date, and end time.



# Documentation Updates

# C

This section contains information on documentation content changes that were made in this *System Administration Reference* after the initial release of Novell® ZENworks® 10 Configuration Management SP2. The changes are listed according to the date they were published.

The documentation for this product is provided on the Web in two formats: HTML and PDF. The HTML and PDF documentation are both kept up-to-date with the changes listed in this section.

If you need to know whether a copy of the PDF documentation that you are using is the most recent, the PDF document includes a publication date on the title page.

The documentation was updated on the following dates:

- ♦ [Section C.1, “March 30, 2010,” on page 343](#)
- ♦ [Section C.2, “January 25, 2010,” on page 344](#)
- ♦ [Section C.3, “December 15, 2009: Update for ZENworks 10 Configuration Management \(10.2.2\),” on page 344](#)
- ♦ [Section C.4, “August 17, 2009: Update for ZENworks 10 Configuration Management \(10.2.1\),” on page 344](#)
- ♦ [Section C.5, “May 27, 2009: SP2,” on page 345](#)

## C.1 March 30, 2010

Location	Update
<a href="#">Chapter 11, “Disaster Recovery,” on page 115</a>	Reorganized <a href="#">Section 11.3, “Re-Creating Certificates,” on page 120</a> and updated the content.
<a href="#">Section 21.2, “Deploying Updates,” on page 189</a>	Added the following information as the first step in the procedure to deploy updates:  (Optional) Before deploying the updates, ensure that the health of the Primary Servers and the database in the Management zone is conducive for the deployment by performing diagnostic tests on the Primary Server using the ZENworks Diagnostic Center tool.
<a href="#">Chapter 33, “External Database Maintenance,” on page 285</a>	Added the following sections: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>♦ <a href="#">Section 33.1, “Backing Up the External Sybase Database,” on page 285</a></li><li>♦ <a href="#">Section 33.2, “Restoring the External Sybase Database,” on page 294</a></li></ul>
<a href="#">Section 34.2, “Database Tips,” on page 307</a>	Added <a href="#">Section 34.2.2, “Changing the Backup Schedule and Location of the External Sybase Database Subsequent to the Initial Backup,” on page 309.</a>

## C.2 January 25, 2010

Location	Update
<a href="#">Chapter 11, “Disaster Recovery,” on page 115</a>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>♦ Added <a href="#">Section 11.3.2, “Changing the IP Address of the Primary Server after Installing ZENworks 10 Configuration Management,” on page 123.</a></li><li>♦ Renamed the section, “Tasks to Be Performed after Changing the DNS Name of a Primary Server” as <a href="#">Section 11.3.3, “Changing the DNS Name or the IP Address and DNS Name of the Primary Server after Installing ZENworks 10 Configuration Management,” on page 124</a></li></ul>
<a href="#">Section 34.2, “Database Tips,” on page 307</a>	Added entire section.

## C.3 December 15, 2009: Update for ZENworks 10 Configuration Management (10.2.2)

Location	Update
<a href="#">Section 34.1, “Database Best Practices,” on page 303</a>	Added entire section.

## C.4 August 17, 2009: Update for ZENworks 10 Configuration Management (10.2.1)

Location	Update
<a href="#">Section 9.4, “Backing Up Closest Server Rules,” on page 109</a>	Added entire section.
<a href="#">“Agent Features” on page 140</a>	Added note about using ZENworks 10 Asset Management with ZENworks 7 Desktop Management installed in your environment.
<a href="#">“Agent Features” on page 140</a>	Updated the section to add the effects of enabling, disabling, or uninstalling the Agent modules.
<a href="#">Section 11.3.3, “Changing the DNS Name or the IP Address and DNS Name of the Primary Server after Installing ZENworks 10 Configuration Management,” on page 124</a>	Updated the section.
<a href="#">Section 20.1, “Understanding Available Updates,” on page 181</a>	Added first three paragraphs in section.
<a href="#">Section 27.1.1, “Manually Configuring Advanced Content Replication Settings,” on page 230</a>	Added entire section.



Location	Update
<a href="#">Section 31.6, "Using ZENworks 10 Asset Management with ZENworks 7 Desktop Management," on page 260</a>	Added entire section.

## C.5 May 27, 2009: SP2

Updates were made to the following sections:

Location	Update
<a href="#">Section 37.6, "Viewing the Predefined Reports," on page 332</a>	Added this section.
<a href="#">Section 7.6, "Moving a Satellite from One Primary Server to Another Primary Server," on page 87.</a>	Added entire section.
<a href="#">Section 32.1, "Retrieving and Storing the Credentials of the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database," on page 265</a>	Added this section.
<a href="#">Section 33.6, "Configuring the ZENworks Server to Point to the New Oracle Database Containing Data Moved from Another Oracle Database," on page 300</a>	Added this section.
<a href="#">Section 31.7, "Viewing the Predefined Reports," on page 260</a>	Added this section.
<a href="#">Chapter 11, "Disaster Recovery," on page 115</a>	Added this section.
<a href="#">Section 37.6, "Viewing the Predefined Reports," on page 332</a>	Added this section.

